

# Africa



**phrasebooks**

## Africa phrasebook

1st edition — June 2007

### Published by

Lonely Planet Publications Pty Ltd ABN 36 005 607 983  
90 Maribyrnong St, Footscray, Victoria 3011, Australia

### Lonely Planet Offices

**Australia** Locked Bag 1, Footscray, Victoria 3011

**USA** 150 Linden St, Oakland CA 94607

**UK** 72–82 Rosebery Ave, London, EC1R 4RW

### Cover illustration

*Jammin'* by Wendy Wright

ISBN 978 1 74059 692 3

text © Lonely Planet Publications Pty Ltd 2007

cover illustration © Lonely Planet Publications Pty Ltd 2007

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Printed through the Bookmaker International Ltd

Printed in China

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, except brief extracts for the purpose of review, without the written permission of the publisher.

Lonely Planet does not allow its name or logo to be appropriated by commercial establishments, such as retailers, restaurants or hotels. Please let us know of any misuses: [www.lonelyplanet.com/ip](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/ip)

Lonely Planet and the Lonely Planet logo are trade marks of Lonely Planet and are registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and in other countries.

**Although the authors and Lonely Planet have taken all reasonable care in preparing this book, we make no warranty about the accuracy or completeness of its content and, to the maximum extent permitted, disclaim all liability arising from its use.**

# acknowledgments

This book is based on existing editions of Lonely Planet's phrasebooks as well as new content. It was developed with the help of the following people:

- Wilna Liebenberg for the Afrikaans chapter
- Daniel Aboye Abera for the Amharic chapter
- Shalome Knoll for the Arabic chapter
- Michael Janes for the French chapter
- Izabela Will for the Hausa chapter
- Vololona Rasolofson for the Malagasy chapter
- Robert Landon for the Portuguese chapter
- Chenjerai Shire for the Shona chapter
- Martin Benjamin for the Swahili chapter
- Fiona McLaughlin for the Wolof chapter
- Harrison Adeniyi for the Yoruba chapter
- Russell Kaschula and Thanduxolo Fatyi for the Xhosa chapter
- Derek Gowlett for the Zulu chapter

Thanks also to thank Jean-Pierre Masclef (French) and Yuki Yoshi Kamimura (Portuguese) for additional language expertise.



## Lonely Planet Language Products

**Publishing Manager:** Chris Rennie

**Commissioning Editors:** Karin Vidstrup Monk (assisted by Branislava Vladislavljovic) & Rachel Williams

**Editor:** Vanessa Battersby

**Assisting Editors:** Branislava Vladislavljovic & Francesca Coles

**Managing Editor:** Annelies Mertens

**Layout Designer:** Margie Jung, Jacqueline Mcleod & Pablo Gastar

**Managing Layout Designer:** Sally Darmody

**Cartographer:** Wayne Murphy

**Series Designer & Illustrations:** Yuki Yoshi Kamimura

**Title Illustration:** Wendy Wright

## contents

| Afk                                 | Amh | Arb | Fre | Hsa | Mgy | Por | Sho | Swa | Wol | Xho | Yor | Zul |
|-------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| <b>pronunciation</b>                |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 10                                  | 28  | 46  | 64  | 78  | 96  | 114 | 128 | 146 | 164 | 182 | 200 | 218 |
| <b>introduction</b>                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 11                                  | 29  | 47  |     | 79  | 97  |     | 129 | 147 | 165 | 183 | 201 | 219 |
| <b>language difficulties</b>        |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 12                                  | 30  | 48  | 65  | 80  | 98  | 115 | 130 | 148 | 166 | 184 | 202 | 220 |
| <b>time, dates &amp; numbers</b>    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 12                                  | 30  | 48  | 65  | 80  | 98  | 115 | 130 | 148 | 166 | 184 | 202 | 220 |
| <b>border crossing</b>              |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 13                                  | 31  | 49  | 66  | 81  | 99  | 116 | 131 | 149 | 167 | 185 | 203 | 221 |
| <b>tickets</b>                      |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 14                                  | 32  | 50  | 67  | 82  | 100 | 117 | 132 | 150 | 168 | 186 | 204 | 222 |
| <b>transport</b>                    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 14                                  | 32  | 50  | 67  | 82  | 100 | 117 | 133 | 150 | 168 | 186 | 204 | 222 |
| <b>directions</b>                   |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 15                                  | 33  | 51  | 68  | 83  | 101 | 118 | 133 | 151 | 169 | 187 | 205 | 223 |
| <b>accommodation</b>                |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 16                                  | 34  | 52  | 68  | 84  | 102 | 118 | 134 | 152 | 170 | 188 | 206 | 223 |
| <b>banking &amp; communications</b> |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 17                                  | 35  | 53  | 69  | 85  | 103 | 119 | 135 | 153 | 171 | 189 | 207 | 225 |
| <b>tours</b>                        |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 17                                  | 36  | 54  |     | 86  | 103 |     | 136 | 154 | 172 | 190 | 207 | 226 |
| <b>shopping</b>                     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 18                                  | 36  | 54  | 69  | 86  | 104 | 119 | 136 | 154 | 172 | 190 | 208 | 226 |
| <b>making conversation</b>          |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| 19                                  | 37  | 55  | 69  | 87  | 105 | 119 | 137 | 155 | 173 | 191 | 209 | 227 |

| Afk                                   | Amh | Arb | Fre | Hsa | Mgy | Por | Sho | Swa | Wol | Xho | Yor | Zul        |
|---------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| <b>eating out</b>                     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |            |
| 20                                    | 38  | 57  | 71  | 88  | 106 | 121 | 139 | 157 | 174 | 192 | 210 | 228        |
| <b>emergencies</b>                    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |            |
| 21                                    | 39  | 57  | 71  | 89  | 107 | 121 | 139 | 157 | 175 | 193 | 211 | 229        |
| <b>medical needs</b>                  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |            |
| 22                                    | 40  | 58  | 72  | 90  | 108 | 122 | 140 | 158 | 176 | 194 | 212 | 230        |
| <b>dictionary</b>                     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |            |
| 23                                    | 41  | 59  | 73  | 91  | 109 | 123 | 141 | 159 | 177 | 195 | 213 | 231        |
| <b>culture section</b>                |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | <b>235</b> |
| history timeline                      |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | 236–239    |
| food                                  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | 240–241    |
| festivals                             |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | 242–245    |
| sustainable travel (including safari) |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | 246–250    |
| <b>index</b>                          |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | <b>251</b> |



## africa – at a glance

In addition to its many other attractions, Africa offers incredible linguistic diversity. Most African languages belong to one of the following four language families: Afro-Asiatic, Nilo-Saharan, Niger-Congo (with the Bantu languages as the major branch) and Khoisan. In addition, the languages of Madagascar belong to the Austronesian language family. Even though the number of languages spoken in Africa is huge (around 1000), most of them have less than a million speakers. On the other hand, more prominent languages usually also serve as regional lingua francas – such as Swahili in East Africa. Luckily for English speakers, most African languages use Roman script and there's a general correspondence between the pronunciation and the written form of words.

Arabic has a particularly important status in the north and northeast of the continent, due to its proximity to the Middle East and the Arab conquests of North Africa from the 7th century. Among the African languages, Amharic is linguistically closest to Arabic, as they both belong to the Semitic group of the Afro-Asiatic family. In addition, they're both script languages, but the two scripts are quite different.

Due to the 19th-century European colonisation of Africa, a few European languages (particularly English, French and Portuguese) are still influential in various African countries and even share official status with native African languages. English is predominantly represented in the east and the south, French in the north and the west, and Portuguese in the east and the west of the continent.

A unique linguistic feature of Africa is Afrikaans, which belongs to the Germanic branch of the Indo-European language family. It was created as a result of the 17th-century Dutch colonisation of the south of the continent. Although still very similar to Dutch, Afrikaans is now considered a language in its own right.

### did you know?

- The African Union (AU) was established in 2000 by the adoption of the Constitutive Act at the Lome Summit (Togo). It developed from the African Economic Community and the Organisation of African Unity. It has 53 member states, covering the entire continent except for Morocco. The AU is governed by the Assembly of Heads of State and Government and the Pan-African Parliament.
- The home of the AU is Addis Ababa in Ethiopia. The AU anthem is the song 'Let Us All Unite and Celebrate Together'. The AU flag combines green, yellow and gold colours, with the emblem showing the African continent in the middle.
- The official languages of the AU are all African languages, as well as Arabic, English, French and Portuguese. The African Academy of Languages (founded in 2001) strives to preserve African languages and promote their use among the African people.

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# Afrikaans



# pronunciation

| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       | Consonants |                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | English sound         | Symbol     | English sound                           |
| a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | run                   | b          | bed                                     |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | father                | ch         | cheat                                   |
| ai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | aisle                 | d          | dog                                     |
| aw                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | law                   | f          | fun                                     |
| ay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | say                   | g          | go                                      |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | bet                   | h          | hat                                     |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | see                   | k          | kit                                     |
| eu                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | nurse                 | kh         | as the 'ch' in the Scottish <i>loch</i> |
| ew                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | ee with rounded lips  | l          | lot                                     |
| ey                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | as in bet, but longer | m          | man                                     |
| i                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | hit                   | n          | not                                     |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | pot                   | ng         | ring                                    |
| oh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | cold                  | p          | pet                                     |
| oo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | poor                  | r          | run (trilled)                           |
| oy                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | toy                   | s          | sun                                     |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | put                   | sh         | shot                                    |
| uh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | ago                   | t          | top                                     |
| In this chapter, the Afrikaans pronunciation is given in blue after each phrase.<br><br>Each syllable is separated by a dot, and the syllable stressed in each word is italicised.<br>For example:<br><br><i>Dankie.</i> <i>dang-kee</i> |                       | v          | very                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                       | w          | win                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                       | y          | yes                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                       | z          | zero                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                       | zh         | pleasure                                |

# AFRIKAANS

## afrikaans

## introduction

You don't need to look hard for evidence of Afrikaans in English: *aardvark*, the name of a termite-eating mammal native to Africa, is one of the first words in any English dictionary. English has also borrowed the Afrikaans words *commando* and *trek*, among others. Afrikaans (*Afrikaans* a-free-kans) belongs to the Germanic branch of the Indo-European language family – just like English. It's closely related to the 17th-century Dutch brought to South Africa from 1652 onward, when The Dutch East India Company established the first European settlement at the Cape of Good Hope. Afrikaans derives from the dialect that developed among these settlers, most of whom were from the Netherlands. Until the late 19th century, Afrikaans was considered a Dutch dialect and was known as 'Cape Dutch' – in fact, it wasn't until 1925 that it became one of the official languages of South Africa. Today, it's the first language of some six million people, and is spoken in Botswana, Malawi, Namibia and Zambia as well as South Africa.



## language difficulties

### Do you speak English?

*Praat jy Engels?*                      praat yay eng-ils

### Do you understand?

*Verstaan jy?*                              vir-staan yay

### I (don't) understand.

*Ek verstaan (nie).*                      ek vir-staan (nee)

### Could you please ...?

*Kan jy asseblief ...?*

kan yay a-si-bleef ...

repeat that

*dit herhaal*

dit her-haal

speak more slowly

*stadiger praat*

staa-di-khir praat

write it down

*dit neerskryf*

dit neyr-skrayf

## time, dates & numbers

### What time is it?

*Hoe laat is dit?*

hu laat is dit

It's one o'clock.

*Dis een-uur.*

dis eyn-ewr

It's (two) o'clock.

*Dis (twee-)uur.*

dis (twey-)ewr

Quarter past (one).

*Kwart oor (een).*

kwart oor (eyn)

Half past (one).

*Half (twee).*

half (twey)

Quarter to (eight).

*Kwart voor (agt).*

kwart voor (akht)

At what time ...?

*Hoe laat ...?*

hu laat ...

At ...

*Om ...*

om ...

It's (15 December).

*Dis (vyftien Desember).*

dis (fayf-teen dey-sem-bir)

yesterday

*gister*

*khis-tir*

today

*vandag*

*fin-dakh*

tomorrow

*môre*

*mo-ri*

Monday

*Maandag*

*maan-dakh*

Tuesday

*Dinsdag*

*dins-dakh*

Wednesday

*Woensdag*

*wuns-dakh*

Thursday

*Donderdag*

*don-ir-dakh*

Friday

*Vrydag*

*vray-dakh*

Saturday

*Saterdag*

*sa-tir-dakh*

Sunday

*Sondag*

*son-dakh*

### numbers

|    |          |           |      |                 |                   |
|----|----------|-----------|------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 0  | nul      | neul      | 16   | sestien         | ses-teen          |
| 1  | een      | eyn       | 17   | sewentien       | sey-vin-teen      |
| 2  | twee     | twey      | 18   | agtien          | akh-teen          |
| 3  | drie     | dree      | 19   | negentien       | ney-khin-teen     |
| 4  | vier     | feer      | 20   | twintig         | twin-tikh         |
| 5  | vyf      | fayf      | 21   | een en twintig  | eyn en twin-tikh  |
| 6  | ses      | ses       | 22   | twee en twintig | twey en twin-tikh |
| 7  | sewe     | see-vi    | 30   | dertig          | der-tikh          |
| 8  | agt      | akht      | 40   | veertig         | feyr-tikh         |
| 9  | nege     | ney-khi   | 50   | vyftig          | fayf-tikh         |
| 10 | tien     | teen      | 60   | sestig          | ses-tikh          |
| 11 | elf      | elf       | 70   | sewentig        | sey-vin-tikh      |
| 12 | twalf    | twalf     | 80   | tagtig          | takh-tikh         |
| 13 | dertien  | der-teen  | 90   | negentig        | ney-khin-tikh     |
| 14 | veertien | feyr-teen | 100  | honderd         | hon-dirt          |
| 15 | vyftien  | fayf-teen | 1000 | duisend         | day-sint          |



## border crossing

I'm here ...

*Ek is hier ...*

ek is heer ...

in transit

*onderweg*

on-dir-wekh

on business

*vir besigheid*

fir bey-sikh-hayt

on holiday

*met vakansie*

met fi-kan-see

I'm here for ...

*Ek is hier vir ...*

ek is heer fir ...

(10) days

*(tien) dae*

(teen) daa-i

(three) weeks

*(drie) weke*

(dree) vey-ki

(two) months

*(twee) maande*

(twey) maan-di

I'm going to (Johannesburg).

*Ek gaan na (Johannesburg).*

ek khaan naa (yu-ha-nis-birkh)

I'm staying at the (Ritz).

*Ek bly in die (Ritz).*

ek blay in dee (rits)

## tickets

|                                         |                                               |                                                |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| A ... ticket<br>(to Cape Town), please. | Een ... kaartjie<br>(na Kaapstad), asseblief. | eyn ... kaar-kee<br>(naa kaap-stat) a-si-bleef |
| one-way                                 | eenrigting                                    | eyn-rikh-ting                                  |
| return                                  | retoer                                        | ri-tur                                         |

|                                       |                                      |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| I'd like to ... my<br>ticket, please. | Ek wil my kaartjie,<br>asseblief ... | ek vil may kaar-kee<br>a-si-bleef ... |
| cancel                                | kanselleer                           | kan-si-leyr                           |
| change                                | verander                             | fir-an-dir                            |
| collect                               | afhaal                               | af-haal                               |

### I'd like a (non)smoking seat, please.

|                                               |                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Ek wil asseblief 'n<br>(nie-)rook-sitplek hê. | ek vil a-si-bleef i<br>(nee-)rook-sit-plek he |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|

### Is there a toilet/air conditioning?

|                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Is daar 'n toilet/lugreëling? | is daar i toy-let/likh-rey-ling |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|

### How long does the trip take?

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Hoe lank neem die reis? | hu langk neym dee rays |
|-------------------------|------------------------|

### Is it a direct route?

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| Is dit 'n direkte roete? | is dit i dee-rek-ti ru-ti |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|

## transport

### Where does flight (MN367) arrive?

|                            |                                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Waar kom vlug (MN367) aan? | vaar kom flikh (em en dree ses sey-vi) aan |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|

### Where does flight (MN367) depart?

|                            |                                             |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Waar vertrek vlug (MN367)? | vaar fir-trek flikh (em en dree ses see-vi) |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

### How long will it be delayed?

|                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Hoe lank sal dit vertraag word? | hu langk sal dit fir-traakh vort |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|

### Is this the ... to (Durban)?

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Is dit die ...<br>na (Durban)? | is dit dee ...<br>naa (dir-ban) |
| boat                           | boot                            |
| bus                            | bis                             |
| plane                          | flikh-tayg                      |
| train                          | trayn                           |

### How much is it to ...?

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Hoeveel kos dit na ...? | hu-fil kos dit naa ... |
|-------------------------|------------------------|

### Please take me to (this address).

|                                       |                                           |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Neem my asseblief na (hierdie adres). | neym may a-si-bleef naa (heer-dee a-dres) |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|

### I'd like to hire a car/4WD (with air conditioning).

|                                                  |                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ek wil 'n motor/4-by-4<br>(met lugreëling) huur. | ek vil i moo-tir/feer-bay-feer<br>(met likh-rey-ling) hewr |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|

### How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

|                                      |                                        |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Hoeveel kos dit vir (drie) dae/weke? | hu-fil kos dit fir (dree) daa-i/vey-ki |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|

## directions

### Where's the (nearest) ...?

|                         |                                                       |                                                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| internet café<br>market | Waar's die<br>(naaste) ...?<br>Internet-kafee<br>mark | vaars dee<br>(naas-ti) ...<br>in-tir-net-ka-fey<br>mark |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|

### Is this the road to (Cape Town)?

|                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Is dit die pad na (Kaapstad)? | is dit dee pat naa (kaap-stat) |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|

### Can you show me (on the map)?

|                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Kan jy my (op die kaart) wys? | kan yay may (op dee kaart) vays |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|

### What's the address?

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Wat is die adres? | vat is dee a-dres |
|-------------------|-------------------|

### How far is it?

|                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| Hoe ver is dit? | hu fer is dit |
|-----------------|---------------|

### How do I get there?

|                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| Hoe kom ek daar? | hu kom ek daar |
|------------------|----------------|

### Turn left/right.

|                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| Draai links/regs. | drai lings/rekhs |
|-------------------|------------------|

### It's ...

|                 |             |              |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|
| behind ...      | Dis ...     | dis ...      |
| in front of ... | agter ...   | akh-tir ...  |
| near (to) ...   | voor ...    | foor ...     |
| next to ...     | naby ...    | naa-bay ...  |
| on the corner   | langs ...   | langs ...    |
| opposite ...    | op die hoek | op dee huk   |
| straight ahead  | oorkant ... | oor-kant ... |
| there           | reguit aan  | rekh-ayt aan |
|                 | daar        | daar         |

## accommodation

|                |                |               |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| Where's a ...? | Waar's 'n ...? | vaars i ...   |
| camping ground | kampeerpelk    | kam-peyr-pelk |
| guesthouse     | gastehuis      | khas-ti-hays  |
| hotel          | hotel          | hu-tel        |
| youth hostel   | jeugtuiste     | yeykh-tays-ti |

### Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

|                                                     |                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kan jy 'n goedkoop/goeie<br/>plek aanbeveel?</i> | <i>kan yay i khut-koop/khoy-i<br/>plek aan-bi-feyl</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|

### I'd like to book a room, please.

|                                             |                                              |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ek wil 'n kamer bespreek, asseblief.</i> | <i>ek vil i kaa-mir bi-spreyk a-si-bleef</i> |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|

### I have a reservation.

|                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Ek het 'n bespreking.</i> | <i>ek het i bi-sprey-king</i> |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|

|                            |                                      |                                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Do you have<br>a ... room? | Het jy<br>'n ... kamer?              | het yay<br>i ... kaa-mir                   |
| single                     | enkel                                | eng-kil                                    |
| double                     | dubbel                               | di-bil                                     |
| twin                       | dubbelkamer met<br>twee enkelbeddens | di-bil-kaa-mir met<br>twey eng-kil-be-dins |



### How much is it per night/person?

|                                              |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hoeveel kos dit per nag/<br/>persoon?</i> | <i>hu-fil kos dit pir nakh/<br/>pir-soon</i> |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|

### I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

|                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Ek wil vir (twee) nagte bly.</i> | <i>ek vil fir (twey) nakh-ti blay</i> |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

### What time is check-out?

|                                                |                                                |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hoe laat moet ek uit my<br/>kamer wees?</i> | <i>hu laat mut ek ayt may<br/>kaa-mir veys</i> |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

### Am I allowed to camp here?

|                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Mag ek hier kampeer?</i> | <i>makh ek heer kam-peyr</i> |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|

## banking & communications

|                               |                         |                            |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| I'd like to ...               | Ek wil asseblief ...    | ek vil a-si-bleef ...      |
| arrange a transfer            | 'n oorplasing reël      | i oor-plaa-sing reyl       |
| cash a cheque                 | 'n tjek wissel          | i chek vi-sil              |
| change a travellers<br>cheque | 'n reisigerstjek wissel | i ray-si-khirs-chek vi-sil |
| change money                  | geld ruil               | khelt rayl                 |
| withdraw money                | geld trek               | khelt trek                 |

### I want to ...

|                        |                                         |                                              |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| buy a phonecard        | Ek wil asseblief ...                    | ek vil a-si-bleef ...                        |
| call (Singapore)       | 'n foonkaart koop<br>(Singapoer) skakel | i foon-kaart koop<br>(seeng-ga-pur) skaa-kil |
| reverse the<br>charges | 'n kollekteeroproep<br>maak             | i ko-lek-teyr-op-rup<br>maak                 |
| use a printer          | 'n drukker gebruik                      | i dri-kir khi-brayk                          |
| use the internet       | die Internet gebruik                    | dee in-tir-net khi-brayk                     |

### How much is it per hour?

|                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Hoeveel kos dit per uur?</i> | <i>hu-fil kos dit pir ewr</i> |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|

### How much does a (three-minute) call cost?

|                                                 |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hoeveel kos 'n oproep (van drie minute)?</i> | <i>hu-fil kos i op-rup (fan drie mi-nee-ti)</i> |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|

### (One rand/cent) per minute/hour.

|                                        |                                        |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>(Een rand/sent) per minuut/uur.</i> | <i>(eyn rant/sent) pir mi-newt/ewr</i> |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|

## tours

|                         |                                 |                                  |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| When's the<br>next ...? | Wanneer is die<br>volgende ...? | va-nir is dee<br>fol-khin-di ... |
| day trip                | dagrit                          | dakh-rit                         |
| tour                    | toer                            | tur                              |
| Is ... included?        | Is ... ingesluit?               | is ... in-khi-slayt              |
| accommodation           | verblyf                         | fir-blayf                        |
| the admission<br>charge | die toegangsgeld                | dee tu-khangs-khelt              |
| food                    | kos                             | kos                              |
| transport               | vervoer                         | fir-fur                          |

**How long is the tour?***Hoe lank is die toer?*

hu langk is dee tur

**What time should we be back?***Hoe laat sal ons terug wees?*

hu laat sal ons trig wees

**shopping****I'm looking for ...***Ek soek na ...*

ek suk naa ...

**I need film for this camera.***Ek het film vir my kamera nodig.*

ek het fi-lim vir may ka-mi-ra noo-dikh

**Can I listen to this?***Kan ek hierna luister?*

kan ek heer-naa lays-tir

**Can I have my ... repaired?***Kan ek my ... laat regmaak?*

kan ek may ... laat rekh-maak

**When will it be ready?***Wanneer sal dit rekh wees?*

va-nir sal dit rekh veys

**How much is it?***Hoeveel kos dit?*

hu-fil kos dit

**What's your lowest price?***Wat is jou laagste prys?*

vat is yoh laakh-sti prays

**I'll give you (five) rand.***Ek sal jou (vyf) rand gee.*

ek sal yoh (fayf) rant khey

**There's a mistake in the bill.***Daar's 'n fout op die rekening.*

daars i foht op dee rey-ki-ning

**It's faulty.***Dis stukkend.*

dis sti-kint

**I'd like a ..., please.***Ek wil asseblief 'n ...**receipt**refund**kwitansie hê**my geld terug hê*

ek vil a-si-bleefi ...

*kwi-tan-see he**may khelt trikh he***Do you accept ...?***credit cards**debit cards**travellers cheques**Aanvaar jy ...?**kredietkaarte**debetkaarte**reisigerstjeks*

aan-faar yay ...

*kri-deet-kaar-ti**di-beet-kaar-ti**ray-si-khirs-cheks***Could you ...?***burn a CD from**my memory card**develop this film**Kan jy ...?**'n CD van my**geheuekaart brand**hierdie film ontwikkel**kan yay ...**i sey-dey fan may**khi-hee-i-kaart brant**heer-dee fi-lim ont-vi-kil***making conversation****Hello.***Hallo.**ha-loh***Good night.***Goeienag.**khoy-i-nakh***Goodbye.***Totsiens.**tot-seens***Mr***Meneer**mi-neyr***Mrs***Mevrou**mi-froh***Miss***Juffrou**yi-froh***How are you?***Hoe gaan dit?*

hu khaan dit

**Fine, and you?***Goed dankie, en jy?*

khut dang-kee en yay

**What's your name?***Wat's jou naam?*

vats yoh naam

**My name's ...***My naam is ...*

may naam is ...

**I'm pleased to meet you.***Bly te kenne.*

blay ti ke-ni

**This is my ...****boyfriend****brother****daughter****father****friend***Dit is my ...**kêrel**broer**dogter**pa**vriend m**vriendin f**meisie**man**ma**maat**suster**seun**vrou**dit is may ...**ke-ril**brur**dokh-tir**paa**freend**freen-din**may-see**man**maa**maat**sis-tir**seyn**froh*

|                  |                       |                |
|------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| Here's my ...    | <i>Hier's my ...</i>  | heers may ...  |
| What's your ...? | <i>Wat's jou ...?</i> | vats yoh ...   |
| address          | <i>adres</i>          | a-dres         |
| email address    | <i>e-posadres</i>     | ey-paws-a-dres |
| phone number     | <i>foonnommer</i>     | foon-no-mir    |

Where are you from?  
*Waarvandaan kom jy?*                      vaar-fan-daan kom yay

|              |                       |                |
|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| I'm from ... | <i>Ek kom van ...</i> | ek kom fan ... |
| Australia    | <i>Australië</i>      | oh-strā-lee-i  |
| Canada       | <i>Kanada</i>         | ka-na-da       |
| New Zealand  | <i>Nieu-Seeland</i>   | new-sey-lant   |
| the UK       | <i>Brittanje</i>      | bri-tan-yi     |
| the USA      | <i>die VSA</i>        | dee fey-es-aa  |

I'm (not) married.  
*Ek's (nie) getroud (nie).*                      eks (nee) khi-troht (nee)

Can I take a photo (of you)?  
*Kan ek 'n foto (van jou) neem?*                      kan ek i foo-tu (fan yoh) neym



## eating out

|                              |                                   |                          |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Can you recommend a ...?     | <i>Kan jy 'n ... aanbeveel?</i>   | kan yay i ...            |
| bar                          | <i>kroeg</i>                      | aan-bi-feyl              |
| dish                         | <i>gereg</i>                      | kruk                     |
| place to eat                 | <i>eetplek</i>                    | khi-rekh                 |
| I'd like ..., please.        | <i>Ek wil asseblief ... hê.</i>   | eyt-plek                 |
| the bill                     | <i>die rekening</i>               | ek vil a-si-bleef ... he |
| the menu                     | <i>die spyskaart</i>              | dee rey-ki-ning          |
| a table for (two)            | <i>'n tafel vir (twee)</i>        | dee spays-kaart          |
| that dish                    | <i>daardie gereg</i>              | i taa-fil fir (twey)     |
| Do you have vegetarian food? | <i>Het julle vegetariese kos?</i> | daar-dee khi-rekh        |
|                              |                                   | het yi-li                |
|                              |                                   | fe-gee-taa-ree-si kos    |

|                                       |                                                |                       |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Could you prepare a meal without ...? | <i>Kan julle 'n maaltyd sonder ... bedien?</i> | kan yi-li i maal-tayt |
| eggs                                  | <i>eiers</i>                                   | son-dir ... bi-deen   |
| meat stock                            | <i>vleisaftreksel</i>                          | ay-irs                |
|                                       |                                                | flays-af-trek-sil     |

|                     |                            |                     |
|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| (cup of) coffee ... | <i>(koppie) koffie ...</i> | (ko-pee) ko-fee ... |
| (cup of) tea ...    | <i>(koppie) tee ...</i>    | (ko-pee) tey ...    |
| with milk           | <i>met melk</i>            | met melk            |
| without sugar       | <i>sonder suiker</i>       | son-dir say-kir     |

|              |                  |              |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|
| boiled water | <i>kookwater</i> | kook-vaa-tir |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|



## emergencies

|              |                    |                |
|--------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Help!        | <i>Help!</i>       | help           |
| Call ...!    | <i>Kry ...!</i>    | kray ...       |
| an ambulance | <i>'n ambulans</i> | i am-bew-lans  |
| a doctor     | <i>'n dokter</i>   | i dok-tir      |
| the police   | <i>die polisie</i> | dee pu-lee-see |

Could you help me, please?  
*Kan jy my help, asseblief?*                      kan yay may help a-si-bleef

I'm lost.  
*Ek is verdwaal.*                      ek is fir-dwaal

Where are the toilets?  
*Waar is die toilette?*                      vaar is dee toy-le-ti

I want to report an offence.  
*Ek wil 'n misdaad aanmeld.*                      ek vil i mis-daad aan-melt

I have insurance.  
*Ek het versekering.*                      ek het fir-sey-ki-ring

I want to contact my consulate/embassy.  
*Ek wil my konsulaat/ambassade kontak.*                      ek vil may kon-sew-laot/ am-ba-saa-di kon-tak

|                                                |                                                                         |                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I've been ...<br>assaulted<br>raped<br>robbed  | <i>Ek is ...</i><br><i>aangerand</i><br><i>verkrag</i><br><i>beroof</i> | <i>ek is ...</i><br><i>aan-khi-rant</i><br><i>fir-krakh</i><br><i>bi-roof</i> |
| I've lost my ...<br>My ... was/were<br>stolen. | <i>Ek het my ... verloor.</i><br><i>My ... is gesteel.</i>              | <i>ek het may ... vir-loor</i><br><i>may ... is khi-steyl</i>                 |
| <b>bags</b>                                    | <i>bagasie</i>                                                          | <i>bi-khaa-see</i>                                                            |
| <b>credit card</b>                             | <i>kredietkaart</i>                                                     | <i>kri-deet-kaart</i>                                                         |
| <b>handbag</b>                                 | <i>handsak</i>                                                          | <i>hant-sak</i>                                                               |
| <b>jewellery</b>                               | <i>juwele</i>                                                           | <i>yu-vee-li</i>                                                              |
| <b>money</b>                                   | <i>geld</i>                                                             | <i>khelt</i>                                                                  |
| <b>passport</b>                                | <i>paspoort</i>                                                         | <i>pas-poort</i>                                                              |
| <b>travellers</b>                              | <i>reisigerstjeks</i>                                                   | <i>ray-si-khirs-cheks</i>                                                     |
| <b>cheques</b>                                 |                                                                         |                                                                               |
| <b>wallet</b>                                  | <i>beursie</i>                                                          | <i>beyr-see</i>                                                               |

## medical needs

|                                     |                                   |                                        |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>Where's the<br/>nearest ...?</b> | <i>Waar's die<br/>naaste ...?</i> | <i>vaars dee</i><br><i>naas-ti ...</i> |
| <b>dentist</b>                      | <i>tandarts</i>                   | <i>tant-arts</i>                       |
| <b>doctor</b>                       | <i>dokter</i>                     | <i>dok-tir</i>                         |
| <b>hospital</b>                     | <i>hospitaal</i>                  | <i>hos-pee-taal</i>                    |
| <b>pharmacy</b>                     | <i>apteek</i>                     | <i>ap-teyk</i>                         |

### I need a doctor (who speaks English).

*Ek het 'n dokter nodig (wat Engels praat).*  
*ek het i dok-tir noo-dikh (vat eng-ils praat)*

### Could I see a female doctor?

*Kan ek 'n vroulike dokter sien?*  
*kan ek i froh-li-ki dok-tir seen*

### It hurts here.

*Dis hier seer.*  
*dis heer seyr*

### I'm allergic to (penicillin).

*Ek's allergies vir (penisillien).*  
*eks a-ler-khees fir (pi-ni-si-leen)*

## english–afrikaans dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as **n** (noun), **a** (adjective), **v** (verb), **sg** (singular), **pl** (plural), **inf** (informal) and **pol** (polite) where necessary.

## A

**accommodation** *akkommodasie* a-kaw-maw-daa-see  
**adaptor** *adaptor* i-dep-tir  
**after** *na* naa  
**airport** *lughawe* leukh-haa-vi  
**alcohol** *alkohol* al-ku-hawl  
**all** *alle* a-li  
**allergy** *allergie* a-ler-khee  
**and** *en* en  
**ankle** *enkel* eng-kil  
**antibiotics** *antibiotika* an-tee-bee-oo-tee-ka  
**anti-inflammatories** *anti-inflammatoriese middels*  
*an-tee-in-fla-ma-too-ree-si mi-dils*  
**arm** *arm* a-rim  
**aspirin** *aspirien* as-pi-reen  
**asthma** *asma* as-ma  
**ATM** *OTM* oo-tey-em

## B

**baby** *baba* baa-ba  
**back (body)** *rug* reukh  
**backpack** *rugsak* reukh-sak  
**bad** *sleg* slekh  
**baggage claim** *bagasiebewys* bi-khaa-see-bi-vays  
**bank** *bank* bank  
**bathroom** *badkamer* bat-kaa-mir  
**battery** *battery* ba-ti-ray  
**beautiful** *mooi* moy  
**bed** *bed* bet  
**beer** *bier* beer  
**bees** *bye* bay-i  
**before** *voor* foor  
**bicycle** *fiets* fiets  
**big** *groot* khroot  
**blanket** *kombers* kawm-bers  
**blood group** *bloedgroep* blut-khrup  
**bottle** *bottel* baw-til  
**bottle opener** *botteloopmaker* baw-til-ooop-maa-kir  
**boy** *seun* seyn  
**brakes (car)** *remme* re-mi

**breakfast** *ontbyt* awnt-bayt  
**bronchitis** *bronchiitis* brawn-khee-tis

## C

**café** *kafee* ka-fey  
**cancel** *kanselleer* kan-si-leyr  
**can opener** *blikoemaker* blik-ooop-maa-kir  
**cash** *kontant* kawn-tant  
**cell phone** *selfoon* sel-foon  
**centre** *sentrum* sen-treum  
**cheap** *goedkoop* khut-koop  
**check (bill)** *rekening* rey-ki-ning  
**check-in** *aanmeld* aan-melt  
**chest** *bors* bawrs  
**child** *kind* kint  
**cigarette** *sigaret* see-kha-ret  
**city** *stad* stat  
**clean** *a skoon* skoon  
**closed** *toe* tu  
**codeine** *kodeien* koo-dey-heen  
**cold** *a koud* koht  
**collect call** *kollekteeroproep* kaw-lek-teyr-awp-rup  
**condom** *kondoom* kawn-doom  
**constipation** *hardlywigheid* hart-lay-vikh-hayt  
**contact lenses** *kontaklense* kawn-tak-len-si  
**cough** *n hoës* hus  
**currency exchange** *valutawinkel* va-lew-ta-ving-kil  
**customs (immigration)** *doeane* du-haa-ni

## D

**dairy products** *suiwelprodukte* soy-vil-pru-dik-ti  
**dangerous** *gevaarlik* khi-faar-lik  
**date (time)** *datum* daa-tim  
**day** *dag* dakh  
**diaper** *doek* duk  
**diarrhoea** *diarree* dee-ha-rey  
**dinner** *aandete* aant-ey-ti  
**dirty** *vuil* vayl  
**disabled** *gestremd* khi-stremt  
**double bed** *dubbelbed* di-bil-bet

drink *n* drankie drang-kee  
 drivers licence *bestuurderslisensie* bi-stewr-dirs-li-sen-see  
 drug (illicit) *dwelm* dwe-lim

## E

ear *oor* oor  
 east *oos* oos  
 economy class *ekonomiese klas* e-ku-noo-mee-si klas  
 elevator *hysbak* hays-bak  
 email *n* e-pos ey-paws  
 English (language) *Engels* eng-ils  
 exchange rate *wisselkoers* vi-sil-kurs  
 exit *n* uitgang ayt-khang  
 expensive *duur* dewr  
 eye *oog* ookh

## F

fast *vinnig* fi-nikh  
 fever *koors* koors  
 finger *vinger* fing-ir  
 first-aid kit *noodhulpkissie* noot-hilp-ki-see  
 first class *eerste klas* eyr-sti klas  
 fish *n* vis fis  
 food *kos* kaws  
 foot *voet* fut  
 fork *vrk* firik  
 free (of charge) *gratis* khra-tis  
 fruit *vrugte* frikh-ti  
 funny *snaaks* snaaks

## G

game park *wildtuin* vil-tayn  
 gift *geskenk* khi-skengk  
 girl *meisie* may-see  
 glass (drinking) *glas* khlas  
 glasses *bril* bril  
 gluten *gluten* glu-tin  
 good *goed* khut  
 gram *gram* khram  
 guide *n* gids khits

## H

hand *hand* hant  
 happy *gelukkig* khi-leu-kikh

have *het* het  
 he *hy* hay  
 head *kop* kawp  
 headache *hoofpyn* hoof-payn  
 heart *hart* hart  
 heart condition *harttoestand* hart-tu-stant  
 heat *n* hitte hi-ti  
 here *hier* heer  
 high *hoog* hookh  
 highway *hoofpad* hoof-pat  
 homosexual *n* *homoseksueel* hoo-mu-sek-see-heyl  
 homosexual *a* *homoseksuele* hoo-mu-sek-see-hey-li  
 hot *warm* va-rim  
 hungry *honger* hawn-gir

## I

I *ek* ek  
 identification (card) *identifikasie* ee-den-ti-fee-kaa-see  
 ill *siek* seek  
 important *belangrik* bi-lang-rik  
 internet *Internet* in-tir-net  
 interpreter *tolk* tawlk

## J

job *werk* verk

## K

key *sleutel* sley-til  
 kilogram *kilogram* kee-lu-khram  
 kitchen *kombuis* kom-bays  
 knife *mes* mes

## L

laundry (place) *wassery* va-si-ray  
 lawyer *prokureur* praw-keu-rewr  
 left-luggage office *bagasiekantoor* ba-kha-see-kan-toor  
 leg *been* beyn  
 lesbian *n* *lesbiër* les-bee-ir  
 lesbian *a* *lesbies* les-bees  
 less *minder* min-dir  
 letter (mail) *brief* breef  
 like *v* *hou van* hof fan  
 lost-property office *verlore goedere kantoor*  
 vir-loo-ri khu-di-ri kan-toor

love (romantic) *v* *lief hê* leef he  
 lunch *middagete* mi-dakh-ey-ti

## M

man *man* man  
 matches *vuurhoutjies* vewr-hoh-kees  
 meat *vleis* vlays  
 medicine *medisyne* mi-di-say-ni  
 message *boodskap* boot-skap  
 mobile phone *selfoon* sel-foon  
 month *maand* maant  
 morning *oggend* aw-khint  
 motorcycle *motorfiets* moo-tir-feets  
 mouth *mond* mawnt  
 movie *fiek* fleek  
 MSG *MSG* em es khey  
 museum *museum* mee-zeym  
 music *musiek* meu-seek

## N

name *naam* naam  
 napkin *servet* sir-vet  
 nappy *doek* duk  
 national park *nasionale park* na-shu-naa-li park  
 nausea *naarheid* naar-hayt  
 neck *nek* nek  
 new *nuut* newt  
 news *nuus* nuus  
 newspaper *koerant* ku-rant  
 night *nag* nakh  
 nightclub *nagklub* nakh-kleup  
 noisy *raserig* raa-si-rikh  
 nonsmoking *nie-rook* nee-rook  
 north *noord* noort  
 nose *neus* neys  
 now *nou* noh  
 number *nommer* naw-mir  
 nuts *neute* ney-ti

## O

oil (engine) *olie* oo-lee  
 OK *goed* khut  
 old *oud* oht  
 open *a* *oop* oop  
 outside *buite* bay-te

## P

package *pakkie* pa-kee  
 pain *pyn* pyn  
 paper *papier* pa-peer  
 park (car) *v* *parkeer* par-keyr  
 passport *paspoort* pas-poort  
 pay *betaal* bi-taal  
 pen *pen* pen  
 petrol *petrol* pe-trawl  
 pharmacy *apteek* ap-teyk  
 plate *plaat* plaat  
 postcard *poskaart* paws-kaart  
 post office *poskantoor* paws-kan-toor  
 pregnant *swanger* swang-ger

## Q

quiet *stil* stil

## R

rain *n* *reën* reyn  
 razor *skeermes* skeyr-mes  
 registered mail *geregistreeerde pos*  
 khi-re-khi-streyr-di paws  
 rent *v* *huur* hewr  
 repair *v* *herstel* her-stel  
 reservation *bespreking* bi-sprey-king  
 restaurant *restaurant* res-toh-rant  
 return *v* *terugkeer* ti-reukh-keyr  
 road *pad* pat  
 room *kamer* kaa-mir

## S

sad *hartseer* hart-seyr  
 safe *a* *veilig* fay-likh  
 sanitary napkin *sanitêre doekie* sa-nee-te-ri du-kee  
 seafood *seekos* sey-kaws  
 seat *sitplek* sit-plek  
 send *stuur* stewr  
 sex *seks* seks  
 shampoo *sjampoe* sham-pu  
 share (a dorm, etc) *deel* deyl  
 shaving cream *skeerroom* skeyr-room  
 she *sy* say  
 sheet (bed) *laken* laa-kin

shirt *hemp* hemp  
 shoes *skoene* sku-ni  
 shop *n winkel* ving-kil  
 shower *n stort* stawrt  
 skin *vel* fel  
 skirt *romp* rawmp  
 sleep *v slaap* slaap  
 small *klein* klayn  
 smoke (cigarettes) *v rook* rook  
 soap *seep* seyp  
 some *n paar* i paar  
 soon *gou* khoh  
 sore throat *seer keel* seyr keyl  
 south *suid* sayt  
 souvenir shop *soewenierwinkel* su-vi-neer-ving-kil  
 speak *praat* praat  
 spoon *lepel* ley-pil  
 stamp *seël* seyl  
 stand-by ticket *bystandkaartjie* bay-stant-kaar-kee  
 station (train) *stasie* staa-see  
 stomach *maag* maakh  
 stop *v stop* stawp  
 stop (bus) *n halte* hal-ti  
 street *straat* straat  
 student *student* stu-dent  
 sunscreen *sonskerm* sawn-ske-rim  
 swim *v swem* swem

## T

tampons *tampons* tam-pawns  
 teeth *tande* tan-di  
 telephone *n telefoon* te-li-foon  
 television *televisie* te-li-vee-see  
 temperature (weather) *temperatuur* tem-pi-ra-tewr  
 tent *tent* tent  
 that (one) *daardie* daar-dee  
 they *hulle* heu-li  
 thirsty *dors* dawrs  
 this (one) *hierdie* heer-dee  
 throat *keel* keyl  
 ticket *kaartjie* kaar-kee  
 time *n tyd* tayt  
 tired *moeg* mukh  
 tissues *tissues* tee-shus  
 today *vandag* van-dakh  
 toilet *toilet* toy-let  
 tonight *vanaand* vi-naant  
 toothache *tandpyn* tant-payn  
 toothbrush *tandeborsel* tan-di-bawr-sil  
 toothpaste *tandepasta* tan-di-pas-ta  
 torch (flashlight) *flits* flits

tourist office *toeristekantoor* tu-ris-ti-kan-toor  
 towel *handdoek* han-duk  
 translate *vertaal* fir-taal  
 travel agency *reisagentskap* rays-a-khent-skap  
 travellers cheque *reisigerstjek* ray-si-khirs-chek  
 trousers *broek* bruk  
 twin beds *twee beddens* twey be-dins  
 tyre *band* bant

## U

underwear *onderklere* on-dir-kley-ri  
 urgent *dringend* dring-int

## V

vacant *leeg* leych  
 vegetable *n groente* khrun-ti  
 vegetarian *n vegetariër* fe-khee-ta-ree-ir  
 visa *visa* vee-sa

## W

waiter *kelner* kel-nir  
 walk *v loop* loop  
 wallet *beursie* beyr-see  
 warm *a warm* va-rim  
 wash (something) *was* vas  
 watch *n horlosie* oor-loo-see  
 water *water* va-tir  
 we *ons* awns  
 weekend *naweek* naa-veyk  
 west *wes* ves  
 wheelchair *rolstoel* rawl-stul  
 when *wanneer* va-nir  
 where *waar* vaar  
 who *wie* vee  
 why *waarom* vaar-awm  
 window *venster* fens-tir  
 wine *wyn* vayn  
 with *met* met  
 without *sonder* sawn-dir  
 woman *vrou* froh  
 write *skryf* skrayf

## Y

you *sg inf/pol jy/u yay/ew*  
 you *pl inf/pol julle/u yeu-li/ew*

Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this © chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of 'saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content

# Amharic



# pronunciation

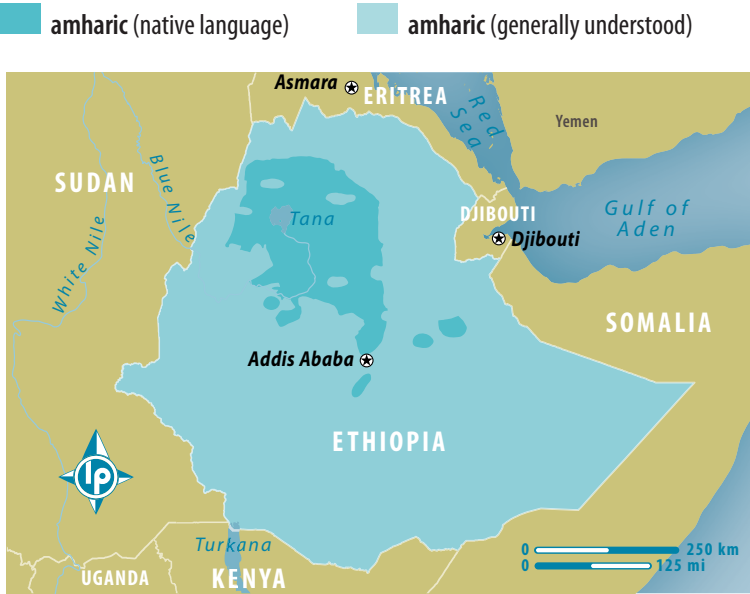
| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                  | Consonants |               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------|---------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | English sound                                    | Symbol     | English sound |
| a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | run                                              | b          | bed           |
| ai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | aisle                                            | ch         | cheat         |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | bet                                              | ch'        | strong ch     |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | see                                              | d          | dog           |
| i                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | hit                                              | f          | fun           |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | pot                                              | g          | go            |
| ow                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | now                                              | h          | hat           |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | put                                              | j          | jar           |
| uh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | ago                                              | k          | kit           |
| '                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | like the pause in 'uh-oh' (comes before a vowel) | k'         | strong k      |
| <div>In this chapter, the Amharic pronunciation is given in light blue after each phrase.</div> <div>Each syllable is separated by a dot. For example:</div> <div>ይፋርታ yi-k'ir-ta</div> <div>Amharic's glottalised consonants, simplified as ch', k', p', s' and t' in our pronunciation guide, are made by tightening and releasing the space between the vocal cords when you pronounce the sound, a bit like combining it with the ' sound listed above.</div> |                                                  | l          | lot           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | m          | man           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | n          | not           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | ny         | canyon        |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | p          | pet           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | p'         | poping p      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | r          | run (trilled) |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | s          | sun           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | s'         | hissing s     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | sh         | shot          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | t          | top           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | t'         | spitting t    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | v          | very          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | w          | win           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | y          | yes           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | z          | zero          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                  | zh         | pleasure      |

# AMHARIC

አማርኛ

## introduction

If you're a reggae fan, you already know at least one phrase from Amharic (አማርኛ a-mar-nya), courtesy of Bob Marley and the Wailers' anthem 'One Love/People Get Ready' – *Fiqir bandinet* fi-k'ir band-nuht (one love) expresses the idea of unity or oneness central to Rastafarianism. Bob Marley wasn't the first to use Amharic for artistic purposes, of course: it's been used to create works of art for centuries. In fact, the earliest known Amharic writings are poems in praise of an emperor dating back to the 14th century AD. A Semitic language belonging to the Afro-Asiatic family, Amharic began to spread in the 10th to 12th centuries, when power shifted to the present Amhara region after the decline of the Aksumite Empire. Most of the world's 27 million Amharic speakers live in Ethiopia, where it's the official language and the most widely used of the more than 80 indigenous Ethiopian languages. Learning just a few basic phrases will smooth your way through this fascinating country.



## language difficulties

### Do you speak English?

እንግሊዘኛ ትችላለህ?

'in-gee-zuh-nya ti-chi-la-luh-hi m

እንግሊዘኛ ትችያለሽ?

'in-gee-zuh-nya ti-chia-luhsh f

### Do you understand?

ገባህ/ገባሽ?

guh-bah/guh-bash m/f

### I (don't) understand.

(አል)ገባኝ(ም)

('al-)guh-bany(-mi)

### Could you please ...? እባክህ/እባክሽ ...?

repeat that

ድገመው/

'i-ba-kih/'i-ba-kish ... m/f

ድገሚው

di-guh-muhw/

speak more slowly

በዝግታ አውራ

di-guh-meew m/f

በዝግታ አውሪ

buh-zi-gi-ta 'ow-ra m

write it down

ጻፈው/ጻፈው

buh-zi-gi-ta 'ow-ree f

s'a-fuhw/s'a-feew m/f

## time, dates & numbers

### What time is it?

ስንት ሰአት ነው?

sint suh-'at nuhw

It's (two) o'clock.

(ስምንት) ሰአት ነው

(si-mint) suh-'at nuhw

Quarter past (one).

(ሰባት) ከሩብ ነው

(suh-bat) kuh-rub nuhw

Half past (one).

(ሰባት) ተኩል ነው

(suh-bat) tuh-kul nuhw

Quarter to (eight).

ለ(ሁለት) ሩብ ጉዳይ ነው

luh-(hu-luht) rub gu-dai nuhw

At what time ...?

በስንት ሰአት...?

buh-sint suh-'at ...

At ...

በ ...

buh ...

It's (15 December).

(ታህሳስ አስራ

(ta-hi-sas 'a-si-ra

አምስት) ነው

'am-mist) nuhw

yesterday

ትላንትና

ti-lan-ti-na

today

ዛሬ

za-re

tomorrow

ነገ

nuh-guh

Monday

ሰኞ

suh-nyo

Tuesday

ማክሰኞ

mak-suh-nyo

Wednesday

ሮብ

rob

Thursday

ሀሙስ

ha-mus

Friday

አርብ

'a-rib

Saturday

ቅዳሜ

k'i-da-me

Sunday

እሁድ

'i-hud

## numbers

|    |          |                 |      |          |                    |
|----|----------|-----------------|------|----------|--------------------|
| 0  | ዜሮ       | ze-ro           | 16   | አስራ ስድስት | a-si-ra si-dist    |
| 1  | አንድ      | and             | 17   | አስራ ሰባት  | a-si-ra suh-bat    |
| 2  | ሁለት      | hu-luht         | 18   | አስራ ስምንት | a-si-ra si-mint    |
| 3  | ሶስት      | sost            | 19   | አስራ ዘጠኝ  | a-si-ra zuh-t'uhny |
| 4  | አራት      | 'ar-at          | 20   | ሃያ       | ha-ya              |
| 5  | አምስት     | 'am-mist        | 21   | ሃያ አንድ   | ha-ya and          |
| 6  | ስድስት     | si-dist         | 22   | ሃያ ሁለት   | ha-ya hu-luht      |
| 7  | ሰባት      | suh-bat         | 30   | ሰላሳ      | suh-la-sa          |
| 8  | ስምንት     | si-mint         | 40   | አርባ      | 'ar-ba             |
| 9  | ዘጠኝ      | zuh-t'uhny      | 50   | ሃምሳ      | ham-sa             |
| 10 | አስር      | a-sir           | 60   | ስልሳ      | sil-sa             |
| 11 | አስራ አንድ  | a-si-ra and     | 70   | ሰባ       | suh-ba             |
| 12 | አስራ ሁለት  | a-si-ra hu-luht | 80   | ሰማንያ     | suh-ma-nia         |
| 13 | አስራ ሶስት  | a-si-ra sost    | 90   | ዘጠና      | zuh-t'uh-na        |
| 14 | አስራ አራት  | a-si-ra 'ar-at  | 100  | መቶ       | muh-to             |
| 15 | አስራ አምስት | a-si-ra am-mist | 1000 | ሺ        | shee               |



## border crossing

I'm here ...

እዚህ ... ነኝ

'i-zeeh ... nuhny

in transit

በትራንዚት ላይ

buh-tran-zeet lai

on business

በስራ ጉዳይ ላይ

buh-si-ra gu-dai lai

on holiday

በእረፍት ላይ

buh-'i-ruhft lai

I'm here

እዚህ ያለሁት

'i-zeeh ya-luh-hut

for ...

ለ ... ነው

luh ... nuhw

(10) days

(አስር) ቀን

(a-sir) k'uhn

(three) weeks

(ሶስት) ሳምንት

(sost) sa-mint

(two) months

(ሁለት) ወር

(hu-luht) wuhr

I'm going to (Meta Abo).

(ሜታ አቦ) እሄዳለሁ

(me-ta 'a-bo) 'i-he-da-luh-hu

I'm staying at the (Hilton Hotel).

(ሂልተን ሆቴል) እቆያለሁ

(heel-tuhn ho-tel) 'i-k'o-ya-luh-hu

## tickets

|                                      |                                                       |                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A ... ticket (to Bahir Dar), please. | አንድ ... ትኬት (ወደባህር ዳር) እባክህ/እባክሽ?                     | and ... ti-ket (wuh-duh ba-hir dar) 'i-ba-kih/'i-ba-kish m/f                                                      |
| one-way (going)                      | የአንድ ጉዞ (መሄጃ) ብቻ                                      | yuh-and gu-zo (muh-he-ja) bi-cha                                                                                  |
| one-way (returning)                  | የአንድ ጉዞ (መመለሻ) ብቻ                                     | yuh-and gu-zo (muh-muh-luh-sha) bi-cha                                                                            |
| return                               | ደርሶ መልስ                                               | duhr-so muh-lis                                                                                                   |
| I'd like to ... my ticket, please.   | ... እፈልግ ነበር እባክህ ትኬቴን ስጠኝ ... እፈልግ ነበር እባክሽ ትኬቴን ስጪኝ | ... 'i-fuh-lig nuh-buhr 'i-ba-kih ti-ke-ten si-t'uhny m ... 'i-fuh-lig nuh-buhr 'i-ba-kish ti-ke-ten si-ch'eeny f |
| cancel                               | መሰረዝ                                                  | muh-suh-ruh-z                                                                                                     |
| change                               | መቀየር                                                  | muh-k'uh-yuhr                                                                                                     |
| collect                              | መውሰድ                                                  | muhw-suhd                                                                                                         |

I'd like a smoking/nonsmoking seat, please.

|                                  |                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| መቀመጫ የሚጨስበት/ የማይጨስበት ቦታ ጋ እፈልጋለሁ | muh-k'uh-muh-ch'a yuh-mee-ch'uh-s-buht/ yuh-mai-ch'uh-s-buht bo-ta ga 'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Is there a toilet?

|             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| ሽንት ቤት አለው? | shint bet 'a-luhw |
|-------------|-------------------|

Is there air conditioning?

|             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| ቬንቲሌተር አለው? | vent-le-tuhr 'a-luhw |
|-------------|----------------------|

How long does the trip take?

|                  |                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| ጉዞው ምን ያህል ይፈጃል? | gu-zo-wi min ya-hil yi-fuh-jal |
|------------------|--------------------------------|

Is it a direct route?

|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| ይሄ ዋናው መንገድ ነው? | yi-he wa-now muhn-guhd nuhw |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|

## transport

Where does the flight (to Addis Ababa) arrive/depart?

|                               |                                                                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (የአዲስ አበባ) በረራ መቼ ይደርሳል/ይነሳል? | (yuh-'a-dees 'a-buh-ba) buh-ruh-ra muh-che yi-duhr-sal/yi-nuh-sal |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|

How long will it be delayed?

|               |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| ምን ያህል ይዘገያል? | min ya-hil yi-zuh-guh-yal |
|---------------|---------------------------|

Is this the ... to (Dire Dawa)?

|       |                            |                                                    |
|-------|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| boat  | ይህ ... ወደ (ድሬዳዋ) የሚሄደው ነው? | yih ... wuh-duh (di-re da-wa) yuh-mee-he-duhw nuhw |
| bus   | ጀልባ                        | juhl-ba                                            |
| plane | አውቶቢስ                      | 'ow-to-bees                                        |
| train | አውሮፕላን ባቡር                 | ow-rop-lan ba-bur                                  |

I'd like to hire a ... (with air conditioning).

|     |                                              |                                                                                                     |
|-----|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| car | እባክህ/እባክሽ (ኤየር ኮንዲሽነር ያለው) ... መከራየት እፈልጋለሁ? | 'i-ba-kih/'i-ba-kish ('e-yuhr kon-dee-shi-nuhr ya-luhw) ... muh-kuh-ra-yuht 'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu m/f |
| 4WD | መኪና ፎር ዊል ድራይቭ                               | muh-kee-na for weel di-ra-yiv                                                                       |

How much is it to ...?

|                         |                                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| ወደ ... ለመሄድ ዋጋው ስንት ነው? | wuh-duh ... luh-muh-hed wa-gow sint nuhw |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|

Please take me to (the museum).

|                               |                                                                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| እባክህ/እባክሽ ወደ (መዝየም) ወሰድኝ/ወሰጁኝ | 'i-ba-kih/'i-ba-kish wuh-duh (mu-zee-yuhm) wi-suh-duhny/wi-suh-jeeny m/f |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|

How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

|                            |                                           |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| ለ(ሶስት) ቀን/ሳምንት ዋጋው ስንት ነው? | luh-(sost) k'uhn/sa-mint wa-gow sint nuhw |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|

## directions

Where's the (nearest) ...?

|                      |                                   |                                                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| internet café market | (ቅርብ) ያለ ... የት ነው? አንተርኔት ካፌ ገበያ | (k'irb) ya-luh ... yuht nuhw 'een-tuhr-net ka-fe guh-buh-ya |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|

Is this the road to the museum?

|                        |                                               |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| ይህ መንገድ ወደ መዝየም ይወስዳል? | yih muhn-guhd wuh-duh mu-zee-yuhm yi-wuhs-dal |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|

Can you show me (on the map)?

|                             |                                                               |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| (ካርታ ላይ) ልታሳየኝ ትችላለህ/ትችያለሽ? | (kar-ta lai) li-ta-sa-yuhny ti-chi-la-luh/ti-chi-ya-luhsh m/f |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|

What's the address?

|              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| አድራሻው የት ነው? | 'ad-ra-show yuht nuhw |
|--------------|-----------------------|

How far is it?

ፖን ያህል ይርቃል? min yahl yir-k'al

How do I get there?

እዚያ እንዴት መሄድ ይቻላል? 'i-zee-ya 'in-det muh-hed yi-cha-lal

Turn left/right.

ወደ ግራ/ቀኝ ታጠፍ wuh-duh gi-ra/k'uhny ta-t'uhf

It's ...

... ነው

... nuhw

behind ...

... ከጀርባ

... kuh-juhr-ba

in front of ...

... ፊት ለፊት

... feet luh-feet

near ...

... አጠገብ

... 'a-t'uh-guhb

next to ...

... ቀጥሎ

... k'uh-t'i-lo

on the corner

መታጠፊያው ላይ

muh-ta-t'uh-fee-yow lai

opposite ...

... ትይዩ

... ti-yi-yu

straight ahead

ቀጥታ

k'uh-t'i-ta

there

እዚያ

'i-zee-ya

## accommodation

Where's a ...?

... የት ነው?

... yuht nuhw

camping ground

የድንኳን ቦታ

yuh-din-ku-wa-nu bo-ta

guesthouse

የእንግዳ ማረፊያ

yuh-'in-gi-da ma-ruh-fee-ya

hotel

ሆቴል

ho-te-lu

youth hostel

ሆስቴል

hos-te-lu

Can you recommend somewhere (cheap/good)?

(ርካሽ/ጥሩ) ቦታ ልትጠቁሙኝ

(ri-kash/t'i-ru) bo-ta li-ti-t'uh-k'u-muhny

ትችላለሁ/ትችያለሽ?

ti-chi-la-luh-hi/ti-chi-ya-luhsh m/f

I'd like to book a room, please.

እባክህ/እባክሽ ክፍል ቡክ

'i-ba-kih/'i-ba-kish ki-fil buk

ማድረግ ፈልጌ ነበር?

mad-ruh-g fuh-li-ge nuh-buhr m/f

I have a reservation.

ክፍል ቡክ አድርጌ ነበር

ki-fil buk 'ad-ri-ge nuh-buhr

Do you have a ... room?

... ክፍል አላችሁ?

... ki-fil 'a-la-chi-hu

single

አንድ

and

double

ሁለት

hu-luht

twin

ሁለት አልጋ ያለው

hu-luht 'al-ga ya-luhw

How much is it per night/person?

በቀን/በሰው ዋጋው ስንት ነው?

buh-k'uhn/buh-suhw wa-gow sint nuhw

I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

(ሁለት) ቀን መቆየት

(hu-luht) k'uhn muh-k'o-yuht

እፈልጋለሁ

'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu

What time is check-out?

ክፍል መልቀቂያው

ki-fil muhl-k'uh-k'ee-yow

ስንት ሰአት ነው?

sint suh-'at nuhw

Am I allowed to camp here?

እዚህ ግቢ ድንኳንዎን

'i-zeeh gi-bee din-ku-wan

መትከል እችላለሁ?

muht-kuhl 'i-chi-la-luh-hu

## banking & communications

I'd like to ...

እባክህ/እባክሽ ...

i-ba-kih/'i-ba-kish ...

እፈልጋለሁ

'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu m/f

arrange a transfer

ገንዘብ ማወር

guhn-zuhb ma-za-wuhr

cash a cheque

ቼክ መመንዘር

chek muh-muhn-zuhr

change a travellers

ትራቭለርስ ቼክ

ti-rav-luhrs chek

cheque

መመንዘር

muh-muhn-zuhr

change money

ገንዘብ

guhn-zuhb

withdraw money

ገንዘብ ማውጣት

muh-muhn-zuhr

I want to ...

... እፈልጋለሁ

... 'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu

buy a phonecard

የስልክ ካርድ መግዛት

yuh-silk kard muhg-zat

call (Australia)

(አውስትራሊያ)

('owst-ra-lee-ya)

መደወል

muh-duh-wuhl

reverse the charges

በተዘዋዋሪ

buh-tuh-zuh-wa-wa-ree

use a printer

ፕሪንተር

pi-reen-tuhr

use the internet

ኢንተርኔት

muh-t'uh-k'uhm

መጠቀም

'een-tuhr-net

How much is it per hour?

በሰአት ስንት ነው?

buh-suh-'at sint nuhw

How much does a (three-minute) call cost?

የ(ሶስት ደቂቃ)

yuh-(sost duh-k'ee-k'a)

ጥሪ ዋጋው ስንት ነው?

t'i-ree wa-gow sint nuhw

(One birr) per minute/hour.

(አንድ ብር) በደቂቃ/በሰአት

(and bir) buh-duh-k'ee-k'a/buh-suh-'at

## tours

|                      |                   |                                        |
|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| When's the next ...? | የሚቀጥለው ... መቼ ነው? | yuh-mee-k'uh-t'i-luhw ... muh-che nuhw |
| day trip             | ውሎ ገባ ጉዞ          | wi-lo guh-ba gu-zo                     |
| tour                 | ሽርሽር              | shi-ri-shir                            |
| Is ... included?     | ... ይጨምራል?        | ... yi-ch'uh-mi-ral                    |
| accommodation        | መኝታን              | muh-nyi-tan                            |
| the admission        | የአገልግሎት           | yuh-'a-guhl-gi-lot                     |
| charge               | ዋጋን               | wa-gan                                 |
| food                 | ምግብን              | mi-gib-n                               |
| transport            | ትራንስፖርትን          | ti-rans-por-tin                        |

How long is the tour?

ሽርሽሩ ምን ያህል ጊዜ ይፈጃል? shi-ri-shi-ru min ya-hil gee-ze yi-fuh-jal

What time should we be back?

በስንት ሰአት እንመለሳለን? buh-sint suh-'at 'in-muh-luh-sa-luhn

## shopping

I'm looking for ...

... እፈልጋለሁ ... 'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu

I need film for this camera.

ለዚህ ካሜራ የሚሆን ፊልም እፈልጋለሁ luh-zeeh ka-me-ra yuh-mee-hon feelm 'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu

Can I listen to this?

ይህንን ማዳመጥ እችላለሁ? yi-hi-nin ma-da-muht' 'i-chi-la-luh-hu

Can I have my ... repaired?

... ማስጠገን እችላለሁ? ... mas-t'uh-guhn 'i-chi-la-luh-hu

When will it be ready?

መቼ ይደርሳል? muh-che yi-duhr-sal

How much is it?

ዋጋው ስንት ነው? wa-gow sint nuhw

Can you write down the price?

ዋጋውን ልትጥፍልኝ ትችላለህ? wa-gown li-ti-s'if-liny ti-chi-la-luh

What's your lowest price?

መጨረሻውን ስንት ትለዋለህ? muh-ch'uh-ruh-sha-win sint ti-luh-wa-luh-hi

I'll give you (five) birr.

(አምስት) ብር እክፍላለሁ ('am-mist) bir 'i-kuhf-la-luh-hu

There's a mistake in the bill.

ቢሉ ላይ ስህተት አለ bee-lu lai sih-tuht 'a-luh

It's faulty.

የተበላሸ ነው yuh-tuh-buh-la-shuh nuhw

I'd like a receipt/refund, please.

እባክህ/እባክሽ ደረሰኝ/ ገንዘቤ እንዲመለስልኝ i-ba-kih/'i-ba-kish duh-ruh-suhny/ guhn-zuh-be 'in-dee-muh-luhs-liny 'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu m/f

Do you accept ...?

|                    |              |                              |
|--------------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| credit cards       | ... ትቀበላላችሁ? | ... ti-k'uh-buh-la-la-chi-hu |
| debit cards        | ክሬዲት ካርድ     | ki-re-deet kard              |
| travellers cheques | ዴቢት ካርድ      | de-beet kard                 |
|                    | ትራቭለርስ ቼክ    | ti-rav-luhrs chek            |

Could you ...?

|                   |             |                        |
|-------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| burn a CD from    | ... ትችላለህ?  | ... ti-chi-la-luh      |
| my memory card    | ሲዲ ክፍኤስ ቢ   | see-dee kuh yu 'es bee |
| develop this film | ኮፒ ይህንን ፊልም | ko-pee                 |
|                   | ልታጥብልኝ      | yi-hi-nin feelm        |
|                   |             | li-ta-t'ib-liny        |

## making conversation

Hello.

Good night.

Goodbye.

Mr

Mrs

Ms/Miss

How are you?

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

Fine, and you?

ይመስገነው አንተስ/አንቺስ?

What's your name?

ማን ትባላለህ?/ትባለሽ?

My name's ...

... ነኝ

ሰላም

ደህና እደር/እደሪ

ደህና ሁን/ ሁኝ

አቶ

ወይዘሮ

ወይዘሪት

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

እንዴት ነህ/ነሽ?

suh-lam

duh-na 'i-duhr/'i-duh-ree m/f

duh-na hun/hun-yee m/f

'a-to

wuhy-zuh-ro

wuhy-zuh-reet

'in-det nuh-hi/nuhsh m/f

yi-muhs-guh-nuhw 'an-tuhs/'an-chees m/f

man ti-ba-la-luh/ti-ba-ya-luhsh m/f

... nuhny

I'm pleased to meet you.

በመተዋወቃችን ደስ ብሎኛል buh-muh-tuh-wa-wuh-k'a-chin duhs bi-lon-yal

This is my ...

እሱ ...-ዬ ነው

'i-su ...-ye nuhw

boyfriend

የወንድ ጉዋደኛ

yuh-wuhnd gu-wa-duhn-ya

brother

ወንድም

wuhn-dim

daughter

ሴት ልጅ

set lij

father

አባት

'a-bat

friend

ጉዋደኛ

gu-wa-duh-nya

girlfriend

የሴት ጉዋደኛ

yuh-set gu-wa-duh-nya

husband

ባል

bal

mother

እናት

'i-nat

partner

ባልንጀራ/ሽርካ

bal-ni-juh-ra/shi-ri-ka m/f

sister

እህት

'i-hit

son

ልጅ

lij

wife

ሚስት

mist

Here's my ...

... ይኸው

... yi-huh-wi

What's your ....?

... ልትሰጠኝ ትችላለህ?

... li-ti-suh-t'uhny ti-chi-la-luh

address

አድራሻህን

'ad-ra-sha-hin

email address

ኢሜልህን

'ee-me-li-hin

phone number

ስልክ ቁጥርህን

silk k'u-t'ir-hin

Where are you from?

ከየት ነህ?

kuh-yuht nuh-hi

I'm from ...

እኔ ከ- ... ነኝ

'i-ne kuh-... nuhny

Australia

አውስትራሊያ

'owst-ra-lee-ya

New Zealand

ኒው ዝላንድ

neew zi-land

the UK

እንግሊዝ

'in-gleez

the USA

አሜሪካ

'a-me-ree-ka

I'm married.

አግብቻለሁ

'ag-bi-cha-luh-hu

I'm not married.

አላግባሁም

'a-la-guh-ba-hum

Can I take a photo

ፎቶ ላኑሳ(ህ)/ላኑሳ(ሽ)

fo-to la-nuh-sa(h)/la-nuh-sa(sh)

(of you)?

እችላለሁ?

'i-chi-la-luh-hu m/f

## eating out

Can you recommend  
a ...?

ጥሩ ... ልትጠቁመኝ  
ትችላለህ?

t'i-ru ... li-ti-t'uh-k'u-muhny  
ti-chi-la-luh

bar

ቡና ቤት

bu-na bet

dish

ምግብ

mi-gib

place to eat

ምግብ ቤት

mi-gib bet

I'd like ...,  
please.

እባክህ/እባክሽ ...

'i-ba-kih/'i-ba-kish ...

the bill

እፈልጋለሁ

'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu m/f

the menu

ቢል

beel

a table for

ሜኑ

me-nu

(two)

ጠረጴዛ

t'uh-ruh-p'e-za

that dish

(ለሁለት) ሰው

(luh-hu-luht) suhw

Do you have

የጾም ምግብ

yuh-s'om mi-gib

vegetarian food?

አላችሁ?

'a-la-chi-hu

Could you

ምግብ ያለ ...

mi-gib ya-luh ...

prepare a meal

ልታዘጋጁልኝ ትችያለሽ?

li-ta-zuh-ga-jee-lin ti-chi-ya-luhsh f

without ...?

ምግብ ያለ ...

mi-gib ya-luh ...

eggs

ልታዘጋጁልኝ ትችላለህ?

li-ta-zuh-gaj-lin ti-chi-la-luh-hi m

meat stock

እንቁላል

'in-k'u-lal

(cup of) coffee ...

ስጋ

(and si-nee) bu-na ...

(cup of) tea ...

(አንድ ስኒ) ቡና ...

(and si-nee) shai ...

with milk

(አንድ ስኒ) ሻይ ...

buh-wuh-tuht

without sugar

በወተት

ya-luh si-ku-war

(boiled) water

ያለ ስኩዋር

(yuh-fuh-la) wi-ha

## emergencies

Help!

እርዳታ እርዳታ!

'ir-da-ta 'ir-da-ta

I'm lost.

ጠፋብኝ

t'uh-fa-biny

Call ...!

... ጥራልኝ/ጥሪልኝ

... t'i-ra-liny/t'i-ree-liny m/f

an ambulance

አምቡላንስ

'am-bu-lans

a doctor

ዶክተር

dok-tuhr

the police

ፖሊስ

po-lees

Could you help me, please?

ልትረዳኝ ትችላለህ?

lit-ruh-dany ti-chi-la-luh m

ልትረጃኝ ትችያለሽ?

lit-ruh-jeeny ti-chi-ya-luhsh f

Where are the toilets?

ሽንት ቤት የት ነው?

shint bet yuht nuhw

I want to report an offence.

ጥቃቱን ሪፖርት ማድረግ

t'i-k'a-tun ree-port mad-ruh

እፈልጋለሁ

'i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu

I have insurance.

ኢንሹራንስ አለኝ

‘in-shu-rans ‘a-luhny

I want to contact my consulate/embassy.

ከቆንስላዩ/ከኤምባሲዬ ጋር  
መገናኘት እፈልጋለሁ

kuh-k’ons-la-ye/kuh-‘em-ba-see-ye gar  
muh-guh-na-nyuht ‘i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu

I’ve been ...

assaulted  
raped  
robbed

እኔ ...

ተጠቃሁ  
ተደፈርኩ  
ተዘረፍኩ

‘i-ne ...

tuh-t’uh-k’a-hu  
tuh-duh-fuhr-ku  
tuh-zuh-ruhf-ku

I’ve lost my ...

My ... was/were stolen.

bags  
credit card  
handbag  
jewellery  
money  
passport  
travellers cheques  
wallet

... ጠፋብኝ

የኔ ... ተሰረቀ

ሻንጣ  
ክሬዲት ካርድ  
የጅ ቦርሳ  
ገንዘብ  
ፓስፖርት  
ትራቭለርስ ጅክ  
የኪስ ቦርሳ

... t’uh-fa-biny

yuh-ne ... tuh-suh-ruh-k’uh

shan-t’a  
ki-re-deet kard  
yuhj bor-sa  
ge-t’a-get’  
guhn-zuhb  
pas-port  
ti-rav-luhrs chek  
yuh-kees bor-sa

## medical needs

Where’s the  
nearest ...?

dentist  
doctor  
hospital  
pharmacist

በቅርብ ያለ ...  
የት ነው?

የጥርስ ሃኪም  
ዶክተር  
ሆስፒታል  
ፋርማሲስት

buh-k’irb ya-luh ...  
yuht nuhw

yuh-t’irs ha-keem  
dok-tuhr  
hos-pee-tal  
far-ma-seest

I need a doctor (who speaks English).

(እንግሊዘኛ የሚናገር)  
ሀኪም እፈልጋለሁ

(‘in-gee-zuhn-ya yuh-mee-na-guhr)  
ha-keem ‘i-fuh-li-ga-luh-hu

Could I see a female doctor?

ሴት ዶክተር ልታየኝ ትችላለች?

set dok-tuhr li-ta-yuhny ti-chi-la-luhch

It hurts here.

እዚህ ጋ ያመኛል

‘i-zeeh ga ya-muhn-yal

I’m allergic to (penicillin).

ለ(ፔኒሲሊን) አለርጂ ነኝ

luh-(pe-nee-see-leen) ‘a-luhr-jee nuhny

## english–amharic dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), m (masculine), f (feminine), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

### A

accommodation ማደሪያ ma-duh-ree-ya  
adaptor አዳፕተር a-dap-tuhr  
after በሁዋላ buh-hu-wa-la  
airport አይሮፖርት ማረፊያ  
ai-rop-lan ma-ruh-fee-ya  
alcohol አልኮል al-kol  
all ሁሉ hu-lu  
allergy አለርጂ ‘a-luhr-jee  
and እና i-na  
ankle ቁርጭም ጭሚት k’ur-ch’im-ch’im-it  
antibiotics አንቲባዮቲክ an-tee-ba-yo-teeek  
arm ክንድ kind  
aspirin አስፕሪን asp-ree-in  
asthma አስም as-m  
ATM ኤቴኤም ey-tee-em

### B

baby ህፃን hi-s’an  
back (body) ጀርባ juh-ri-ba  
backpack ባክ ፓክ bak pak  
bad መጥፎ muht’-fo  
baggage claim ሻንጣ መጠየቂያ  
shan-t’a muh-t’uh-yuh-k’ee-ya  
bathroom መታጠቢያ ቤት muh-ta-t’uh-bi-ya bet  
battery ባትሪ ድንጋይ ba-tree din-gai  
beautiful ቆንጆ k’on-jo  
bed አልጋ al-ga  
beer ቢራ bee-ra  
bees ንብ nib  
before በፊት buh-feet  
bicycle ብስክሊት bisk-let  
big ትልቅ ti-lik’  
blanket ብርድ ልብስ bird libs  
blood group የደም አይነት yuh-duhm ‘ai-nuht  
bottle ጠርመስ t’uhr-mus  
bottle opener ጠርመስ መክፈኛ  
t’uhr-mus muhk-fuh-cha  
boy ልጅ lij  
brakes (car) ፍሬን fi-ren

breakfast ቁርስ k’urs

bronchitis ብሮንክይትስ bi-ron-kaits

### C

cancel መሰረዝ muh-suh-ruhz  
can opener ጣሳ መክፈኛ t’a-sa muhk-fuh-cha  
cash ጠ ገንዘብ guhn-zuhb  
cell phone ሞባይል mo-bail  
centre ጠ ማእከል ma-‘i-kuhl  
cheap ርካሽ ri-kash  
check (bill) ጅክ chek  
check-in ጠ ጅክ ኢን chek een  
chest ደረት duh-ruht  
child ልጅ lij  
cigarette ሲጋራ see-ga-ra  
city ከተማ kuh-tuh-ma  
clean ል ጌዳ-ህ ni-s’uh  
closed ዝግ zig  
codeine ኮዲን ko-din  
cold ል ጉንፋን gun-fan  
collect call በተዘዋዋሪ buh-tuh-zuh-wa-wa-ree  
condom ኮንዶም kon-duhm  
constipation ድርቀት dir-k’uht  
contact lenses የአይን መነጻር  
yuh-ain muh-nuh-s’ir  
currency exchange የውጭ ምንዛሪ  
yuh-wich’ mi-ni-za-ree  
customs (immigration) ጉምሩክ gum-ruk

### D

dairy products የወተት ተዋጽኦ  
yuh-wuh-tuht tuh-wa-s’i-o  
dangerous አደገኛ ‘a-duh-guhy-na  
date (time) ቀን k’uht  
day ቀን k’uht  
diaper ዳይፕር dai-puhr  
diarrhoea ተቅማጥ tuh-k’i-mat’  
dinner እራት i-rat  
dirty ቆሻሻ k’o-sha-sha  
disabled አካል ስንኩል ‘a-ka-luh sin-kul

double bed ሁለት አልጋ በአንድ ክፍል  
hu-luht al-ga buh-an-id ki-fil  
drink ጠ መጠጥ muh-t'uh't  
drivers licence መንጃ ፈቃድ muhn-ja fuh-k'ad  
drug (illicit) አደንዛዥ ዕጽ 'a-duhn-zazh 'is'

## E

ear ጆሮ jo-ro  
east ምስራቅ mis-rak'  
email ኢሜይል 'ee-me-yil  
English (language) እንግሊዘኛ 'ing-lee-zuhn-ya  
exchange rate የውጭ ምንዛሪ ዋጋ  
yuh-wich' min-za-ree wa-ga  
exit ጠ መውጫ muh-wi-ch'a  
expensive ውድ wid  
eye አይን 'ain

## F

fast ፈጣን fuh-t'an  
fever ትኩሳት ti-ku-sat  
finger ጣት t'at  
first class አንደኛ ማእረግ  
'an-duh-nya ma-'i-ruhg  
fish ጠ አሳ 'a-sa  
food ምግብ mi-gib  
foot እግር 'i-gir  
fork ሽኩሳ shu-ka  
free (of charge) ነጻ nuh-s'a  
fruit ፍራፍሬ fi-ra-fi-re  
funny አስቂኝ 'as-k'eeny

## G

game park ፓርክ park  
gift ስጦታ si-t'o-ta  
girl ልጃገረድ li-ja-guh-ruhd  
glass (drinking) ብርጭቆ bir-ch'i-k'o  
glasses መነጽር muh-nuh-s'ir  
gluten አንጻባራቂ 'an-s'uh-ba-ra-k'ee  
good ጥሩ t'i-ru  
guide ጠ መሪ muh-ree

## H

hand እጅ 'ij  
happy ደስታ duh-si-ta  
have አለው/አላት ㊟/㊦ 'a-luhw/'a-lat

he እሱ 'i-su  
head ራስ ras  
headache ራስ ምታት ras mi-tat  
heart ልብ lib  
heart condition የልብ ሁኖቴ yuh-lib hu-na-te  
heat ጠ ሙቀት mu-k'uh't  
here እዚህ 'i-zeeh  
high ከፍ ያለ kuhf ya-luh  
highway የቀለበት መንገድ  
yuh-k'uh-luh-buht muhn-guht  
homosexual ጠ&ፈላግ ho-ho  
hot ሙቅ muk'  
hungry ረሀብ ruh-hab

## I

I እኔ 'i-ne  
identification (card) መታወቂያ muh-ta-wuh-k'ee-ya  
ill ታመመ ta-muh-muh  
important አስፈላጊ 'as-fuh-la-gee  
internet ኢንተርኔት 'een-tuhr-net  
interpreter አስተርጓሚ 'as-tuhr-gu-wa-mee

## J

job ስራ si-ra

## K

key ቁልፍ K'u-lif  
kilogram ኪሎ ግራም kee-lo gi-ram  
kitchen ማድ ቤት mad bet  
knife ቢላዋ bee-la-wa

## L

laundry (place) ላውንደሪ la-win-duh-ree  
lawyer ጠበቃ t'uh-buh-k'a  
left-luggage office እቃ መረከቢያ መጋዘን  
'i-k'a muh-ruh-kuh-bee-ya muh-ga-zuhn  
leg እግር 'i-gir  
lesbian ጠ&ፈላጊ lez-bee-yan  
less ያነሰ ya-nuh-suh  
letter (mail) ደብዳቤ duhb-da-be  
like ህ ወደደ wuh-duh-duh  
lost-property office ፖሊስ ጣቢያ  
po-lees t'a-bee-ya  
love ህ አፈቀረ 'a-fuh-k'uh-ruh  
lunch ምሳ mi-sa

## M

man ሰው suhw  
matches ክብራት kib-reet  
meat ስጋ si-ga  
medicine መድሀኒት muhd-ha-neet  
message መልእክት muhl-'ikt  
month ወር wuhr  
morning ጠዋት t'uh-wat  
mouth አፍ 'af  
movie ሲኒማ see-nee-ma  
MSG ሜሴንጆር me-sen-juhr  
museum ሙዚየም mu-zee-yuhm  
music ሙዚቃ mu-zee-k'a

## N

name ጠ ስም sim  
napkin ናፕኪን nap-keen  
nappy ዳይፐር dai-puhr  
national park ብሄራዊ ፖርክ bi-he-ra-wee park  
nausea ማጥልልል mat'wuhl-wuhl  
neck አንገት 'an-guht  
new አዲስ 'a-dees  
news ዜና ze-na  
newspaper ጋዜጣ ga-ze-t'a  
night ምሽት mi-shit  
nightclub የምሽት ክብብ yuh-mi-shit ki-buhb  
noisy የሚረብሽ yuh-mee-ruh-bish  
nonsmoking የማይጨስበት yuh-mai-ch'uh-s-buht  
north ሰሜን suh-men  
nose አፍንጫ 'a-fin-ch'a  
now አሁን 'a-hun  
number ቁጥር K'u-t'ir  
nuts አቾሎኒ 'o-cho-lo-nee

## O

oil (engine) የሞተር ዘይት yuh-mo-tuhr zuh-yit  
OK እሺ 'i-shee  
old አርጌ 'a-ro-ge  
open ለክፍት kift  
outside ውጪ wi-ch'ee

## P

package ፓኬጅ pa-kej  
pain ሀመም hi-muhm

paper ወረቀት wuh-ruh-k'uh't  
park (car) ህ ማቆም ma-k'om  
passport ፓስፖርት pas-port  
pay ህ ክፈል ki-fuhl  
pen ብእር bi-'ir  
petrol ቤንዚን ben-zeen  
pharmacy ፋርማሲ far-ma-see  
plate ሳህን sa-hin  
postcard ፖስት ካርድ post kard  
post office ፖስታ ቤት pos-ta bet  
pregnant እርጉዝ 'ir-guz

## Q

quiet ጸጥ ያለ s'uh't' ya-luh

## R

rain ጠ ዝናብ zi-nab  
razor ምላጭ mi-lach'  
registered mail ሪከማንዴ ree-ko-man-de  
rent ህ ተከራየ ㊟ tuh-kuh-ra-yuh  
repair ህ ጣን ㊟ t'uh-guh-nuh  
reservation መያዝ muh-yaz  
restaurant ሬስቶራንት res-to-rant  
return ህ መለስ/መለሰች ㊟/㊦  
muh-luh-suh/muh-luh-suhch  
road መንገድ muhn-guht  
room ክፍል ki-fil

## S

sad ሀዘን ha-zuhn  
safe ልሳም suh-lam  
sanitary napkin ሞዴስ mo-des  
seafood የባህር ምግቦች yuh-ba-hir mi-gib-och  
seat መቀመጫ muh-k'uh-muh-ch'a  
send መላክ muh-lak  
sex ጾታ s'o-ta  
shampoo ሻምፑ sham-pu  
share (a dorm, etc) ለሁለት መከራየት  
luh-hu-luht muh-kuh-ra-yuht  
shaving cream የጸም መላጫ ሳሙና  
yuh-s'eem muh-la-ch'a sa-mu-na  
she እሱዋ 'i-su-wa  
sheet (bed) አንሶላ 'an-so-la  
shirt ሽሚዝ shuh-meez  
shoes ጫማ ch'a-ma  
shop ጠ ሱቅ suk'

shower ጥሽ ወር sha-wuhr  
 skin ቆዳ k'o-da  
 skirt ቀሚስ k'uh-mis  
 sleep ተኝ ጠ tuh-nya  
 small ትንሽ ti-nish  
 smoke (cigarettes) ህ ማጨስ ma-ch'uh-s  
 soap ሳሙና sa-mu-na  
 some ጥቂት t'i-k'et  
 soon በቅርብ buh-k'irb  
 sore throat የቆሰሰ ጉሮሮ yuh-k'o-suh-luh gu-ro-ro  
 south ደቡብ duh-bub  
 speak ተናገር tuh-na-guhr  
 spoon ማንኪያ man-kee-ya  
 stamp ቴምብር tem-bir  
 stand-by ticket የተጠበቀ ትኬት  
   yuh-tuh-t'uh-ba-ba-k'ee ti-ket  
 station (train) ማቢያ t'a-bee-ya  
 stomach ሆድ hod  
 stop ህ ቆመ k'o-muh  
 stop (bus) ጠ ፈርማታ fer-ma-ta  
 street መንገድ muhn-guhd  
 student ተማሪ tuh-ma-ree  
 sunscreen የጸሀይ መከላከያ  
   yuh-s'uh-hai muh-kuh-la-kuh-ya  
 swim ህ ዋኘ wa-nyuh

## T

tampons ጎዝ goz  
 teeth ጥርስ t'irs  
 telephone ጠ ስልክ silk  
 television ቴቪ tee-vee  
 temperature (weather) ሙቀት mu-k'uh-t  
 tent ድንኳን din-ku-wan  
 that (one) ያ ya  
 they እነሱ 'i-nuh-su  
 thirsty መጠማት muh-t'uh-mat  
 this (one) ይህ yih  
 throat ጉሮሮ gu-ro-ro  
 ticket ትኬት ti-ket  
 time ጊዜ gee-ze  
 tired ደክመ duh-kuh-muh  
 tissues ሶፍት soft  
 today ዛሬ za-re  
 toilet ሽንት ቤት shint bet  
 tonight ዛሬ ማታ za-re ma-ta  
 toothache የጥርስ ህመም yuh-t'irs hi-muhm  
 toothbrush የጥርስ ብሩሽ yuh-t'irs bi-rush  
 toothpaste የጥርስ ሳሙና yuh-t'irs sa-mu-na  
 torch (flashlight) ባትሪ bat-ree

towel ፎጣ fo-t'a  
 translate መተርጎም muh-tuhr-gom  
 travel agency የጉዞ ወኪል yuh-gu-zo wuh-keel  
 trousers ሱሪ su-ree  
 twin beds ሁለት አልጋ hu-luht al-ga  
 tyre ጎማ go-ma

## U

underwear ቡታንታ bu-tan-ta  
 urgent አስቸኩዋይ as-chuh-ku-wai

## V

vacant ክፍት ቦታ kift bo-ta  
 vegetable ጠ አትክልት 'at-kilt  
 vegetarian ል አትክልት ተመጋቢ  
   'at-kilt tuh-muh-ga-bee  
 visa ቪዛ vee-za

## W

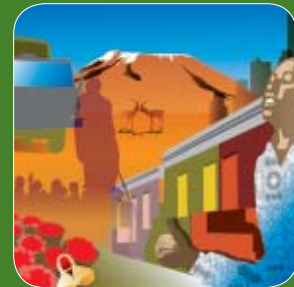
waiter አስተናጋጅ as-tuh-na-gaj  
 walk ህ በእግር መጉዋዝ buh-'i-gir muh-gu-waz  
 wallet የኪስ ቦርሳ yuh-kees bor-sa  
 warm ል ሙቅ muk'  
 wash (something) ማጠብ ma-t'uhb  
 watch ጠ ማየት ma-yuht  
 water ውሀ wi-ha  
 we እኛ 'i-nya  
 weekend የሳምንቱ መጨረሻ  
   yuh-sa-min-tu muh-ch'uh-ruh-sha  
 west ምእራብ mi-'i-rab  
 wheelchair ዊል ቸር weel chuhr  
 when መጽ muh-che  
 where የት yuht  
 who ማን man  
 why ለምን luh-min  
 window መስኮት muhs-kot  
 wine ወይን wuh-yin  
 with ጋር gar  
 without ያለ ya-luh  
 woman ሴት set  
 write መጻፍ muh-s'af

## Y

you sg inf አንተ/አንቺ ጠ/ጥ an-tuh/an-chee  
 you sg pol እርስዎ 'ir-si-wo  
 you pl inf&pol እናንተ 'in-an-tuh

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# Arabic



# pronunciation

| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                    | Consonants |                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | English sound                                                                      | Symbol     | English sound                         |
| a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | act                                                                                | b          | bed                                   |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | father                                                                             | d          | dog                                   |
| aw                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | paw                                                                                | dh         | that                                  |
| ay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | say                                                                                | f          | fun                                   |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | bet                                                                                | gh         | a guttural sound, like the French 'r' |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | see                                                                                | h          | hat                                   |
| i                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | hit                                                                                | j          | jar                                   |
| oo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | zoo                                                                                | k          | kit                                   |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | put                                                                                | kh         | as the 'ch' in the Scottish 'loch'    |
| '                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | a pronounced with the throat constricted – like the pause in the middle of 'uh-oh' | l          | lot                                   |
| <p>In this chapter, the Arabic pronunciation is given in green after each phrase.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot, and the syllable stressed in each word is italicised.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>نعم <i>na-'am</i></p> |                                                                                    | m          | man                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | n          | not                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | r          | run                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | s          | sun                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | sh         | shot                                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | t          | top                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | th         | thin                                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | w          | win                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | y          | yes                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    | z          | zero                                  |

# ARABIC

العربية

## introduction

It may have given us the terms 'algebra' and 'massacre', but we can also thank Arabic for the names of more pleasant things like 'alcohol', 'coffee' and 'jasmine'. Arabic (العربية al-'a-ra-bee-ya) belongs to the Semitic branch of the Afro-Asiatic language family, and is closely related to Hebrew and Aramaic. The language of the Quran (Koran), Arabic owes its wide spread to the advent of Islam and the subsequent rise of the Muslim Empire during the 7th and 8th centuries. It's the sixth-most spoken language in the world, with more than 200 million native speakers worldwide, it's the official language of the Arab nations that spread across the Middle East and North Africa (comprising 323 million people), and it's a national language of Mali, Senegal and Somalia. Though there are many groups of Arab dialects – which can be broadly divided into North African and Middle Eastern dialects – Modern Standard Arabic (MSA) is the form of Arabic used by the media and taught in schools in the Arab world. So if you're planning to visit an Arabic-speaking country, start getting your mind – and tongue – around some MSA phrases!

arabic (native language)

arabic (generally understood)



## language difficulties

Do you speak English?

هل تتكلم/تتكلمين؟  
الإنجليزية؟  
hal ta-ta-kal-la-mu/ta-ta-kal-la-mee-na  
al-'inj-lee-zee-ya m/f

Do you understand?

هل تفهم/تفهمين؟  
hal taf-ha-mu/taf-ha-mee-na m/f

I (don't) understand.

أنا (لا) أفهم.  
'a-naa (laa) 'af-ham

Could you

please ...?

repeat that

speak more slowly

write it down

لو سمحت

يمكنك أن ... ؟

تكرر ذلك

تتكلم ببطء

تكتبه على الورقة

law sa-mah-ta

yum-ki-nu-ka 'an ... m

tu-ka-ri-ra dhaa-lik

ta-ta-kal-la-ma bi-but'

tak-tu-ba-hu 'a-laa al-wa-ra-ka

## time, dates & numbers

What time is it?

It's one o'clock.

It's (two) o'clock.

Quarter past (two).

Half past (two).

Quarter to (two).

At what time ...?

At ...

It's (15 December).

كم الساعة الآن؟

الساعة الواحدة.

الساعة (الثانية).

(الثانية) والرابع.

(الثانية) والنصف.

(الثانية) إلا الرابع.

في أي ساعة ...؟

في ...

أته (الخامس عشر من ديسمبر).

kam as-saa-'a-tul 'aan

as-saa-'a-tul waa-hi-da

as-saa-'a-tu (ath-thaa-nee-ya)

(ath-thaa-nee-ya-tu) war-rub-'u

(ath-thaa-nee-ya-tu) wan-nus-fu

(ath-thaa-nee-ya-tu) 'il-la ar-rub-'u

fee 'ay-yee saa-'a-tin ...

fee ...

'in-na-hu (al-khaa-mis 'a-shar

min dee-sem-bir)

yesterday

today

tomorrow

أمس

اليوم

غداً

'am-si

al-yawm

gha-dan

Monday

Tuesday

Wednesday

Thursday

Friday

Saturday

Sunday

يوم الاثنين

يوم الثلاثاء

يوم الأربعاء

يوم الخميس

يوم الجمعة

يوم السبت

يوم الأحد

yawm al-'ith-nayn

yawm ath-thu-laa-thaa'

yawm al-'ar-bi-'aa

yawm al-kha-meess

yawm al-jum-'a

yawm as-sabt

yawm al-'a-had

## numbers

|       |           |                        |       |            |                          |
|-------|-----------|------------------------|-------|------------|--------------------------|
| 0 ٠   | صفر       | sifr                   | 16 ١٦ | سبعة عشر   | sit-ta-ta 'a-shar        |
| 1 ١   | واحد      | waa-hid                | 17 ١٧ | ثمانية عشر | sa-ba'-ta 'a-shar        |
| 2 ٢   | اثنان     | 'ith-naa               | 18 ١٨ | تسعة عشر   | tha-maa-ni-ya-ta 'a-shar |
| 3 ٣   | ثلاثة     | tha-laa-tha            | 19 ١٩ | عشرون      | tis-'a-ta 'a-shar        |
| 4 ٤   | أربعة     | 'ar-ba-'a              | 20 ٢٠ | واحد       | 'ish-roon                |
| 5 ٥   | خمسة      | kham-sa                | 21 ٢١ | واحد       | waa-hid                  |
| 6 ٦   | سبعة      | sit-ta                 | 22 ٢٢ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |
| 7 ٧   | ثمانية    | sa-b'a                 | 23 ٢٣ | واحد       | 'ith-naa                 |
| 8 ٨   | تسعة      | tha-maa-ni-ya          | 24 ٢٤ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |
| 9 ٩   | عشرة      | tis-'a                 | 25 ٢٥ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |
| 10 ١٠ | واحد عشر  | 'a-sha-ra              | 26 ٢٦ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |
| 11 ١١ | اثنان عشر | 'a-ha-da 'a-shar       | 27 ٢٧ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |
| 12 ١٢ | اثنان عشر | 'ith-naa 'a-shar       | 28 ٢٨ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |
| 13 ١٣ | ثلاثة عشر | tha-laa-tha-ta 'a-shar | 29 ٢٩ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |
| 14 ١٤ | أربعة عشر | 'ar-ba-'a-ta 'a-shar   | 30 ٣٠ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |
| 15 ١٥ | خمسة عشر  | kham-sa-ta 'a-shar     | 31 ٣١ | واحد       | wa-'ish-roon             |

## border crossing

|                              |                          |                                       |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| I'm here ...                 | غرض زيارتي هو ...        | gha-ra-du zee-yaa-ra-tee hu-wa ...    |
| in transit (to) ...          | العبور (إلى) ...         | al-'u-boo-ru ('i-laa) ...             |
| on business                  | التجارة                  | at-ti-jaa-ra                          |
| on holiday                   | السياحة                  | as-see-yaa-ha                         |
| I'm here for ...             | مدة إقامتي هنا ...       | mud-da-tu 'i-kaa-ma-tee hu-na ...     |
| (10) days                    | (عشرة) أيام              | ('a-sha-ra-tu) 'ay-yaam               |
| (three) weeks                | (ثلاثة) أسابيع           | (tha-laa-tha-tu) 'a-saa-bee'          |
| (four) months                | (أربعة) أشهر             | ('ar-ba-'a-tu) 'ash-hur               |
| I'm going to (Khartoum).     | سأسافر إلى (الخرطوم).    | sa-'u-saa-fi-ru 'i-laa (al-khar-toom) |
| I'm staying at the (Hilton). | سأقيم بـ(فندق الهيلتون). | sa-'u-kee-mu bi-(fun-du-kil hil-toon) |

## tickets

|                                          |                                      |                                                             |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| A ... ticket<br>(to Cairo), please.      | تذكرة ...<br>(إلى القاهرة)، لو سمحت. | tadh-ka-ra-tu ...<br>(‘i-laa al-kaa-hi-ra) law<br>sa-mah-ta |
| one-way                                  | ذهاب فقط                             | dha-haa-bu fa-kat                                           |
| return                                   | ذهاب وإياب                           | dha-haa-bu wa-‘ee-yaab                                      |
| I'd like to ... my<br>my ticket, please. | أريد أن ...<br>تذكرتي، لو سمحت.      | ‘u-ree-du ‘an ...<br>tadh-ki-ra-tee law sa-mah-ta           |
| cancel                                   | ألغي                                 | ‘ul-ghi-ya                                                  |
| change                                   | أغير                                 | ‘u-ghay-yi-ra                                               |
| collect                                  | أجمع                                 | ‘aj-ma-‘a                                                   |
| I'd like a ... seat,<br>please.          | أريد مقعداً ...<br>لو سمحت.          | ‘u-ree-du mak-‘a-dan ...<br>law sa-mah-ta                   |
| nonsmoking                               | في قسم غير<br>المدخنين               | fee kis-mi ghay-ril<br>mu-dakh-khi-neen                     |
| smoking                                  | في قسم المدخنين                      | fee kis-mil mu-dakh-khi-neen                                |

Is there air conditioning?

هل يوجد مكيف الهواء؟ hal yoo-ja-du mu-kay-ya-ful ha-waa’

Is there a toilet?

هل يوجد دورات المياه؟ hal yoo-ja-du daw-raa-tul mee-yaah

How long does the trip take?

كم مدة الرحلة؟ kam mud-da-ti ar-rih-la

Is it a direct route?

هل الطريق مباشر؟ hal at-ta-reek mu-baa-shir



## transport

Where does flight (CL58) arrive/depart?

من أين تغادر/ تصل رحلة  
(سي ال ٥٨)؟ min ‘ay-na tu-ghaa-di-ru/ta-si-lu rih-la  
(see el tha-maa-ni-ya wa kham-soon)

How long will it be delayed?

كم ساعة سيتأخر؟ kam saa-‘a-tin sa-ya-ta-‘akh-khir

Is this the ...

to (Alexandria)?

boat

bus

plane

train

هل هذا الـ ...

إلى (الاسكندرية)؟

سفينة

باص

طائرة

قطار

hal haa-dhaa al ...

‘i-laa (al-‘is-kan-da-ree-ya)

sa-fee-na

baas

taa-‘i-ra

ki-taar

How much is it to ...?

كم الأجرة إلى ...؟ kam al-‘uj-ra-ti ‘i-laa ...

Please take me to (this address).

أوصلني عند (هذا العنوان)

لو سمحت.

‘aw-sal-nee ‘ind (haa-dhaa al-‘un-waan)

law sa-mah-ta

I'd like to hire a ...

car

4WD

أريد أن أستأجر ...

سيارة

سيارة ذات الدفع

الرباعي

‘u-ree-du ‘an ‘as-ta-‘ji-ra ...

say-ya-a-ra

say-ya-a-ra that ad-daf-‘il

ru-baa-‘ee

with air conditioning

ذات مكيف الهواء

thaat mu-kay-ya-ful ha-waa’

How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

كم الأجرة لـ (ثلاثة)

أيام/أسابيع؟

kam al-‘uj-ra li-(tha-laa-tha-ti)

‘ay-yaam/‘a-saa-bee’

## directions

Where's (the  
nearest) ...?

internet café

market

أين (أقرب) ...؟

مقهى الانترنت

سوق

‘ay-na (‘ak-ra-bu) ...

mak-ha al-‘in-tir-net

sook

Is this the road to (Asmara)?

هل هذا الشارع إلى

(اسمره)؟

hal haa-dhaa ash-shaa-ri-‘u ‘i-laa

(as-ma-ra)

Can you show me (on the map)?

هل يمكنك أن توضح لي

(على الخريطة)؟

hal yum-ki-nu-ka ‘an tu-wad-da-ha lee

(‘a-laa al-kha-ree-ta)

هل يمكنك أن توضح لي

(على الخريطة)؟

hal yum-ki-nu-ki ‘an tu-wad-da-hee lee

(‘a-laa al-kha-ree-ta)

What's the address?

ما هو العنوان؟

maa hu-wa al-‘un-waan

How far is it?

كم يبعد المكان من هنا؟ kam yab-'u-du al-ma-kaa-nu min hu-naa

How do I get there?

كيف أصل إلى هناك؟ kay-fa 'a-si-lu 'i-laa hu-naak

Turn left/right.

اتجه إلى اليمين/اليسار. 'it-ta-jih 'i-laa al-ya-meen/al-ya-saar m  
 اتجهي إلى اليمين/اليسار. 'it-ta-ji-hee 'i-laa al-ya-meen/al-ya-saar f

It's ...

هو/هي ...

hu-wa/hi-ya ... m/f

behind ...

وراء ...

wa-raa' ...

in front of ...

أمام ...

'a-maam ...

near (to ...)

قريب (من ...)

ka-reeb (min ...)

next to ...

بجانب ...

bi-jaa-ni-bi ...

on the corner

عند الزاوية

'an-da az-zaa-wi-ya

opposite ...

بمقابل ...

bi-mu-kaa-bil ...

straight ahead

إلى الأمام

'i-laa al-'a-maam

there

هناك

hu-naak



## accommodation

Where's a ...?

أين أجد ...؟

'ay-na 'a-ji-du ...

camping ground

مخيم

mu-khay-yam

guesthouse

بيت للضيوف

bayt li-du-yoof

hotel

فندق

fun-duk

youth hostel

فندق شباب

fun-duk sha-baab

Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

هل يمكنك أن توصي

hal yum-ki-nu-ka 'an too-see-ya

بمكان رخيص/جيد؟

bi-ma-kaan ra-khees/jay-yid m

هل يمكنك أن توصي

hal yum-ki-nu-ki 'an too-see

بمكان رخيص/جيد؟

bi-ma-kaan ra-khees/jay-yid f

I'd like to book a room, please.

أريد أن أحجز غرفة

'u-ree-du 'an 'ah-ji-za ghur-fa

لو سمحت.

law sa-mah-ta

I have a reservation.

عندي حجز.

'in-dee hajz

Do you have

هل عندكم

hal 'in-da-kum

a ... room?

غرفة ...؟

ghur-fa ...

single

بسرير منفرد

bi-sa-ree-rin mun-fa-rid

double

بسرير مزدوج

bi-sa-ree-rin muz-daw-waj

twin

بسريرين منفردين

bi-sa-ree-ray-ni mun-fa-ri-day-ni

How much is

كم ثمنه

kam tha-ma-nu-hu

it per ...?

لـ ...؟

li ...

night

ليلية واحدة

lay-la-tin waa-hid

person

شخص واحد

shakh-sin waa-hid

I'd like to stay for (three) nights.

أريد الإقامة لمدة

'u-ree-du al-'i-kaa-ma li-mud-da-ti

(ثلاث) ليالي.

(tha-laa-thi) lay-yaa-lee

What time is check-out?

في أي ساعة المغادرة؟

fee 'ay-yee saa-'a-tin al-mu-ghaa-da-ra

Am I allowed to camp here?

هل من الممكن أن أقيم هنا؟

hal min al-mum-kin 'an 'u-khay-ya-ma hu-naa

## banking & communications

I'd like to ...

أريد أن ...

'u-ree-du 'an ...

arrange a transfer

أقوم بتحويل مالي

'a-koo-ma bi-tah-wee-li maa-lee

cash a cheque

أصرف شيك

'as-ru-fa sheek

change a travellers

أحوّل

'u-haw-wi-la

cheque

شيكاً سياحي

shee-kan see-yaa-hee

change money

أحوّل النقود

'u-haw-wi-la an-nu-kood

withdraw money

أسحب نقود

'as-hu-ba nu-kood

I'd like to ...

أريد أن ...

'u-ree-du 'an ...

buy a phonecard

أشتري بطاقة

'ash-ta-ree-ya bi-taa-ka

تلفونية

ti-li-foo-nee-ya

call (Canada)

أتصل بـ (كندا)

'at-ta-si-la bi-(ka-na-daa)

get internet access

أستخدم الانترنت

'as-takh-di-ma al-'in-tir-net

reverse the

أقوم باتصال والأجرة

'a-koo-ma bi-'it-ti-saa-li wal-'uj-ra

charges

على الشخص

'a-laa ash-shakh-sil

المتلقي الاتصال

mut-la-kee al-'it-ti-saal

use a printer

أستخدم آلة الطباعة

'as-takh-di-ma 'aa-lat at-ta-baa-'a

How much is it per hour?

ما تكلفة الساعة الواحد؟ *maa tak-li-fa-tu as-saa-'a-til waa-hi-da*

How much does a (three)-minute call cost?

كم تكلفة الاتصال لمدة (ثلاث) دقائق؟ *kam tak-li-fa-til 'it-ti-saa-li li-mud-da-ti (tha-laa-thi) da-kaa-'ik*

(One pound) per minute/hour.

(جنيه واحدة) بدقيقو/بساعة. *(ju-nay-ha waa-hi-da) bi-da-kee-ka/ bi-saa-'a*

## tours

When's the next ...?

متى الـ ...  
القادم؟

*ma-taa al- ...  
al-kaa-dim*

day trip  
tour

رحلة يومية  
دورة *rih-la yaw-mee-ya  
daw-ra*

Is ... included?

هل يتضمّن على ...؟  
سكن

*hal ya-ta-dam-ma-nu 'a-laa ...  
sa-kan*

accommodation

the admission charge

ثمن الدخول

*tha-man ad-du-khool*

food

الطعام

*at-ta-'aam*

transport

المواصلات

*al-mu-waa-sa-laad*

How long is the tour?

كم مدّة الدورة؟ *kam mud-da-ti ad-daw-ra*

What time should we be back?

في أيّ ساعة يجب  
أن نرجع إلى هنا؟  
*fee 'ay-yee saa-'a-tin ya-ji-bu  
'an nar-ja-'a 'i-laa hu-naa*

## shopping

I'm looking for ...

أبحث عن ... *'ab-ha-thu 'an ...*

I need film for this camera.

حناج إلى فيلماً  
لهذه الكاميرا. *'ah-taa-ju 'i-laa feel-man  
li-haa-dhi-hil kaa-mee-raa*

Can I listen to this?

هل يمكنني أن أسمع  
إلى هذا؟ *hal yum-ki-nu-nee 'an 'as-ma-'a  
'i-laa haa-dhaa*

Can I have my ... repaired?

هل يمكنك أن تصلّح لي ...؟ *hal yum-ki-nu-ka 'an tus-li-ha lee ...*

When will it be ready?

متى يكون جاهز؟ *ma-taa ya-koo-nu jaa-hiz*

How much is it?

كم سعره؟ *kam si'-ru-hu*

Can you write down the price?

هل يمكنك أن تكتب لي السعر؟ *hal yum-ki-nu-ka 'an tak-tu-ba lee as-si'r m*  
هل يمكنك أن تكتب لي السعر؟ *hal yum-ki-nu-ki 'an tak-tu-bee lee as-si'r f*

What's your lowest price?

ما أحسن سعر لديكم؟ *maa 'ah-sa-nu si'-ri la-day-kum*

I'll give you (five pounds).

سأدفع (خمسة جنيهات). *sa-'ad-fa-'u bi (kham-su ju-nay-haad)*

There's a mistake in the bill.

يوجد خطأ في الحساب. *yoo-jad kha-ta' feel hi-saab*

It's faulty.

هذا لا يعمل. *haa-dhaa laa ya'-mal*

I'd like a (receipt/refund).

أريد (وصيل/استرداد مال). *'u-ree-du (wa-sil/'is-tir-daad maal)*

Do you accept ...?

هل تقبلون ...؟

*hal tak-ba-loo-na ...*

credit cards

بطاقات الرصيد

*bi-taa-kaat ar-ra-seed*

debit cards

بطاقات الاقتراض

*bi-taa-kaat al-'ik-ti-raad*

travellers cheques

شيكات سياحية

*shee-kaat see-yaa-hee-ya*

Could you ...?

هل يمكنك ...؟

*hal yum-ki-nu-ka ... m*

burn a CD from

هل يمكنك ...؟

*hal yum-ki-nu-ki ... f*

my memory

تجهّز قرصاً مدمّج

*tu-jah-hi-za kur-san mu-dam-maj*

card

من بطاقتي الذاكرة

*min bi-taa-ka-tee*

develop this

تحمّض هذا

*adh-dhaa-ki-ra*

film

الفيلم

*tu-ham-mi-da haa-dhaa*

*al-feelm*

## making conversation

Hello.

السلام عليكم.

*as-sa-laa-mu 'a-lay-kum*

Good night.

تصبح على الخير.

*tus-bi-hu 'a-laa al-khayr*

Goodbye.

إلى اللقاء.

*'i-laa al-li-kaa'*

Mr

سيد

*say-yeed*

Mrs/Miss

سيّدة

*say-yeed-da*

How are you?

كيف حالك؟ kay-fa haa-lu-ka m  
كيف حالك؟ kay-fa haa-lu-ki f

Fine, thanks. And you?

بخير شكراً. وأنت/أنت؟ bi-khay-rin shuk-ran wa-'an-ta/wa-'an-ti m/f

What's your name?

ما اسمك/اسمك؟ maa 'is-mu-ka/'is-mu-ki m/f

My name is ...

اسمي ... 'is-mee ...

I'm pleased to meet you.

أنا سعيد/سعيدة بالتعرف عليك.  
'a-naa sa-'ee-dun/sa-'ee-da-tun  
bit-ta-'ar-ruf 'a-layk m/f

This is my ...

هذا/هذه ...

haa-dhaa/haa-dhi-hi ... m/f

brother

أخي

'a-khee

daughter

ابنتي

'ib-na-tee

father

أبي

'a-bee

friend

صديقي/صديقتي

sa-dee-kee/sa-dee-ka-tee m/f

husband

زوجي

zaw-jee

mother

أمي

'um-mee

sister

أختي

'ukh-tee

son

ابني

'ib-nee

wife

زوجتي

zaw-ja-tee

Here's my ...

هذا ...

haa-dhaa ...

What's your ...?

ما ...؟

maa ...

(email) address

عنوانك/عنوانك

'un-waa-nu-ka/'un-waa-nu-ki

phone number

(البريد الإلكتروني)

(al-ba-ree-deel 'i-lik-troo-nee) m/f

رقم هاتفك/هاتفك

rak-mu haa-ti-fu-ka/

haa-ti-fu-ki m/f

Where are you from?

من أين أنت/أنت؟

min 'ay-na 'an-ta/'an-ti m/f

I'm from ...

أنا من ...

'a-naa min ...

Australia

أستراليا

'us-traa-li-yaa

Canada

كندا

ka-na-daa

New Zealand

نيو زيلندا

nee-yoo zee-lan-daa

the UK

بريطانيا

ba-ree-taa-ni-ya

the USA

أمريكا

'am-ree-kaa

I'm (not) married.

أنا (لست) متزوج/متزوجة.

'a-naa (las-tu)

Can I take

يمكنني أن آخذ صورتك/صورتك؟

mu-ta-zaw-waj/mu-ta-zaw-wa-ja m/f

a photo of you?

yum-ki-nu-nee 'an 'aa-khu-dha

soo-ra-tu-ka/soo-ra-tu-ki m/f

## eating out

Can you recommend a ...?

هل يمكنك أن توصي بـ ...؟  
هل يمكنك أن توصي بـ ...؟

hal yum-ki-nu-ka 'an too-see-ya ... m  
hal yum-ki-nu-ki 'an too-see ... f

bar

بار

baar

dish

وجبة

waj-ba

place to eat

مكان نأكل فيه

ma-kaa-nun na'-ku-lu fee-hi

I'd like ..., please.

أريد ... لو سمحت.

'u-ree-du ... law sa-mah-ta

the bill

الحساب

al-hi-saab

the menu

قائمة الطعام

kaa-'i-ma-tu at-ta-'aam

a table for (four)

طاولة لـ (أربعة)

taa-wi-la-tan li-'ar-ba-'a-ti

that dish

تلك الوجبة

'ash-khaas til-kal waj-ba

Do you have vegetarian food?

هل لديكم طعام نباتي؟

hal la-day-ku-mu-ta-'aa-mun na-baa-tee

Could you prepare a meal without ...?

هل من الممكن أن تعد وجبة بدون ...؟

hal min al-mum-kin 'an tu-'id-da waj-ba-tan bi-doo-ni ...

eggs

بيض

bayd

meat stock

مرق اللحم

ma-rak al-lah-mi

(cup of) coffee ...

(فنجان) قهوة ...

(fin-jaa-nu) kah-wa ...

(cup of) tea ...

(كأس) شاي ...

(ka-'su) shaa-ee ...

with milk

بحليب

bi-ha-leeb

without sugar

بدون سكر

bi-doo-ni suk-kar

(boiled) water

ماء (مغلي)

maa' (magh-lee)

## emergencies

Call ...!

اتصل/اتصلي بـ ...!

'it-ta-sil/'it-ta-si-lee bi- ... m/f

an ambulance

سيارة الإسعاف

say-yaa-ra-til 'is-'aaf

a doctor

طبيب

ta-beeb

the police

الشرطة

ash-shur-ta

Could you help me, please?

هل من الممكن أن تساعدني/تساعديني؟

hal min al-mum-kin 'an tu-saa-'i-du-nee/tu-saa-'i-dee-na-nee m/f

I'm lost.

أنا ضائع/ضائعة. 'a-naa daa-'i/daa-'i-a m/f

## Where are the toilets?

أَيْنَ دورات المياه؟ 'ay-na daw-raa-tul mee-yaah

## I want to report an offence.

أريدُ أن أبلِّغَ عن جريمة. 'u-ree-du 'an 'u-bal-li-gha 'an ja-ree-ma

## I have insurance.

عندي تأمين. 'in-dee al-ta'-meen

## I want to contact my consulate/embassy.

أريدُ أن أتصل  
بقنصليتي/بسفارتي. 'u-ree-du 'an 'at-ta-si-la  
bi-kun-su-li-ya-tee/bi-sa-faa-ra-tee

## I've been assaulted.

اعتدى عليّ شخص. i'-ta-daa 'a-la-yee shakhs

## I've been raped.

اغتصبني شخص. 'igh-ta-sa-ba-nee shakhs

## I've been robbed.

سرقني شخص. sa-ra-ka-nee shakhs

## My ... was/were stolen.

... كان مسروق. ... kaa-na mas-rook m  
... كانت مسروقة. ... kaa-nat mas-roo-ka f

## bag

حقبتي ha-kee-ba-tee

## money

نقودي nu-koo-dee

## passport

جواز سفري ja-waa-zu sa-fa-ree

## wallet

محفظتي mah-fa-dha-tee

## medical needs

## Where's the nearest ...?

أين أقرب ...؟

'ay-na 'ak-ra-bu ...

## dentist

طبيب الأسنان

ta-bee-bul 'as-naan

## doctor

طبيب/طبيبة

ta-beeb/ta-bee-ba m/f

## hospital

مستشفى

mus-tash-faa

## pharmacist

صيدلية

say-da-lee-ya

## I need a doctor (who speaks English).

أحتاج إلى طبيب  
(يتكلم الانجليزية).'ah-taa-ju 'i-laa ta-bee-bin  
(ya-ta-kal-la-mu al-'inj-lee-zee-ya)

## Could I see a female doctor?

هل من الممكن أن أقابل طبيبة؟

hal min al-mum-kin 'an 'u-kaa-bi-la ta-bee-ba

## It hurts here.

يؤلمني هنا.

yu-'li-mu-nee hu-naa

## I've run out of my medication.

لقد نفذت جميع أدويتي.

la-kad na-fadh-tu ja-mee-'u 'ad-wi-ya-tee

## I'm allergic to (penicillin).

عندي حساسية من  
(البنسلين).'an-dee has-saa-see-ya min  
(al-bi-ni-si-leen)

## english-arabic dictionary

Words in this dictionary are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular) and pl (plural), m (masculine) and f (feminine) where necessary. Where both the masculine and the feminine forms of a word are given, they're marked with m/f. Verbs are given in the third-person singular, in the present tense.

## A

accommodation سكن sa-kan m

adaptor الموصل al-mu-was-sil m

after بعد ba'-da

airport مطار ma-taar m

alcohol الكحول al-ku-hool m

all كل kul-lū

allergy حساسية has-saa-si-ya f

and و wa

ankle كاحل kaa-hil f

antibiotics مضاد حيوي mu-daa-dun ha-ya-wee m

arm ذراع dhi-raa' f

asthma الربو ar-rabw m

ATM جهاز الصرافة ji-haaz as-sar-raa-fa m

## B

baby طفل صغير/طفلة صغيرة

tifi-lun sa-gheer/tifi-la-tun sa-ghee-ra m/f

back شنطة shan-ta f

backpack شنطة ظهر shan-ta-tu dhahr f

bad سيء/سيئة say-yi' / say-yi-'a m/f

baggage claim مكان لجمع الأمتعة

ma-kaa-nun li-jam-'il 'am-ti-'a m

bank بنك bank m

bathroom غرفة الحمام ghur-fa-tul ham-maam f

battery بطارية ba-taa-ri-ya f

beautiful جميلة ja-meel/ja-mee-la m/f

bed سرير sa-reer m

beer بيرة bee-ra f

before قبل kab-la

bicycle دراجة dar-raa-ja f

big كبير/كبيرة ka-beer/ka-bee-ra m/f

blanket بطانية ba-taa-ni-ya f

bottle زجاجة zu-jaa-ja f

bottle opener فاح الزجاجات

faa-ti-hu az-zu-jaa-jaat m

boy ولد wa-lad m

breakfast فطور fu-toor m

bronchitis التهاب الشعب il-ti-haab ash-shu-'ab m

## C

café مقهى mak-han m

cancel يلغي yul-ghee/tul-ghee m/f

can opener فاح التكة faa-ti-hu at-tan-ka m

cash نقد nukd m

cell phone هاتف محمول haa-ti-fu mah-mool m

centre مركز mar-kaz m

cheap رخيص/رخيصة ra-khees/ra-khee-sa m/f

check (bill) الحساب al-hi-saab m

check-in مكتب التسجيل mak-ta-bu at-tas-jeel m

chest صدر sadr m

child طفل/طفلة tifi-lu/tifi-la m/f

cigarette سجارة si-jaa-ra f

city مدينة ma-dee-na f

clean نظيف/نظيفة na-dheef/na-dhee-fa m/f

closed مغلق/مغلقة mugh-lak/mugh-la-ka m/f

cold بارد/باردة baa-rid/baa-ri-da m/f

collect call

اتصال والأجرة على الشخص المتلقي الاتصال

it-ti-saal wal-'uj-ra 'a-laa al-shakh-sil mut-la-kee

al-'it-ti-saal m

condom الواقي al-waa-kee m

contact lenses عدسة لاصقة a-da-sa-tun laa-si-ka f

cough سعال su-'aal m

currency exchange صرافة sa-raa-fa f

customs (immigration) جمارك ja-maa-rik f

dairy products الألبان al-'al-baan f

dangerous خطر/خطرة khatr/khat-ra m/f

date (time) تاريخ taa-reekh m

day يوم yawm m

diaper حفاظة طفل ha-faa-dha-tu tifi f

diarrhoea الاسهال al-'is-haal m

dinner عشاء 'a-shaa m

dirty وسخ/وسخة washk/was-kha m/f

disabled معاق/معاقة mu-'aak/mu-'aa-ka m/f

double bed سرير مزدوج sa-ree-run muz-daw-waj m

drink مشروب mash-roob m

drivers licence رخصة القيادة

ruk-ha-tul kee-yaad f

(drug) (illicit) مخدر mu-khad-dir m

## E

ear أذن 'u-dhun ①  
 east شرق shark ①  
 economy class الدرجة العادية  
 ad-da-ra-ja-tul 'aa-diy-ya ①  
 elevator مصعد mas-'ad ①  
 email البريد الإلكتروني al-ba-ree-dul 'i-lik-troo-nee ①  
 English (language) الإنجليزية al-'inj-lee-zee-ya ①  
 exchange rate سعر التحويل si'-ru at-tah-weel ①  
 exit مخرج makh-raj ①  
 expensive غالية/غالٍ ghaa-lin/ghaa-lee-ya ①/①  
 eye عين 'ayn ①

## F

fast سريعة/سريع sa-ree/'sa-ree-'a ①/①  
 fever حمى hum-maa ①  
 finger إصبع 'is-ba' ①  
 first-aid kit صندوق للإسعاف الأولي  
 sun-doo-kun lil-'is-'aa-fil 'aw-wa-lee ①  
 first class الدرجة الأولى ad-da-ra-ja-tul 'oo-la ①  
 fish سمك sa-mak ①  
 food طعام ta-'aam ①  
 foot قدم ka-dam ①  
 fork شوكة shaw-ka ①  
 free (of charge) مجاناً ma-jaa-nan  
 fruit فاكهة faa-ki-ha ①  
 funny مضحكة/مضحك mud-hik/mud-hi-ka ①/①

## G

game park مدينة ملاه متنقلة  
 ma-dee-na-tu ma-laa-hin mu-ta-nak-ka-la ①  
 gift هدية ha-dee-ya ①  
 girl بنت bint ①  
 glass (drinking) كأس ka's ①  
 glasses نظارات na-dhaa-raat ①  
 gluten الغلوتين al-ghloo-teen ①  
 good جيدة/جيد jay-yid/jay-yi-da ①/①  
 gram غرام ghraam ①

## H

hand يد yad ①  
 happy سعيد/سعيدة sa-'eed/sa-'ee-da ①/①  
 have عند 'ind  
 he هو hu-wa ①  
 head رأس ra's ①  
 headache صداع su-daa' ①  
 heart قلب kalb ①  
 heart condition مشكلة القلب  
 mush-ki-la-tul kalb ①

heat حرارة ha-raa-ra ①  
 here هنا hu-naa  
 high عالية/عالٍ 'aa-lin/'aa-li-ya ①/①  
 highway طريق عام ta-ree-ku-'aam ①  
 homosexual لوطي/سحاقية  
 loo-tee/su-haa-kee-ya ①/①  
 hot حار/حارة haar/haa-ra ①/①  
 hungry جائعة/جائع jaa-'i/'jaa-'i-'a ①/①

## I

identification (card) شخصية shakh-see-ya ①  
 ill مريض/مريضة ma-reed/ma-ree-da ①/①  
 important مهمة/مهمّة mu-him/mu-him-ma ①/①  
 internet الإنترنت 'in-tir-net ①  
 interpreter مترجم فوري/مترجمة فورية  
 mu-tar-jim faw-ree/mu-tar-ji-ma faw-ree-ya ①/①

## J

job عمل 'a-mal ①

## K

key مفتاح mif-taah ①  
 kilogram كيلوغرام kee-loo-ghraam ①  
 kitchen مطبخ mat-bakh ①  
 knife سكين sik-keen ①

## L

laundry (place) مغسل magh-sal ①  
 lawyer محامي/محام  
 mu-haa-min/mu-haa-mee-ya ①/①  
 left-luggage office مكتب للاحتفاظ بالمتعة  
 mak-ta-bun li-li-'ih-ti-faa-dhi bil-'am-ti-'a ①  
 leg رجل rijl ①  
 lesbian سحاقية su-haa-kee-ya ①  
 less أقل 'a-ka-lu  
 letter (mail) رسالة ri-saa-la ①  
 like √ يحب/يحبّ yu-hib-bu/tu-hib-bu ①/①  
 lost-property office مكتب للأغراض الضائعة  
 mak-ta-bu lil-'agh-raa-di ad-daa-'i-'a ①  
 love √ يحبّ / يحبّ yu-hib-bu/tu-hib-bu ①/①  
 lunch غداء gha-daa' ①

## M

man رَجُل ra-jul ①  
 matches كبريت kib-reet ①  
 meat لحم lahm ①  
 medicine دواء da-waa' ①

message رسالة ri-saa-la ①  
 mobile phone هاتف محمول  
 haa-ti-fun mah-mool ①  
 month شهر shahr ①  
 morning صباح sa-baah ①  
 motorcycle دراجة نارية dar-raa-ja-tun naa-ree-ya ①  
 mouth فم famm ①  
 movie فيلم feelm ①  
 MSG أحدي الصوديوم الغلو تينات  
 'a-ha-dee as-soo-dee-oam al-ghloo-tee-naat ①  
 museum المتحف al-mat-haf ①  
 music الموسيقي al-moo-see-kaa ①

## N

name اسم 'ism ①  
 napkin مخرمة mah-ra-ma ①  
 nappy حفاظة طفل ha-faa-dha-tu tifi ①  
 national park حديقة وطنية  
 ha-dee-ka-tun wa-ta-nee-ya ①  
 nausea غثيان gha-ta-yaan ①  
 neck رقبة ra-ka-ba ①  
 new جديدة/جديد ja-deed/ja-dee-da ①/①  
 news الأخبار al-'akh-baar ①  
 newspaper جريدة ja-ree-da ①  
 night ليل layl ①  
 nightclub ملهى ليلي mil-han lay-lee ①  
 noisy ضجيج/ضجيجة da-jeej/da-jee-ja ①/①  
 nonsmoking غير المدخنين  
 ghay-ri al-mu-dakh-khi-neen  
 north شمال sha-maal ①  
 nose أنف 'anf ①  
 now الآن al-'aan  
 number رقم rakm ①  
 nuts مكسرات mu-kas-si-raat ①

## O

oil (engine) نفط naft ①  
 OK تام ta-maam  
 old قديم/قديم ka-deem/ka-dee-ma ①/①  
 open مفتوح/مفتوحة maf-tooh/maf-too-ha ①/①  
 outside خارج/خارج khaa-rij/khaa-ri-ja ①/①

## P

package طرد tard ①  
 pain ألم 'a-lam ①  
 palace قصر kasr ①  
 paper ورقة wa-ra-ka ①  
 park (car) √ يوقف / يوقف yoo-ki-fu/too-ki-fu ①/①  
 passport جواز سفر ja-waa-zu sa-far ①  
 pay يدفع/يدفع yad-fa-'u/tad-fa-'u ①/①  
 pen قلم ka-lam ①

petrol نفط naft ①  
 pharmacy صيدلية say-da-lee-ya ①  
 plate صحن sahn ①  
 postcard بطاقة المعايدة bi-taa-ka-tul mu-'aa-ya-da ①  
 post office مكتب البريد mak-ta-bul ba-reed ①  
 pregnant حامل haa-mil ①

## Q

quiet هادئة/هادٍ haa-din/haa-dee-ya ①/①

## R

rain مطر ma-tar ①  
 razor موسى moo-saa ①  
 registered mail برید مسجل  
 ba-reed mu-saj-jal ①  
 rent √ يستأجر/تستأجر  
 yas-ta-'ji-ru/tas-ta-'ji-ru ①/①  
 repair √ يصلح/يصلح yus-li-hu/tus-li-hu ①/①  
 reservation حجز hajz ①  
 restaurant مطعم mat-'am ①  
 return √ يرجع/يرجع yar-ja-'u/tar-ja-'u ①/①  
 road شارع shaa-ri' ①  
 room غرفة ghur-fa ①

## S

sad حزينة/حزين ha-zeen/ha-zee-na ①/①  
 safe √ أمن/أمنة 'aa-min/'aa-mi-na ①/①  
 sanitary napkin منديل نسائي  
 min-dee-lun ni-saa-'ee ①  
 seafood الطعام البحري at-ta-'aa-mul ba-ha-ree ①  
 seat مقعد mak-'ad ①  
 send √ يبعث/تبعث yab-'a-thu/tab-'a-thu ①/①  
 sex جنس jins ①/①  
 shampoo الشامبو ash-shaam-boo ①  
 share (a dorm, etc) يشترك / يتشارك  
 yu-shaa-ri-ku/tu-shaa-ri-ku ①/①  
 shaving cream معجون الحلاقة  
 ma'-joo-nul hal-laa-ka ①  
 she هي hi-ya ①  
 sheet (bed) شترشف shar-shaf ①  
 shirt قميص ka-meas ①  
 shoes حذاء hi-dhaa' ①  
 shop دكان duk-kaan ①  
 shower دوش doosh ①  
 skin جلد jild ①  
 skirt تنورة tan-noo-ra ①  
 sleep √ ينام / ينام ya-naa-mu/ta-naa-mu ①/①  
 small صغير/صغيرة sa-gher/sa-gher-aa ①/①  
 smoke (cigarettes) يدخن/تدخن  
 yu-dakh-khi-nu/tu-dakh-khi-nu ①/①  
 soap صابون saa-boon ①

© Lonely Planet Publications

some بعض *ba'-du*  
soon قريباً *ka-ree-ban*  
sore throat ألم في حلق *'a-la-mu fee hal-kee* (M)  
south جنوب *ja-noob* (M)  
souvenir shop دكان التذكارات *duk-kaa-nu at-tidh-kaa-raat* (M)  
speak يتكلم / تتكلم *ya-ta-kal-la-mu/ta-ta-kal-la-mu* (M)/(F)  
spoon ملعقة *mal-'a-ka* (F)  
stamp طابع *taa-bi'* (M)  
stand-by ticket تذكرة بديلة *tadh-ki-ra-tun ba-dee-la* (F)  
station (train) محطة *mu-hat-ta-tu* (F)  
stomach معدة *ma-'i-da* (F)  
stop ٧ توقف / يقف *ya-ki-fu/ta-ki-fu* (M)/(F)  
stop (bus) ٨ موقف *maw-ki-fu* (M)  
street شارع *shaa-ri'* (M)  
student طالب / طالبة *taa-lib/taa-li-ba* (M)/(F)  
sunscreen معجون واقى من الشمس *ma'-joo-nun waa-kee min ash-shams* (M)  
swim ٧ تسيح / يسبح *yas-ba-hu/tas-bu-hu* (M)/(F)

## T

tampons الصمام النسائي *as-si-maa-mu an-ni-saa'-ee* (M)  
teeth أسنان *as-naan* (F)  
telephone ٨ هاتف *haa-tif* (M)  
television تلفزيون *ti-li-fi-si-yoon* (M)  
temperature (weather) درجة الحرارة *da-ra-ja-tul ha-raa-ra* (F)  
tent خيمة *khay-ma* (F)  
that (one) ذلك / تلك *dhaa-li-ka/til-ka* (M)/(F)  
they هم / هن *hum/hun-na* (M)/(F)  
thirsty عطشان / عطشانة *'at-shaan/'at-shaa-na* (M)/(F)  
this (one) هذا / هذه *haa-dhaa/haa-dhi-hi* (M)/(F)  
throat حلق *khalk* (M)  
ticket تذكرة *tadh-ki-ra* (F)  
time وقت *wakt* (M)  
tired متعب / تعبانة *ta'-baan/ta'-baa-na* (M)/(F)  
tissues محارم *ma-haa-ram* (F)  
today اليوم *al-yawm* (M)  
toilet دورات المياه *daw-raa-tul mi-yaah* (F)  
tonight ليلة اليوم *lay-la-tul yawm* (F)  
toothache ألم في الأسنان *'a-la-mu feel 'as-naan* (M)  
toothbrush فرشاة الأسنان *far-shaa-tul 'as-naan* (F)  
toothpaste معجون الأسنان *ma'-joo-nul 'as-naan* (M)  
torch (flashlight) مشعل كهربائي *mish-'a-lun kah-ra-baa'-ee* (M)  
tourist office مكتب السياحة *mak-ta-bu as-si-yaa-ha* (M)  
towel منشفة *man-sha-fa* (F)  
translate يترجم / يترجم *yu-tar-ji-mu/tu-tar-ji-mu* (M)/(F)

travel agency وكالة سفر *wa-kaa-la-tu sa-far* (F)  
travellers cheque شيك سياحي *shee-kun si-yaa-hee* (M)  
trousers بنطلون *ban-ta-loon* (M)  
twin beds سريرين منفردين *sa-ree-ray-ni mun-fa-ri-daym* (M)  
tyre إطار السيارة *'i-taa-ru as-say-yaa-ra* (M)

## U

underwear ملابس داخلية *ma-/aa-bi-sun daa-khi-lee-ya* (F)  
urgent مستعجل / مستعجلة *mus-ta-'jal/mus-ta-'ja-la* (M)/(F)

## V

vacant شاغرة / شاغرة *shaa-ghir/shaa-ghi-ra* (M)/(F)  
vegetable ٨ خضراوات *khud-raa-waat* (F)  
vegetarian نباتي / نباتية *na-baa-tee/na-baa-tee-ya* (M)/(F)  
visa تأشيرة *ta'-shee-ra* (F)

## W

waiter نادل / نادلة *naa-dil/naa-di-la* (M)/(F)  
walk ٧ يمشي / يمشي *yam-shee/tam-shee* (M)/(F)  
wallet محفظة *mah-fa-dha* (F)  
warm ٨ دافئ / دافئة *daa-fi'/daa-fi-'a* (M)/(F)  
wash (something) يغسل / تغسل *yagh-si-lu/tagh-si-lu* (M)/(F)  
watch ٨ ساعة اليد *saa-'a-tul yad* (F)  
water ماء *maa'* (F)  
we نحن *nah-nu* (M)  
weekend نهاية الأسبوع *ni-haa-ya-tul 'us-boo'* (F)  
west غرب *gharb* (M)  
wheelchair كرسي المتقدين *kur-see al-muk-'a-deen*  
when متى *ma-taa*  
where أين *'ay-na*  
who من *man*  
why لماذا *li-maa-dhaa*  
window شباك *shub-baak* (M)  
wine نبيذ *na-beedh* (M)  
with مع *ma-'a*  
without بدون *bi-doo-ni*  
woman امرأة *'im-ra-'a* (F)  
write يكتب / تكتب *yak-tu-bu/tak-tu-bu* (M)/(F)

## Y

you sg أنت / أنت *'an-ta/'an-ti* (M)/(F)  
you pl أنتم / أنتم *'an-tum/'an-tun-na* (M)/(F)

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# French



# pronunciation

| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                         | Consonants |               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------|---------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | English sound           | Symbol     | English sound |
| a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | run                     | b          | bed           |
| ai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | aisle                   | d          | dog           |
| air                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | fair                    | f          | fun           |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | bet                     | g          | go            |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | see                     | k          | kit           |
| eu                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | nurse                   | l          | lot           |
| ew                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | ee with rounded lips    | m          | man           |
| ey                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | as in 'bet', but longer | n          | not           |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | pot                     | ny         | canyon        |
| oo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | zoo                     | ng         | ring          |
| om/on/ong                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | as in 'pot', but nasal  | p          | pet           |
| um/un/ung                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | as in 'act', but nasal  | r          | run (throaty) |
| <p>In this chapter, the French pronunciation is given in green after each phrase.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot. For example:<br/><i>Bonjour.</i>    bon-zhoor</p> <p>French's nasal vowels, simplified as om/on/ong and um/un/ung above, are pronounced as if you're trying to force the sound out of your nose.</p> |                         | s          | sun           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                         | sh         | shot          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                         | t          | top           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                         | v          | very          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                         | w          | win           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                         | y          | yes           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                         | z          | zero          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                         | zh         | pleasure      |

# FRENCH

## français

## language difficulties

|                              |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Do you speak English?</b> | <i>Parlez-vous anglais?</i>  | par-ley-voo ong-gley    |
| <b>Do you understand?</b>    | <i>Comprenez-vous?</i>       | kom-pre-ney-voo         |
| <b>I understand.</b>         | <i>Je comprends.</i>         | zhe kom-pron            |
| <b>I don't understand.</b>   | <i>Je ne comprends pas.</i>  | zhe ne kom-pron pa      |
| <b>Could you please</b>      | <i>Pourriez-vous ... ,</i>   | poo-ree-yey voo ...     |
| <b>please ...?</b>           | <i>s'il vous plaît?</i>      | seel voo pley           |
| <b>repeat that</b>           | <i>répéter</i>               | rey-pek-tey             |
| <b>speak more slowly</b>     | <i>parler plus lentement</i> | par-ley plew lon-te-mon |
| <b>write it down</b>         | <i>l'écriture</i>            | ley-kreer               |

## time, dates & numbers

|                            |                                           |                              |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>What time is it?</b>    | <i>Quelle heure est-il?</i>               | kel eur ey-teel              |
| <b>It's one o'clock.</b>   | <i>Il est une heure.</i>                  | ee-ley ewn eu                |
| <b>It's (ten) o'clock.</b> | <i>Il est (dix) heures.</i>               | ee-ley (deez) eu             |
| <b>Quarter past (one).</b> | <i>Il est (une) heure et quart.</i>       | ee-ley (ewn) eu ey kar       |
| <b>Half past (one).</b>    | <i>Il est (une) heure et demie.</i>       | ee-ley (ewn) eu ey de-mee    |
| <b>Quarter to (one).</b>   | <i>Il est (une) heure moins le quart.</i> | ee-ley (ewn) eu              |
|                            |                                           | mwun le kar                  |
| <b>At what time ...?</b>   | <i>À quelle heure ...?</i>                | a kel eu ...                 |
| <b>At ...</b>              | <i>À ...</i>                              | a ...                        |
| <b>It's (18 October).</b>  | <i>C'est le (dix-huit octobre).</i>       | sey le (dee-zwee tok-to-bre) |
| <b>Monday</b>              | <i>lundi</i>                              | lun-dee                      |
| <b>Tuesday</b>             | <i>mardi</i>                              | mar-dee                      |
| <b>Wednesday</b>           | <i>mercredi</i>                           | mair-kre-dee                 |
| <b>Thursday</b>            | <i>jeudi</i>                              | zheu-dee                     |
| <b>Friday</b>              | <i>vendredi</i>                           | von-dre-dee                  |
| <b>Saturday</b>            | <i>samedi</i>                             | sam-dee                      |
| <b>Sunday</b>              | <i>dimanche</i>                           | dee-monsh                    |

|           |             |              |
|-----------|-------------|--------------|
| yesterday | hier        | ee-yair      |
| today     | aujourd'hui | o-zhoor-dwee |
| tomorrow  | demain      | de-mun       |

### numbers

|    |          |         |      |                  |                  |
|----|----------|---------|------|------------------|------------------|
| 0  | zéro     | zey-ro  | 16   | seize            | sez              |
| 1  | un       | un      | 17   | dix-sept         | dee-set          |
| 2  | deux     | deu     | 18   | dix-huit         | dee-zweet        |
| 3  | trois    | trwa    | 19   | dix-neuf         | deez-neuf        |
| 4  | quatre   | ka-tre  | 20   | vingt            | vung             |
| 5  | cinq     | sungk   | 21   | vingt et un      | vung tey un      |
| 6  | six      | sees    | 22   | vingt-deux       | vung-deu         |
| 7  | sept     | set     | 30   | trente           | tront            |
| 8  | huit     | weet    | 40   | quarante         | ka-ront          |
| 9  | neuf     | neuf    | 50   | cinquante        | sung-kont        |
| 10 | dix      | dees    | 60   | soixante         | swa-sont         |
| 11 | onze     | onz     | 70   | soixante-dix     | swa-son-dees     |
| 12 | douze    | dooz    | 80   | quatre-vingts    | ka-tre-vung      |
| 13 | treize   | trez    | 90   | quatre-vingt-dix | ka-tre-vung-dees |
| 14 | quatorze | ka-torz | 100  | cent             | son              |
| 15 | quinze   | kunz    | 1000 | mille            | meel             |

## border crossing

|                                     |                             |                           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| I'm here ...                        | <i>Je suis ici ...</i>      | zhe swee zee-see ...      |
| in transit                          | <i>de passage</i>           | de pa-sazh                |
| on business                         | <i>pour le travail</i>      | poor le tra-vai           |
| on holiday                          | <i>pour les vacances</i>    | poor ley va-kons          |
| I'm here for ...                    | <i>Je suis ici pour ...</i> | zhe swee zee-see poor ... |
| (10) days                           | <i>(dix) jours</i>          | (dees) zhoor              |
| (three) weeks                       | <i>(trois) semaines</i>     | (trwa) se-men             |
| (two) months                        | <i>(deux) mois</i>          | (deu) mwa                 |
| I'm going to (Yaoundé).             |                             |                           |
| <i>Je vais à (Yaoundé).</i>         |                             | zhe vey a (ya-oon-dey)    |
| I'm staying at the (Mercure Hotel). |                             |                           |
| <i>Je loge au (Mercure).</i>        |                             | zhe lozh o (mer-kewr)     |

## tickets

|                                        |                                                          |                                               |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| One ... ticket<br>(to Douala), please. | <i>Un billet ... (pour<br/>Douala), s'il vous plaît.</i> | um bee-yey ... (poor<br>dwa-la) seel voo pley |
| one-way                                | <i>simple</i>                                            | sum-ple                                       |
| return                                 | <i>aller et retour</i>                                   | a-ley ey re-toor                              |
| Is there ...?                          | <i>Est-qu'il y a ...?</i>                                | es-keel ya ...                                |
| air conditioning                       | <i>la climatisation</i>                                  | la klee-ma-tee-za-syon                        |
| a toilet                               | <i>des toilettes</i>                                     | dey twa-let                                   |
| I'd like a ... seat,<br>please.        | <i>Je voudrais une place<br/>..., s'il vous plaît.</i>   | zhe voo-drey ewn plas                         |
| nonsmoking                             | <i>non-fumeur</i>                                        | ... seel voo pley<br>non-few-mer              |
| smoking                                | <i>fumeur</i>                                            | few-mer                                       |



## transport

|                                     |                                                              |                                                  |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Is this the ... to<br>(Libreville)? | <i>Est-ce le ... pour<br/>(Libreville)?</i>                  | es le ... poor<br>(lee-brer-veel)                |
| boat                                | <i>bateau</i>                                                | ba-to                                            |
| bus                                 | <i>bus</i>                                                   | bews                                             |
| train                               | <i>train</i>                                                 | trun                                             |
| How much is it to ...?              | <i>C'est combien pour aller à ...?</i>                       | sey kom-byun poor a-ley a ...                    |
| Please take me to (this address).   | <i>Conduisez-moi à (cette<br/>adresse), s'il vous plaît.</i> | kon-dwee-zey mwa a (set<br>a-dres) seel voo pley |
| I'd like to hire a ...              | <i>Je voudrais louer ...</i>                                 | zhe voo-drey loo-wey ...                         |
| car (with                           | <i>une voiture (avec</i>                                     | ewn vwa-tewr (a-vek                              |
| air conditioning)                   | <i>climatisation)</i>                                        | klee-ma-tee-za-syon)                             |
| 4WD                                 | <i>un quatre-quatre</i>                                      | un ka-tre ka-tre                                 |

## directions

|                          |                                                   |                                    |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Where's the nearest ...? | Où est-ce qu'il y a ...<br><i>le plus proche?</i> | oo es-keel ya ...<br>le plew prosh |
| internet café            | <i>le cybercafé</i>                               | le see-bair-ka-fey                 |
| market                   | <i>le marché</i>                                  | le mar-shey                        |
| It's ...                 | C'est ...                                         | sey ...                            |
| behind ...               | <i>derrière ...</i>                               | dair-yair ...                      |
| in front of ...          | <i>devant ...</i>                                 | de-von ...                         |
| near (to ...)            | <i>près (de ...)</i>                              | prey (de ...)                      |
| next to ...              | <i>à côté de ...</i>                              | a ko-tey de ...                    |
| on the corner            | <i>au coin</i>                                    | o kwun                             |
| opposite ...             | <i>en face de ...</i>                             | on fas de ...                      |
| straight ahead           | <i>tout droit</i>                                 | too drwa                           |
| there                    | <i>là</i>                                         | la                                 |



## accommodation

|                                    |                                                           |                                                         |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like to book a room, please.   | <i>Je voudrais réserver une chambre, s'il vous plaît.</i> | zhe voo-drey rey-zair-vey<br>ewn shom-bre seel voo pley |
| I'd like to stay for (two) nights. | <i>Je voudrais rester pour (deux) nuits.</i>              | zhe voo-drey res-tey poor (deu) nwee                    |
| Do you have a ... room?            | <i>Avez-vous une chambre ...?</i>                         | a-vey-voo<br>ewn shom-bre ...                           |
| single                             | <i>à un lit</i>                                           | a un lee                                                |
| double                             | <i>avec un grand lit</i>                                  | a-vek ung gron lee                                      |
| twin                               | <i>avec des lits jumeaux</i>                              | a-vek dey lee zhe-w-mo                                  |
| How much is it per ...?            | <i>Quel est le prix par ...?</i>                          | kel ey le pree<br>par ...                               |
| night                              | <i>nuît</i>                                               | nwee                                                    |
| person                             | <i>personne</i>                                           | pair-son                                                |

## banking & communications

|                            |                                      |                                   |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| I'd like to ...            | <i>Je voudrais ...</i>               | zhe voo-drey ...                  |
| change a travellers cheque | <i>changer des chèques de voyage</i> | shon-zhey dey<br>shek de vwa-yazh |
| change money               | <i>changer de l'argent</i>           | shon-zhey de lar-zhon             |
| get internet access        | <i>me connecter à l'internet</i>     | me ko-nek-tey a<br>lun-tair-net   |
| withdraw money             | <i>retirer de l'argent</i>           | re-tee-rey de lar-zhon            |

## shopping

|                               |                                           |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| I'm looking for ...           | <i>Je cherche ...</i>                     | zhe shairsh ...                   |
| How much is it?               | <i>C'est combien?</i>                     | sey kom-byun                      |
| Can you write down the price? | <i>Pouvez-vous écrire le prix?</i>        | poo-vey-voo ey-kreer le pree      |
| Do you accept ...?            | <i>Est-ce que je peux payer avec ...?</i> | es-ke zhe pe<br>pey-yey a-vek ... |
| credit cards                  | <i>une carte de crédit</i>                | ewn kart de krey-dee              |
| travellers cheques            | <i>des chèques de voyages</i>             | dey shek de vwa-yazh              |

## making conversation

|                        |                              |                      |
|------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| Hello.                 | <i>Bonjour.</i>              | bon-zhoor            |
| Good night.            | <i>Bonsoir.</i>              | bon-swar             |
| Goodbye.               | <i>Au revoir.</i>            | o re-vwar            |
| Mr                     | <i>Monsieur</i>              | me-syeu              |
| Mrs                    | <i>Madame</i>                | ma-dam               |
| Miss                   | <i>Mademoiselle</i>          | mad-mwa-zel          |
| How are you?           | <i>Comment allez-vous?</i>   | ko-mon ta-ley-voo    |
| Fine, thanks. And you? | <i>Bien, merci. Et vous?</i> | byun mair-see ey voo |

|                          |                                                  |                                         |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| What's your name?        | <i>Comment vous appelez-vous?</i>                | ko-mon voo<br>za-pley-voo               |
| My name's ...            | <i>Je m'appelle ...</i>                          | zhe ma-pel ...                          |
| I'm pleased to meet you. | <i>Enchanté(e). m/f</i>                          | on-shon-tey                             |
| <br>This is my ...       | <br><i>Voici mon/ma ... m/f</i>                  | <br>vwa-see mon/ma ...                  |
| boyfriend                | <i>petit ami</i>                                 | pe-tee ta-mee                           |
| daughter                 | <i>fille</i>                                     | fee-ye                                  |
| friend                   | <i>ami/amie m/f</i>                              | a-mee                                   |
| girlfriend               | <i>petite amie</i>                               | pe-tee ta-mee                           |
| husband                  | <i>mari</i>                                      | ma-ree                                  |
| son                      | <i>fil</i>                                       | fees                                    |
| wife                     | <i>femme</i>                                     | fam                                     |
| <br>I'm ...              | <br><i>Je suis ...</i>                           | <br>zhe swee ...                        |
| married                  | <i>marié/mariée m/f</i>                          | mar-yey                                 |
| single                   | <i>célibataire m&amp;f</i>                       | sey-lee-ba-tair                         |
| <br>Here's my ...        | <br><i>Voici mon ...</i>                         | <br>vwa-see mon ...                     |
| What's your ...?         | <i>Quel est votre ...? pol</i>                   | kel ey vo-tre ...                       |
|                          | <i>Quel est ton ...? inf</i>                     | kel ey ton ...                          |
| address                  | <i>adresse</i>                                   | a-dres                                  |
| email address            | <i>e-mail</i>                                    | ey-mel                                  |
| phone number             | <i>numéro de téléphone</i>                       | new-mey-ro de<br>tey-ley-fon            |
| <br>Where are you from?  | <br><i>Vous venez d'où? pol</i>                  | <br>voo ve-ney doo                      |
|                          | <i>Tu viens d'où? inf</i>                        | tew vyun doo                            |
| <br>I'm from ...         | <br><i>Je viens ...</i>                          | <br>zhe vyun ...                        |
| Australia                | <i>d'Australie</i>                               | dos-tra-lee                             |
| Canada                   | <i>du Canada</i>                                 | dew ka-na-da                            |
| New Zealand              | <i>de la Nouvelle-Zélande</i>                    | de la noo-vel-zey-lond                  |
| the UK                   | <i>du Royaume-Uni</i>                            | dew rwa-om ew-nee                       |
| the USA                  | <i>des Etats Unis</i>                            | dey ey-tas ew-nee                       |
| <br>Can I take a photo?  | <br><i>Est-ce que je peux prendre une photo?</i> | <br>es-ke zhe peu<br>pron-dre ewn fo-to |

## eating out

|                                           |                                                    |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like ..., please.                     | <i>Je voudrais ..., s'il vous plaît.</i>           | zhe voo-drey ...<br>seel voo pley               |
| the bill                                  | <i>l'addition</i>                                  | la-dee-syon                                     |
| the menu                                  | <i>la carte</i>                                    | la kart                                         |
| a table for (two)                         | <i>une table pour (deux) personnes</i>             | ewn ta-ble poor<br>(deu) pair-son               |
| that dish                                 | <i>ce plat</i>                                     | se pla                                          |
| <br>Do you have vegetarian food?          | <br><i>Vous faites les repas végétariens?</i>      | <br>voo fet ley re-pa<br>vey-zhey-ta-ryun       |
| <br>Could you prepare a meal without ...? | <br><i>Pouvez-vous préparer un repas sans ...?</i> | <br>poo-vey-voo prey-pa-rey<br>un re-pa son ... |
| eggs                                      | <i>œufs</i>                                        | eu                                              |
| meat stock                                | <i>bouillon gras</i>                               | boo-yon gra                                     |

## emergencies

|                                |                                                               |                                                        |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Help!                          | <i>Au secours!</i>                                            | o skoor                                                |
| Call ...!                      | <i>Appelez ...!</i>                                           | a-pley ...                                             |
| an ambulance                   | <i>une ambulance</i>                                          | ewn om-bew-lons                                        |
| the police                     | <i>la police</i>                                              | la po-lees                                             |
| <br>Could you help me, please? | <br><i>Est-ce que vous pourriez m'aider, s'il vous plaît?</i> | <br>es-ke voo poo-ryey<br>mey-dey seel voo pley        |
| <br>Could I use the telephone? | <br><i>Est-ce que je pourrais utiliser le téléphone?</i>      | <br>es-ke zhe poo-rey ew-tee-lee-zey<br>le tey-ley-fon |
| <br>I'm lost.                  | <br><i>Je suis perdu/perdue. m/f</i>                          | <br>zhe swee pair-dew                                  |
| <br>Where are the toilets?     | <br><i>Où sont les toilettes?</i>                             | <br>oo son ley twa-let                                 |
| <br>I've been assaulted.       | <br><i>J'ai été violenté/violentée. m/f</i>                   | <br>zhey ey-tey vyo-lon-tey                            |
| <br>I've been raped.           | <br><i>J'ai été violé/violée. m/f</i>                         | <br>zhey ey-tey vyo-ley                                |

I've lost my ...  
My ... was/were  
stolen.

bags  
credit card  
handbag  
jewellery  
money  
passport  
travellers  
cheques  
wallet

*J'ai perdu ...  
On m'a volé ...*

*mes valises  
ma carte de crédit  
mon sac à main  
mes bijoux  
mon argent  
mon passeport  
mes chèques de  
voyage  
mon portefeuille*

zhey pair-dew ...  
on ma vo-ley ...

may va-leez  
ma kart de krey-dee  
mon sak a mun  
mey bee-zhoo  
mon ar-zhon  
mom pas-por  
mey shek de  
vwa-yazh  
mom por-te-feu-ye

I want to contact  
my ...

consulate  
embassy

*Je veux contacter  
mon ...*

*consulat  
ambassade*

zher veu kon-tak-tey  
mon ...

kon-sew-la  
om-ba-sad



## medical needs

Where's the  
nearest ...?

dentist  
doctor  
hospital  
pharmacist

*Où y a-t-il ...  
par ici?*

*un dentiste  
un médecin  
un hôpital  
une pharmacie*

oo ee a teel ...  
par ee-see

un don-teest  
un meyd-sun  
u-no-pee-tal  
ewn far-ma-see

I need a doctor (who speaks English).

*J'ai besoin d'un médecin  
(qui parle anglais).*

zhey be-zwun dun meyd-sun  
(kee parl ong-gley)

It hurts here.

*J'ai une douleur ici.*

zhey ewn doo-leur ee-see

I'm allergic to (penicillin).

*Je suis allergique  
à (la pénicilline).*

zhe swee za-lair-zheek  
a (la pey-nee-see-leen)

## english–french dictionary

French nouns and adjectives in this dictionary have their gender indicated by ♂ (masculine) or ♀ (feminine). If it's a plural noun, you'll also see pl. Words are also marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular), pl (plural), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

### A

accommodation *logement* ♂ lozh-mon  
adaptor *adaptateur* ♂ a-dap-ta-teur  
after *après* a-prey  
airport *aéroport* ♂ a-ey-ro-por  
alcohol *alcool* ♂ al-kol  
all a *tout/toute* ♂/♀ too/toot  
allergy *allergie* ♀ a-lair-zhee  
and *et* ey  
ankle *cheville* ♀ she-vee-ye  
antibiotics *antibiotiques* ♂ pl on-tee-byo-teek  
anti-inflammatories *anti-inflammatoires* ♂ pl  
un-tee-un-fla-ma-twar  
arm *bras* ♂ bra  
aspirin *aspirine* ♀ as-pee-reen  
asthma *asthme* ♂ as-meu  
ATM *guichet automatique de banque* ♂  
gee-shey o-to-ma-teek de bonk

### B

baby *bébé* ♂ bey-bey  
back (body) *dos* ♂ do  
backpack *sac à dos* ♂ sak a do  
bad *mauvais/mauvaise* ♂/♀ mo-vey/mo-veyz  
baggage *claim retrait des bagages* ♂  
re-trey dey ba-gazh  
bank *banque* ♀ bonk  
bathroom *salle de bain* ♀ sal de bun  
battery (car) *batterie* ♀ bat-ree  
battery (general) *pile* ♀ peel  
beautiful *beau/belle* ♂/♀ bo/bel  
bed *lit* ♂ lee  
bee *abeille* ♀ a-bey  
beer *bière* ♀ byair  
before *avant* a-von  
bicycle *vélo* ♂ vey-lo  
big *grand/grande* ♂/♀ gron/grond  
blanket *couverture* ♀ koo-vair-tewr  
blood group *groupe sanguin* ♂ groep song-gun

bottle *bouteille* ♀ boo-tey  
bottle opener *ouvre-bouteille* ♂ oo-vre-boo-tey  
boy *garçon* ♂ gar-son  
brakes (car) *freins* ♂ frun  
breakfast *petit déjeuner* ♂ pe-tee dey-zheu-ney  
bronchitis *bronchite* ♀ bron-sheet

### C

café *café* ♂ ka-fey  
cancel *annuler* a-new-ley  
can opener *ouvre-boîte* ♂ oo-vre-bwat  
cash *argent* ♂ ar-zhon  
cell phone *téléphone portable* ♂ tey-ley-fon por-ta-ble  
centre *centre* ♂ son-tre  
cheap *bon marché* ♂&♀ bon-mar-shey  
check (bill) *addition* ♀ la-dee-syon  
check-in *enregistrement* ♂ on-re-zhee-stre-mon  
chest *poitrine* ♀ pwa-treen  
child *enfant* ♂&♀ on-fon  
cigarette *cigarette* ♀ see-ga-ret  
city *ville* ♀ veel  
clean a *propre* ♂&♀ pro-pre  
closed *fermé/fermée* ♂/♀ fair-mey  
codeine *codéine* ♀ ko-dey-een  
cold a *froid/froide* ♂/♀ frwa/frwad  
collect call *appel en PCV* ♂ a-pel on pey-sey-vey  
condom *préservatif* ♂ prey-zair-va-teef  
constipation *constipation* ♀ kon-stee-pa-syon  
contact lenses *verres de contact* ♂ pl vair de kon-takt  
cough *toux* ♀ too  
currency exchange *taux de change* ♂ to de shonzh  
customs (immigration) *douane* ♀ dwan

### D

dairy products *produits laitiers* ♂ pl pro-dwee ley-tyey  
dangerous *dangereux/dangereuse* ♂/♀  
don-zhreu/don-zhreu  
day date *de naissance* ♀ dat de ney-sons  
diaper *couche* ♀ koosh

### A

diarrhoea *diarrhée* ① dya-rey  
 dinner *dîner* ② dee-ney  
 dirty *sale* ②&③ sal  
 disabled *handicapé/handicapée* ②/③ on-dee-ka-pey  
 double bed *grand lit* ② gron lee  
 drink *boisson* ③ bwa-son  
 drivers licence *permis de conduire* ②  
 pair-mee de kon-dweer  
 drug (illicit) *drogue* ③ drog

## E

ear *oreille* ③ o-rey  
 east *est* ② est  
 economy class *classe touriste* ③ klas too-reest  
 elevator *ascenseur* ② a-son-seur  
 email *e-mail* ② ey-mel  
 English (language) *anglais* ② ong-gley  
 exchange rate *taux de change* ② to de shonzh  
 exit *sortie* ③ sor-tee  
 expensive *cher/chère* ②/③ shair  
 eye *œil* ② eu-ye

## F

fast *rapide* ②&③ ra-peed  
 fever *fièvre* ③ fyev-re  
 finger *doigt* ② dwa  
 first-aid kit *trousse à pharmacie* ③ troos a far-ma-see  
 first class *première classe* ③ pre-myair klas  
 fish *poisson* ② pwa-son  
 food *nourriture* ③ noo-ree-tewr  
 foot *pied* ② pyey  
 fork *fourchette* ③ four-shet  
 free (of charge) *gratuit/gratuite* ②/③  
 gra-twee/gra-tweet  
 fruit *fruit* ② frwee  
 funny *drôle* ②&③ drol

## G

gift *cadeau* ② ka-do  
 girl *filles* ③ fee-ye  
 glasses *lunettes* ③ pl lew-net  
 gluten *gluten* ② glew-ten  
 good *bon/bonne* ②/③ bon  
 gram *gramme* ② gram  
 guide *guide* ② geed

## H

hand *main* ③ mun  
 happy *heureux/heureuse* ②/③ eu-reu/eu-reuz  
 have *avoir* a-vwar  
 he *il* eel  
 head *tête* ③ tet  
 headache *mal à la tête* ② mal a la tet  
 heart *cœur* ② keur  
 heart condition *maladie de cœur* ③ ma-la-dee de keur  
 heat *chaleur* ③ sha-leur  
 here *ici* ee-see  
 high *haut/haute* ②/③ o/ot  
 highway *autoroute* ③ o-to-root  
 homosexual *homosexuel/homosexuelle* ②/③  
 o-mo-sek-swel  
 hot *chaud/chaude* ②/③ sho/shod  
 (be) hungry *avoir faim* a-vwar fum

## I

I *je* zhe  
 identification (card) *carte d'identité* ③  
 kart dee-don-tee-tye  
 ill *malade* ②&③ ma-lad  
 important *important/importante* ②/③  
 um-por-ton/um-por-tont  
 internet *Internet* ② un-tair-net  
 interpreter *interprète* ②&③ un-tair-pret

## K

key *clé* ③ kley  
 kilogram *kilogramme* ② kee-lo-gram  
 kitchen *cuisine* ③ kwee-zeen  
 knife *couteau* ② koo-to

## L

laundry (place) *blanchisserie* ③ blon-shees-ree  
 lawyer *avocat/avocate* ②/③ a-vo-ka/a-vo-kat  
 left-luggage office *consigne* ③ kon-see-nye  
 leg *jambe* ③ zhomb  
 lesbian *lesbienne* ② les-byen  
 less *moins* mwun  
 letter (mail) *lettre* ③ le-trer  
 like *aimer* ey-mey  
 lost-property office *bureau des objets trouvés* ②  
 bew-ro dey zob-zhey troo-vey

love *aimer* ey-mey  
 lunch *déjeuner* ② dey-zheu-ney

## M

man *homme* ② om  
 matches *allumettes* ③ pl a-lew-met  
 meat *viande* ③ vyond  
 medicine *médecine* ③ med-seen  
 message *message* ② mey-sazh  
 mobile phone *téléphone portable* ② tey-ley-fon por-ta-ble  
 month *mois* ② mwa  
 morning *matin* ② ma-tun  
 motorcycle *moto* ③ mo-to  
 mouth *bouche* ③ boosh  
 movie *film* ② feelm  
 MSG *glutamate de sodium* ② glew-ta-mat de so-dyom  
 museum *musée* ② mew-zey  
 music *musique* ③ mew-zeek

## N

name *nom* ② nom  
 napkin *serviette* ③ sair-vyet  
 nappy *couche* ③ koosh  
 national park *parc national* ② park na-syo-nal  
 nausea *nausée* ③ no-zey  
 neck *cou* ② koo  
 new *nouveau/nouvelle* ②/③ noo-vo/noo-vel  
 news ③ pl les nouvelles ley noo-vel  
 newspaper *journal* ② zhoor-nal  
 night *nuit* ③ nwee  
 nightclub *boîte* ③ bwat  
 noisy *bruyant/bruyante* ②/③ brew-yon/brew-yont  
 nonsmoking *non-fumeur* non-few-meur  
 north *nord* ② nor  
 nose *nez* ② ney  
 now *maintenant* mun-te-non  
 number *numéro* ② new-mey-ro

## O

oil *huile* ③ weel  
 OK *bien* byun  
 old *vieux/vieille* ②/③ vyeu/vyey  
 open *a ouvert/ouverte* ②/③ oo-vair/oo-vairt  
 outside *dehors* de-or

## P

package *paquet* ② pa-key  
 pain *douleur* ③ doo-leur  
 paper *papier* ② pa-pyey  
 park (car) *garer (une voiture)* ga-rey (ewn vwa-tewr)  
 passport *passport* ② pas-por  
 pay *payer* pey-yey  
 pen *stylo* ② stee-lo  
 petrol *essence* ③ ey-sons  
 pharmacy *pharmacie* ③ far-ma-see  
 plate *assiette* ③ a-syet  
 postcard *carte postale* ③ kart pos-tal  
 post office *bureau de poste* ③ bew-ro de post  
 pregnant *enceinte* on-sunt

## R

rain *n pluie* ③ plwee  
 razor *rasoir* ② ra-zwar  
 registered mail *en recommandé* on re-ko-mon-dey  
 rent *louer* loo-ey  
 repair *réparer* rey-pa-rey  
 reservation *réservation* ③ rey-zair-va-syon  
 restaurant *restaurant* ② res-to-ron  
 return *revenir* rev-neer  
 road *route* ③ root  
 room *chambre* ③ shom-bre

## S

sad *triste* treest  
 safe *a sans danger* ②&③ son don-zhey  
 sanitary *napkin serviette hygiénique* ③  
 sair-vyet ee-zhyey-neek  
 seafood *fruits de mer* ② frwee de mair  
 seat *place* ③ plas  
 send *envoyer* on-vwa-yey  
 sex *sexe* ② seks  
 shampoo *shampooing* ② shom-pwung  
 share (a dorm) *partager* par-ta-zhey  
 shaving cream *mousse à raser* ③ moos a ra-zey  
 she *elle* el  
 sheet (bed) *drap* ② dra  
 shirt *chemise* ③ she-meez  
 shoes *chaussures* ③ pl sho-sewr  
 shop *magasin* ② ma-ga-zun  
 shower *douche* ③ doosh  
 skin *peau* ③ po

skirt *jupe* ① zhewp  
 sleep *v dormir* dor-meer  
 small *petit/petite* ①/② pe-tee/pe-teet  
 smoke (cigarettes) *v fumer* few-mey  
 soap *savon* ① sa-von  
 some *quelques* kel-ke  
 soon *bientôt* byun-to  
 sore throat *mal à la gorge* ① mal a la gorzh  
 south *sud* ① sewd  
 souvenir shop *magasin de souvenirs* ①  
 ma-ga-zun de soov-neer  
 speak *parler* par-leey  
 spoon *cuillère* ① kwee-yair  
 stamp *timbre* ① tum-bre  
 stand-by ticket *billet stand-by* ① bee-yey stond-bai  
 station (train) *gare* ① gar  
 stomach *estomac* ① es-to-ma  
 stop *v arrêter* a-rey-tey  
 stop (bus) *arrêt* ① a-rey  
 street *rue* ① rew  
 student *étudiant/étudiante* ①/②  
 ey-tew-dyon/ey-tew-dyont  
 sunscreen *écran solaire* ① ey-kron so-lair  
 swim *v nager* na-zhey

## T

tampons *tampons* ① pl tom-pon  
 teeth *dents* ① don  
 telephone *n téléphone* ① tey-ley-fon  
 television *télé(vision)* ① tey-ley(vee-zyon)  
 temperature (weather) *température* ① tom-pey-ra-tewr  
 that (one) *cela* se-la  
 they *ils/elles* ①/② eel/el  
 (be) thirsty *avoir soif* a-vwar swaf  
 this (one) *ceci* se-see  
 throat *gorge* ① gorzh  
 ticket *billet* ① bee-yey  
 time *temps* ① tom  
 tired *fatigué/fatiguée* ①/② fa-tee-gey  
 tissues *mouchoirs en papier* ① pl moo-shwar om pa-pyey  
 today *aujourd'hui* o-zhoor-dwee  
 toilet *toilettes* ① pl twa-let  
 tonight *ce soir* se swar  
 toothache *mal aux dents* ① mal o don  
 toothbrush *brosse à dents* ① bros a don

toothpaste *dentifrice* ① don-tee-frees  
 torch (flashlight) *lampe de poche* ① lomp de posh  
 tourist office *office de tourisme* ① o-fees-de too-rees-me  
 towel *serviette* ① sair-vyet  
 travel agency *agence de voyage* ① a-zhons de vwa-yazh  
 travellers cheque *chèque de voyage* ① shek de vwa-yazh  
 trousers *pantalon* ① pon-ta-lon  
 twin beds *lits jumeaux* ① pl dey lee zhe-w-mo  
 tyre *pneu* ① pneu

## V

vacant *libre* ①&② lee-bre  
 vegetable *légume* ① ley-gewm  
 vegetarian *a végétarien/végétarienne* ①/②  
 vey-zhey-ta-ryun/vey-zhey-ta-ryen  
 visa *visa* ① vee-za

## W

waiter *serveur/serveuse* ①/② sair-veur/sair-veurz  
 walk *v marcher* mar-shey  
 wallet *portefeuille* ① por-te-feu-ye  
 warm *a chaud/chaude* ①/② sho/shod  
 wash (something) *laver* la-vey  
 watch *montre* ① mon-tre  
 water *eau* ① o  
 we *nous* noo  
 west *ouest* ① west  
 wheelchair *fauteuil roulant* ① fo-teu-ye roo-lon  
 when *quand* kon  
 where *où* oo  
 who *qui* kee  
 why *pourquoi* poor-kwa  
 window *fenêtre* ① fe-ney-tre  
 wine *vin* ① vun  
 with *avec* a-vek  
 without *sans* son  
 woman *femme* ① fam  
 write *écrire* ey-kreer

## Y

you *sg inf tu* tew  
 you *sg pol vous* voo  
 you *pl vous* voo

Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this © chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of 'saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content

# Hausa



# pronunciation

| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                  | Consonants |                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | English sound                                    | Symbol     | English sound                   |
| a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | run                                              | b          | bed                             |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | father                                           | b'         | strong b with air sucked inward |
| ai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | aisle                                            | ch         | cheat                           |
| aw                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | law                                              | d          | dog                             |
| ay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | say                                              | d'         | strong d with air sucked inward |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | bet                                              | g          | go                              |
| ey                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | as in 'bet', but longer                          | h          | hat                             |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | see                                              | j          | jar                             |
| i                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | hit                                              | k          | kit                             |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | pot                                              | k'         | strong k                        |
| oo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | zoo                                              | l          | lot                             |
| ow                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | now                                              | m          | man                             |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | put                                              | n          | not                             |
| '                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | like the pause in 'uh-oh' (comes before a vowel) | p          | pet                             |
| <p>In this chapter, the Hausa pronunciation is given in purple after each phrase. Each syllable is separated by a dot. For example:</p> <p><i>Na gode.</i>    naa gaw-dey</p> <p>Hausa's glottalised consonants, simplified here as b', d', k', ts' and y', are made by tightening and releasing the space between the vocal cords when you pronounce the sound. The b' and d' sounds have an extra twist – instead of breathing out, you breathe in.</p> |                                                  | r          | run                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | s          | sun                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | sh         | shot                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | t          | top                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | ts'        | as in 'lets', but spat out      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | w          | win                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | y          | yes                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | y'         | spat out y                      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | z          | zero                            |

# HAUSA

## hausa

## introduction

According to some scholars, the name 'Hausa' is derived from a phrase meaning 'to climb/ride the bull'. As one of the lingua francas of West Africa, Hausa (*Hausa* how-sa) is spoken by around 40 million people. For over half of these, Hausa is their first language. Most native speakers live in northern Nigeria and southern Niger, where Hausa is one of the national languages. There's a small community of native speakers in the Blue Nile area of Sudan, and it's also spoken in parts of Benin, Cameroon, and Ghana. Hausa is one of the Chadic languages (in the Afro-Asiatic language family), which came from the southern shores of Lake Chad in present-day northeastern Nigeria and northern Cameroon, and gradually migrated westward over the centuries. In the past, Hausa was written in *ajami*, a modified form of Arabic script, but since the early 19th century it has also been written in many areas with a slightly modified Roman alphabet. This alphabet, called *boko*, is now the official written form.

■ **hausa** (native language)

■ **hausa** (generally understood)



## language difficulties

|                                  |                                   |                                |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Do you speak English?            | <i>Kana/Kina jin turanci? m/f</i> | ka-naa/ki-naa jin too-ran-chee |
| Do you understand? I understand. | <i>Ka/Kin gane? m/f Na gane.</i>  | kaa/kin gaa-ney naa gaa-ney    |
| I don't understand.              | <i>Ban gane ba.</i>               | ban gaa-ney ba                 |
| Could you please ...?            | <i>Za ka/ki iya...? m/f</i>       | zaa ka/ki i-ya ...             |
| repeat that                      | <i>maimaita wannan</i>            | mai-mai-ta wan-nan             |
| speak more                       | <i>yi magana</i>                  | yi ma-ga-naa                   |
| slowly                           | <i>sannu-sannu</i>                | san-nu-san-nu                  |
| write it down                    | <i>rubuta wannan</i>              | ru-boo-ta wan-nan              |

## time, dates & numbers

|                     |                                          |                                       |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| What time is it?    | <i>K'arfe nawa ne?</i>                   | k'ar-fey na-wa ney                    |
| It's one o'clock.   | <i>K'arfe d'aya ne.</i>                  | k'ar-fey d'a-ya ney                   |
| It's (two) o'clock. | <i>K'arfe (biyu) ne.</i>                 | k'ar-fey (bi-yu) ney                  |
| Quarter past (one). | <i>K'arfe (d'aya) da kwata.</i>          | k'ar-fey (d'a-ya) da kwa-taa          |
| Half past (one).    | <i>K'arfe (d'aya) da rabi.</i>           | k'ar-fey (d'a-ya) da ra-bee           |
| Quarter to (eight). | <i>(K'arfe takwas) ba kwata.</i>         | (k'ar-fey tak-was) baa kwa-taa        |
| At what time ...?   | <i>K'arfe nawa ...?</i>                  | k'ar-fey na-wa ...                    |
| At ...              | <i>A ...</i>                             | a ...                                 |
| It's (15 December). | <i>Yau (sha biyar ga watan Disamba).</i> | yow (shaa bi-yar ga wa-tan di-sam-ba) |
| yesterday           | <i>jiya</i>                              | ji-ya                                 |
| today               | <i>yau</i>                               | yow                                   |
| tomorrow            | <i>gobe</i>                              | gaw-be                                |
| Monday              | <i>Littinin</i>                          | lit-ti-nin                            |
| Tuesday             | <i>Talata</i>                            | ta-laa-taa                            |
| Wednesday           | <i>Laraba</i>                            | laa-ra-baa                            |
| Thursday            | <i>Alhamis</i>                           | al-ha-mis                             |
| Friday              | <i>Juma'a</i>                            | ju-ma-'aa                             |
| Saturday            | <i>Asabar</i>                            | a-sa-bar                              |
| Sunday              | <i>Lahadi</i>                            | la-ha-di                              |

## numbers

|    |                  |             |      |                         |                      |
|----|------------------|-------------|------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 0  | <i>sifiri</i>    | si-fi-ree   | 15   | <i>(goma) sha biyar</i> | (gaw-ma) shaa bi-yar |
| 1  | <i>d'aya</i>     | d'a-ya      | 16   | <i>(goma) sha shida</i> | (gaw-ma) shaa shi-da |
| 2  | <i>biyu</i>      | bi-yu       | 17   | <i>(goma)</i>           | (gaw-ma)             |
| 3  | <i>uku</i>       | u-ku        |      | <i>sha bakwai</i>       | shaa bak-wai         |
| 4  | <i>hud'u</i>     | hu-d'u      | 18   | <i>(goma)</i>           | (gaw-ma)             |
| 5  | <i>biyar</i>     | bi-yar      |      | <i>sha takwas</i>       | shaa tak-was         |
| 6  | <i>shida</i>     | shi-da      | 19   | <i>(goma) sha tara</i>  | (gaw-ma) shaa ta-ra  |
| 7  | <i>bakwai</i>    | bak-wai     | 20   | <i>ashirin</i>          | a-shi-rin            |
| 8  | <i>takwas</i>    | tak-was     | 21   | <i>ashirin da d'aya</i> | a-shi-rin da d'a-ya  |
| 9  | <i>tara</i>      | ta-ra       | 22   | <i>ashirin da biyu</i>  | a-shi-rin da bi-yu   |
| 10 | <i>goma</i>      | gaw-ma      | 30   | <i>talatin</i>          | ta-laa-tin           |
| 11 | <i>(goma)</i>    | (gaw-ma)    | 40   | <i>arba'in</i>          | ar-ba-'in            |
|    | <i>sha d'aya</i> | shaa d'a-ya | 50   | <i>hamsin</i>           | ham-sin              |
| 12 | <i>(goma)</i>    | (gaw-ma)    | 60   | <i>sittin</i>           | sit-tin              |
|    | <i>sha biyu</i>  | shaa bi-yu  | 70   | <i>saba'in</i>          | sa-ba-'in            |
| 13 | <i>(goma)</i>    | (gaw-ma)    | 80   | <i>tamanin</i>          | ta-maa-nin           |
|    | <i>sha uku</i>   | shaa u-ku   | 90   | <i>tasa'in</i>          | ta-sa-'in            |
| 14 | <i>(goma)</i>    | (gaw-ma)    | 100  | <i>d'ari</i>            | d'a-ree              |
|    | <i>sha hud'u</i> | shaa hu-d'u | 1000 | <i>dubu</i>             | du-boo               |

## border crossing

|                                   |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| I'm here ...                      | <i>Na zo nan ...</i>              | naa zaw nan ...                 |
| in transit                        | <i>don ya</i>                     | don yaa                         |
|                                   | <i>da zango</i>                   | da zan-goo                      |
| on business                       | <i>don yin kasuwanci</i>          | don yin ka-su-wan-chee          |
| on holiday                        | <i>don yi hutu</i>                | don yi hoo-too                  |
| I'm here for ...                  | <i>Zan yi ... a nan.</i>          | zan yi ... a nan                |
| (10) days                         | <i>kwana (goma)</i>               | kwaa-naa (gaw-ma)               |
| (three) weeks                     | <i>mako (uku)</i>                 | maa-kaw (u-ku)                  |
| (two) months                      | <i>wata (biyu)</i>                | waa-taa (bi-yu)                 |
| I'm going to (Zaria).             | <i>Za ni (Zazzau).</i>            | zaa ni (zaz-zow)                |
| I'm staying at the (Daula Hotel). | <i>Ina zaune a (Daula Hotel).</i> | i-naa zow-ne a (dow-la haw-tel) |

## tickets

|                                        |                                                            |                                                            |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| One ... ticket<br>(to Zinder), please. | <i>Tikitin ... guda d'aya</i><br>(zuwa Zandar), don Allah. | ti-ki-tin ... gu-daa d'a-ya<br>(zu-waa zan-dar) don al-laa |
| one-way                                | zuwa                                                       | zu-waa                                                     |
| return                                 | zuwa da dawowa                                             | zu-waa da daa-waw-waa                                      |

|                                       |                                                      |                                             |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| I'd like to ... my<br>ticket, please. | <i>Ina son in ...</i><br><i>tikitina, don Allah.</i> | i-naa son in ...<br>ti-ki-ti-naa don al-laa |
| cancel                                | soke                                                 | saw-kye                                     |
| change                                | canja                                                | chan-ja                                     |
| collect                               | karb'i                                               | kar-b'i                                     |

### I'd like a smoking/nonsmoking seat, please.

|                                                                          |                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ina son abin zama ga masu/</i><br><i>marasa shan taba, don Allah.</i> | i-naa son a-bin za-maa ga maa-su/<br>ma-ra-saa shan taa-baa don al-laa |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Is there a toilet?

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Akwai ban d'aki?</i> | a-kwai ban d'aa-kee |
|-------------------------|---------------------|

### Is there air conditioning?

|                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Akwai na'urar sanyaya d'aki?</i> | a-kwai naa-'oo-rar san-ya-ya d'aa-kee |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

### How long does the trip take?

|                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Tafiyar za ta dad'e?</i> | ta-fi-yar zaa ta da-d'ee |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|

### Is it a direct route?

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Wannan ce hanya kai tsaye?</i> | wan-nan chey han-yaa kai ts'a-ye |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|

## transport

### Where does flight (BA527) arrive/depart?

|                                                              |                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>A ina jirgin sama (BA 527)</i><br><i>zai sauka/tashi?</i> | a i-naa jir-gin sa-ma (bi ei faiv too se-ven)<br>zai sow-kaa/taa-shi |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|

### How long will it be delayed?

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Minti nawa zai makara?</i> | min-tee na-wa zai ma-ka-ra |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|

### Is this the ... (to Maiduguri)?

|                                                         |                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Wannan ... (zuwa</i><br><i>Maiduguri) ne/ce? m/f</i> | wan-nan ... (zu-waa<br>mai-du-gu-ri) ney/chey |
| boat                                                    | jir-gin ruwa m                                |
| bus                                                     | mota f                                        |
| plane                                                   | jir-gin sama m                                |
| train                                                   | jir-gin k'asa m                               |

### How much is it to ...?

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Nawa ne kud'in zuwa ...?</i> | na-wa ney ku-d'in zu-waa ... |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|

### Please take me to (this address).

|                                                                                          |                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ka/Ki d'auke ni zuwa (wurin mai</i><br><i>lambar wannan adireshi), don Allah. m/f</i> | ka/ki d'ow-kyey ni zu-waa (wu-ree mai<br>lam-bar wan-nan a-di-rey-shee) don al-laa |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### I'd like to hire a ... (with air conditioning).

|                                                        |                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ina son in yi hayar ...</i><br><i>(tare da AC).</i> | i-naa son in yi ha-yar ...<br>(taa-re da ai-si)         |
| car                                                    | mota                                                    |
| 4WD                                                    | mota mai juyawa<br>da k'afa hud'u                       |
|                                                        | maw-taa<br>maw-taa mai joo-yaa-waa<br>da k'a-faa hu-d'u |

### How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

|                                                      |                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nawa ne kud'in na</i><br><i>kwana/mako (uku)?</i> | na-wa ney ku-d'in na<br>kwaa-naa/maa-kaw (u-ku) |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|



## directions

### Where's the (nearest) ...?

|                                       |                                                                      |                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>internet café</i><br><i>market</i> | <i>Ina ... (mafi kusa)?</i><br><i>internet cafe</i><br><i>kasuwa</i> | i-naa ... (ma-fee ku-sa)<br><i>in-tey-net ka-fey</i><br><i>kaa-su-waa</i> |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Is this the road to (Lagos)?

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Wannan hanya zuwa (Ikko) ce?</i> | wan-nan han-ya zu-waa (ik-ko) chey |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|

### Can you show me (on the map)?

|                                                          |                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Za ka/ki iya nuna mini</i><br><i>(a taswira)? m/f</i> | za ka/ki i-ya noo-naa mi-ni<br>(a tas-wi-raa) |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|

### What's the address?

|                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Mene ne adireshin?</i> | mey-ney ney a-di-rey-shin |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|

### How far is it?

|                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| <i>Mil nawa ne?</i> | mil na-wa ney |
|---------------------|---------------|

### How do I get there?

|                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Ina ne hanyar zuwa can?</i> | i-naa ney han-yar zu-waa chan |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|

### Turn left/right.

|                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yi hagu/dama.</i> | yi ha-gu/daa-ma |
|----------------------|-----------------|

|                 |                          |                         |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| It's ...        | <i>Ga shi/ta ... m/f</i> | <i>ga shi/ta ...</i>    |
| behind ...      | <i>bayan ...</i>         | <i>baa-yan ...</i>      |
| in front of ... | <i>gaban ...</i>         | <i>ga-ban ...</i>       |
| near (to ...)   | <i>kusa (da ...)</i>     | <i>ku-sa (da ...)</i>   |
| next to ...     | <i>daf da ...</i>        | <i>daf da ...</i>       |
| on the corner   | <i>a kwana</i>           | <i>a kwa-naa</i>        |
| opposite ...    | <i>daura da ...</i>      | <i>dow-ra da ...</i>    |
| straight ahead  | <i>mik'e sosai</i>       | <i>mee-k'yey so-sai</i> |
| there           | <i>can</i>               | <i>chan</i>             |

## accommodation

|                |                           |                                |
|----------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Where's a ...? | <i>Ina ... yake?</i>      | <i>i-naa ... yak-yey</i>       |
| camping ground | <i>wurin da aka kafa</i>  | <i>wu-rin da a-ka ka-fa</i>    |
|                | <i>tanti-tanti</i>        | <i>tan-ti-tan-ti</i>           |
| guesthouse     | <i>gidan saukar bak'i</i> | <i>gi-dan sow-kar baa-k'ee</i> |
| hotel          | <i>hotal</i>              | <i>haw-tal</i>                 |
| youth hostel   | <i>makwancin matasa</i>   | <i>ma-kwan-chin ma-taa-saa</i> |

### Can you recommend somewhere (cheap/good)?

*Za ka/ki iya gaya mini ina za a sami wani wuri (mai araha/kyau)? m/f*      *zaa ka/ki i-ya gaa-yaa mi-ni i-naa za a saa-mi wa-ni wu-ree (mai a-ra-haa/kyow)*

### I'd like to book a room, please.

*Ina son a kama mini d'aki, don Allah.*      *i-naa son a kaa-maa mi-ni d'aa-kee don al-laa*

### I have a reservation.

*An kama mini d'aki a nan.*      *an kaa-maa mi-ni d'aa-kee a nan*

|                         |                                    |                                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Do you have a ... room? | <i>Kana/Kina da d'aki ...? m/f</i> | <i>ka-naa/ki-naa da d'aa-kee ...</i>   |
| single                  | <i>ga mutum d'aya</i>              | <i>ga mu-tum d'a-ya</i>                |
| double                  | <i>ga mutane biyu</i>              | <i>ga mu-taa-ney bi-yu</i>             |
| twin                    | <i>biyu wad'anda aka had'a su</i>  | <i>bi-yu wa-d'an-da a-ka ha-d'a su</i> |

|                         |                                  |                                     |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| How much is it per ...? | <i>Nawa ne kud'in ... d'aya?</i> | <i>na-wa ney ku-d'in ... d'a-ya</i> |
| night                   | <i>kwana</i>                     | <i>kwaa-naa</i>                     |
| person                  | <i>mutum</i>                     | <i>mu-tum</i>                       |

### I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

*Ina son in yi kwana (biyu) a nan.*      *i-naa son in yi kwaa-naa (bi-yu) a nan*

### What time is check-out?

*Yaushe zan fita daga d'aki?*      *yow-she zan fi-ta da-ga d'aa-kee*

### Am I allowed to camp here?

*Za a bar ni in d'an zauna a nan?*      *zaa a bar ni in d'an zow-naa a nan*

## banking & communications

Note that in Nigeria, unless you have a Nigerian bank account, it will be difficult to do any of the following things, except for changing money.

|                            |                                      |                                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| I'd like to ...            | <i>Ina son in ...</i>                | <i>i-naa son in ...</i>                    |
| arrange a transfer         | <i>aika da kud'i</i>                 | <i>ai-kaa da ku-d'ee</i>                   |
| cash a cheque              | <i>chanja cek na banki</i>           | <i>chan-ja chek na ban-kee</i>             |
|                            | <i>zuwa kud'i</i>                    | <i>zu-waa ku-d'ee</i>                      |
| change a travellers cheque | <i>canja cek</i>                     | <i>chan-ja chek</i>                        |
| change money               | <i>zuwa kud'i</i>                    | <i>zu-waa ku-d'ee</i>                      |
| withdraw money             | <i>canja kud'i</i>                   | <i>chan-ja ku-d'ee</i>                     |
|                            | <i>karb'i kud'i</i>                  | <i>kar-b'i ku-d'ee</i>                     |
| I want to ...              | <i>Ina son ...</i>                   | <i>i-naa son ...</i>                       |
| to call (Singapore)        | <i>buga waya zuwa (Singapur)</i>     | <i>bu-ga wa-yaa zu-waa (sin-ga-pur)</i>    |
| reverse the charges        | <i>mutumin da zan buga masa waya</i> | <i>mu-tu-min da zan bu-ga ma-sa wa-yaa</i> |
|                            | <i>ya biya kud'in waya</i>           | <i>ya bi-ya ku-d'in wa-yaa</i>             |
| use a printer              | <i>yin amfani da printer</i>         | <i>yin am-faa-nee da prin-ter</i>          |
| use the internet           | <i>yin amfani da internet</i>        | <i>yin am-faa-nee da in-ter-net</i>        |

### How much is it per hour?

*Nawa ne kud'in wannan don tsawon awa d'aya?*      *na-wa ney ku-d'in wan-nan don ts'aa-won a-waa d'a-ya*

### How much does a (three-minute) call cost?

*Nawa ne kud'in buga waya (wanda ya yi minti uku)?*      *na-wa ney ku-d'in bu-ga wa-yaa (wan-da ya yi min-tee u-ku)*

### (30 naira) per minute/hour.

*(Naira talatin) don tsawon minti/awa d'aya.*      *(nai-ra ta-laa-tin) don ts'aa-won min-tee/a-waa d'a-ya*

## tours

|                                  |                                     |                                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| When's the next ...?             | <i>Yaushe za a yi ...?</i>          | yow-she zaa a yi ...                    |
| day trip tour                    | <i>tafiya ta kwana d'aya zagaye</i> | ta-fi-yaa ta kwaa-naa d'a-ya zaa-ga yey |
| Is ... included?                 | <i>Akwai ... a kud'in nan?</i>      | ak-wai ... a ku-d'in nan                |
| accommodation                    | <i>masauki</i>                      | ma-sow-kee                              |
| the admission charge             | <i>tikitocin shiga</i>              | ti-ki-taw-chin shi-ga                   |
| food                             | <i>wasu wurare</i>                  | wa-su wu-raa-rey                        |
| transport                        | <i>abinci</i>                       | a-bin-chi                               |
|                                  | <i>sufuri</i>                       | su-fu-ree                               |
| How long is the tour?            |                                     |                                         |
| <i>Awa nawa za a yi zagayen?</i> |                                     | a-wa na-wa zaa a yi zaa-ga-yen          |
| What time should we be back?     |                                     |                                         |
| <i>K'arfe nawa za a koma?</i>    |                                     | k'ar-fey na-wa zaa a kaw-maa            |

## shopping

|                                                       |  |                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------------------------|
| I'm looking for ...                                   |  |                                                      |
| <i>Ina neman ...</i>                                  |  | i-naa ne-man ...                                     |
| I need film for this camera.                          |  |                                                      |
| <i>Ina son fim na wannan kyamara.</i>                 |  | i-naa son fim na wan-nan kya-ma-ra                   |
| Can I listen to this?                                 |  |                                                      |
| <i>Zan iya sauraron wannan?</i>                       |  | zan i-ya sow-raa-ron wan-nan                         |
| Can I have my ... repaired?                           |  |                                                      |
| <i>Za ka/ki iya gyara mini ...? m/f</i>               |  | zaa ka/ki i-ya gya-raa mi-ni ...                     |
| When will it be ready?                                |  |                                                      |
| <i>Yaushe zan samu?</i>                               |  | yow-she zan saa-moo                                  |
| How much is it?                                       |  |                                                      |
| <i>Kud'insa nawa ne?</i>                              |  | ku-d'in-sa na-wa ney                                 |
| Can you write down the price?                         |  |                                                      |
| <i>Za ka/ki iya rubuta mini nawa ne kud'insa? m/f</i> |  | zaa ka/ki i-ya ru-boo-taa mi-ni na-wa ney ku-d'in-sa |
| What's your lowest price?                             |  |                                                      |
| <i>Mene ne kud'i na gaskiya?</i>                      |  | mey-ney ney ku-d'ee na gas-ki-yaa                    |

I'll give you (five) naira.

*Zan ba ka/ki Naira (biyar). m/f*

zan baa ka/ki nai-raa (bi-yar)

There's a mistake in the bill.

*Akwai kuskure a bil.*

a-kwai kus-ku-rey a bil

It's faulty.

*An yi kuskure.*

an yi kus-ku-rey

I'd like a refund, please.

*Ina son a dawo mini da kud'ina, don Allah.*

i-naa son a daa-waw mi-ni da ku-d'ee-naa don al-laa

I'd like a receipt, please.

*Ba ni rasid'i, don Allah.*

baa ni raa-si-d'ee don al-laa

Could you ...?

*Kana/Kina iya ...? m/f*

ka-naa/ki-naa i-ya ...

burn a CD from

*sa abubuwa daga*

sa a-boo-bu-waa da-ga

my memory card

*katin nan zuwa faifai*

kaa-tin nan zu-waa fai-fai

develop this

*wanke wannan*

wan-kye wa-nan

film

*fim*

fim

## making conversation

Hello.

*Sannu.*

san-nu

Good night.

*Sai da safe.*

say da saa-fe

Goodbye.

*Sai wani lokaci.*

say wa-ni law-ka-chee

Mr

*Malam*

maa-lam

Mrs/Ms/Miss

*Malama*

maa-la-maa

How are you?

*Kana/Kina lafiya? m/f*

ka-naa/ki-naa laa-fi-yaa

Fine, and you?

*Lafiya lau, kai/ke fa? m/f*

laa-fi-yaa low kai/kye fa

What's your name?

*Ina sunanka/sunanki? m/f*

i-naa soo-nan-ka/soo-nan-ki

My name's ...

*Sunana ...*

soo-naa-naa ...

I'm pleased to meet you.

*Na ji murnar saduwa da kai/ke. m/f*

na ji mur-nar saa-du-waa da kai/kye

|                |                                  |                           |
|----------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| This is my ... | <i>Wannan ... nawa/tawa. m/f</i> | wan-nan ... naa-wa/taa-wa |
| boyfriend      | <i>saurayi</i>                   | sow-ra-yee                |
| daughter       | <i>y'a</i>                       | y'aa                      |
| father         | <i>mahaifi</i>                   | ma-hai-fee                |
| friend         | <i>aboki m</i>                   | a-baw-kee                 |
| girlfriend     | <i>budurwa</i>                   | bu-dur-waa                |
| husband        | <i>miji</i>                      | mi-jee                    |
| mother         | <i>mahaifiya</i>                 | ma-hai-fi-yaa             |
| son            | <i>d'a</i>                       | d'aa                      |
| wife           | <i>mata</i>                      | maa-taa                   |

|                  |                                     |                          |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Here's my ...    | <i>Ga ... nawa/tawa. m/f</i>        | gaa ... naa-wa/taa-wa    |
| What's your ...? | <i>Mene ne ...</i>                  | mey-ney ney ...          |
| address          | <i>adireshi(-nka/-nki m/f) m</i>    | a-di-rey-shi(-nka/-nki)  |
| email address    | <i>adireshi(-nka/-nki m/f)</i>      | a-di-rey-shi(-nka/-nki)  |
|                  | <i>na i-mel m</i>                   | na i-mel                 |
| phone number     | <i>lambar waya(-rka/-rki m/f) m</i> | lam-bar wa-ya(-rka/-rki) |

|                     |                                   |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Where are you from? | <i>Daga ina ka/kika fito? m/f</i> | da-ga i-naa ka/ki-ka fi-taw |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|

|              |                         |                      |
|--------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| I'm from ... | <i>Na fito daga ...</i> | naa fi-taw da-ga ... |
| Australia    | <i>Ostareliya</i>       | os-ta-rey-li-ya      |
| Canada       | <i>Kyanada</i>          | kya-na-da            |
| New Zealand  | <i>New Zeland</i>       | nyu zi-lan           |
| the UK       | <i>Ingila</i>           | in-gi-la             |
| the USA      | <i>Amirka</i>           | a-mir-ka             |

|                              |                                             |                                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| I'm married.                 | <i>Ina da miji/mata. m/f</i>                | i-naa da mi-jee/maa-taa             |
| I'm not married.             | <i>Ba ni da miji/mata. m/f</i>              | baa ni da mi-jee/maa-taa            |
| Can I take a photo (of you)? | <i>Zan iya d'aukar hoto(-nka/-nki)? m/f</i> | zan i-ya d'ow-kar haw-to(-nka/-nki) |

## eating out

|                          |                                                 |                                          |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Can you recommend a ...? | <i>Za ka/ki iya gaya mini ... mai kyau? m/f</i> | zaa ka/ki i-ya ga-yaa mi-ni ... mai kyow |
| bar                      | <i>wurin shan giya</i>                          | wu-rin shan gi-yaa                       |
| place to eat             | <i>wurin cin abinci</i>                         | wu-rin chin a-bin-chi                    |
| dish                     | <i>abinci</i>                                   | a-bin-chi                                |

|                                       |                                                        |                                                       |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like ..., please.                 | <i>Ina son ..., don Allah.</i>                         | i-naa son ... don al-laa                              |
| the bill                              | <i>bil</i>                                             | bil                                                   |
| the menu                              | <i>takardar bayyanin abinci</i>                        | ta-kar-dar bay-ya-nin a-bin-chi                       |
| a table for (two)                     | <i>tebur ga mutane (biyu)</i>                          | tey-bur ga mu-taa-ney (bi-yu)                         |
| that dish                             | <i>wannan abinci</i>                                   | wan-nan a-bin-chi                                     |
| Do you have vegetarian food?          | <i>Kana/Kina da abinci maras nama? m/f</i>             | ka-naa/ki-naa da a-bin-chi maa-ras naa-maa            |
| Could you prepare a meal without ...? | <i>Kana/Kina iya yin abinci ba tare da ... ba? m/f</i> | ka-naa/ki-naa i-ya yin a-bin-chi baa taa-re da ... ba |
| eggs                                  | <i>k'wai</i>                                           | k'wai                                                 |
| meat stock                            | <i>nama</i>                                            | naa-maa                                               |
| (cup of) coffee ...                   | <i>kofi (guda d'aya) ...</i>                           | kaw-fee (gu-daa d'a-ya) ...                           |
| (cup of) tea ...                      | <i>shayi (guda d'aya) ...</i>                          | shaa-yi (gu-daa d'a-ya) ...                           |
| with milk                             | <i>da madara</i>                                       | da ma-da-raa                                          |
| without sugar                         | <i>ba sukari</i>                                       | baa su-ka-ree                                         |
| (boiled) water                        | <i>ruwa(-n da aka tafasa)</i>                          | ru-wa(-n da a-ka ta-fa-saa)                           |

## emergencies

|                              |                                                                                          |                                                                                      |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Help!                        | <i>Taimake ni!</i>                                                                       | tai-ma-kyey ni                                                                       |
| Call ...!                    | <i>Kirawo ...!</i>                                                                       | ki-raa-waw ...                                                                       |
| an ambulance                 | <i>motar d'aukar maras lafiya</i>                                                        | moo-tar d'ow-kar maa-ras laa-fi-yaa                                                  |
| a doctor                     | <i>likita</i>                                                                            | li-ki-taa                                                                            |
| the police                   | <i>'yan sanda</i>                                                                        | 'yan san-daa                                                                         |
| Could you help me, please?   | <i>Kana iya ka taimake ni, don Alla. m</i><br><i>Kina iya ki taimake ni, don Alla. f</i> | ka-naa i-ya ka tai-ma-kyey ni don al-laa<br>ki-naa i-ya ki tai-ma-kyey ni don al-laa |
| I'm lost.                    | <i>Na manta hanya.</i>                                                                   | naa man-ta han-yaa                                                                   |
| Where are the toilets?       | <i>Ina ban d'aki yake?</i>                                                               | i-naa ban d'aa-kee yak-yey                                                           |
| I want to report an offence. | <i>Ina son in sanar da ku wani laifi.</i>                                                | i-na son in sa-nar da koo wa-ni lai-fee                                              |

I have insurance.

*Ina da inshora.*

i-naa da in-shaw-raa

I want to contact my consulate/embassy.

*Ina son in buga waya zuwa  
ofishin jakadanci kasarmu.*

i-naa son in bu-ga wa-yaa zu-waa  
aw-fi-shin ja-kaa-dan-chee ka-sar-mu

I've been ...

assaulted  
raped  
robbed

*An yi mini ...*

*farmaki  
fyad'e  
sata*

an yi mi-ni ...

far-ma-kee  
fyaa-d'ey  
saa-taa

My ... was/were stolen.

bags  
credit card  
jewellery  
money  
passport  
travellers cheques  
wallet

*An sace mini ...*

*kaya  
katin adashin banki  
kayan ado  
kud'i  
fasfo  
cek  
alabe*

an saa-chey mi-ni ...

kaa-yaa  
kaa-tin a-daa-shin ban-kee  
kaa-yan a-daw  
ku-d'ee  
fas-faw  
chek  
a-la-bey

## medical needs

Where's the  
nearest ...?

dentist  
doctor  
hospital  
pharmacist

*Ina ne/ce ...  
mafi kusa? m/f*

*likitan hak'ori m  
likita m  
asibiti f  
kantin magani m*

i-naa ney/chey ...  
ma-fee ku-sa

li-ki-tan ha-k'aw-ree  
li-ki-ta  
a-si-bi-ti  
kan-tin maa-ga-nee

I need a doctor (who speaks English).

*Ina bukaratar likita  
(wanda yake jin Turanci).*

i-naa bu-kaa-tar li-ki-ta  
(wan-da yak-yey jin too-ran-chee)

Could I see a female doctor?

*Zan iya ganin likita mace?*

zan i-ya ga-nin li-ki-ta ma-che

It hurts here.

*Na ji ciwo a nan.*

naa ji chee-waw a nan

I'm allergic to (penicillin).

*An hana ni yin amfani  
da (penisilin).*

an ha-naa ni yin am-faa-nee  
da (pe-ni-si-lin)

## english–hausa dictionary

Hausa nouns in this dictionary have their gender marked with ♂ (masculine) or ♀ (feminine). If it's a plural noun, you'll also see pl. Note that some adjectives have only one form for both genders. Words are also marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), sg (singular) and pl (plural) where necessary.

### A

accommodation masauki ♂ ma-sow-kee  
adaptor macanjin wuta ♂ ma-chan-jin wu-taa  
after bayan baa-yan  
airport filin jirgin sama ♂ fee-lin jir-gin sa-ma  
alcohol barasa ♀ baa-raa-saa  
all duk duk  
and da da  
ankle idon k'afa ♂ i-don k'a-fa  
arm hannu ♂ han-noo  
asthma ciwon asma ♂ chi-won as-maa

### B

baby jariri ♂ jaa-ree-ree  
back (body) baya ♂ baa-yaa  
backpack jakar baya ♀ ja-kar baa-yaa  
bad maras kyau ma-ras kyow  
bank banki ♂ ban-kee  
bathroom ban d'aki ♂ ban d'aa-kee  
battery batir ♂ baa-tir  
beautiful mai kyau mai kyow  
bed gado ♂ ga-daw  
beer giya ♀ gi-yaa  
bees zuma ♂ zu-maa  
before kafin kaa-fin  
bicycle keke ♂ kyey-kyey  
big babba/manyar ♂/♀ bab-ba/man-yaa  
blanket bargo ♂ bar-gaw  
blood group irin jini ♂ i-rin ji-nee  
bottle kwalaba ♀ kwa-la-baa  
bottle opener mabud'in kwalaba ♂  
ma-boo-d'in kwa-la-baa  
boy yaro ♂ yaa-raw  
brakes (car) birkir ♂ bir-kee  
breakfast karin kumallo ♂ ka-rin ku-mal-law  
bronchitis mashak'o ♂ maa-shaa-k'aw

### C

cancel soke saw-key  
can opener mabud'in gwangwani ♂  
ma-boo-d'in gwan-gwa-nee  
cash kud'i ♂ ku-d'ee  
cell phone salula ♀ sa-loo-laa  
centre tsakiya ♀ ts'a-ki-yaa  
cheap mai araha mai a-ra-haa  
check (bill) lissafi ♂ lis-saa-fee  
chest k'irji ♂ k'ir-jee  
child yaro ♂ yaa-raw  
cigarette taba ♀ taa-baa  
city birni ♂ bir-nee  
clean a mai tsabta mai ts'ab-taa  
closed a rufe a ru-fe  
cold a mai sanyi mai san-yee  
condom roba ♀ raw-baa  
constipation kumburin ciki ♂ kum-bu-rin chi-kee  
cough tari ♂ taa-ree  
currency exchange canjin kud'i ♂ chan-jin ku-d'ee  
customs (immigration) kwastan ♂ kwas-tan

### D

dangerous mai had'ari mai ha-d'a-ree  
date (time) kwanan wata ♂ kwaa-nan wa-taa  
day (24 hours) kwana ♂ kwaa-naa  
daytime rana ♀ raa-naa  
diaper banten jirjiri ♂ ban-ten jin-ji-ree  
diarrhoea gudawa ♀ gu-daa-waa  
dinner abincin dare ♂ a-bin-chin da-re  
dirty mai daud'a mai dow-d'aa  
disabled nak'asasshe na-k'a-sash-shey  
double bed gado ga mutane biyu ♂  
ga-daw ga mu-taa-ney bi-yu  
drink abin sha ♂ a-bin sha  
drivers licence lasin tuk'i ♂ laa-sin too-k'ee  
drug (illicit) mugun k'waya ♀ moo-gun k'waa-yaa

## E

ear *kunne* ㊦ kun-ney  
 east *gabas* ㊦ ga-bas  
 economy class *sikinkila* ㊦ si-kin-ki-la  
 elevator *lifta* ㊦ lif-taa  
 email *wasik'ar i-mel* ㊦ wa-see-k'ar ee-mel  
 English (language) *Turanci* ㊦ too-ran-chee  
 exchange rate *k'arfin kud'i* ㊦ k'ar-fin ku-d'ee  
 exit *mafita* ㊦ ma-fi-taa  
 expensive *mai tsada* ㊦ mai ts'aa-daa  
 eye *ido* ㊦ i-daw

## F

fast *mai sauri* ㊦ mai sow-ree  
 fever *zazzab'i* ㊦ zaz-za-b'ee  
 finger *yatsa* ㊦ yaa-ts'aa  
 first class *faskila* ㊦ fas-ki-la  
 fish *kifi* ㊦ kee-fee  
 food *abinci* ㊦ a-bin-chi  
 foot *k'afa* ㊦ k'a-faa  
 fork *cokali mai yatsu* ㊦ chaw-ka-lee mai yaa-ts'oo  
 free (of charge) *a kyauta* ㊦ a kyow-taa  
 fruit 'ya'yan itace ㊦ y'a-y'an i-taa-chey  
 funny *mai ban dariya* ㊦ mai ban daa-ri-yaa

## G

game park *wurin shak'atawa* ㊦ wu-rin shaa-k'a-ta-waa  
 gift *kyauta* ㊦ kyow-taa  
 girl *yarinya* ㊦ yaa-rin-yaa  
 glass *kofi* ㊦ kaw-fee  
 glasses *tabarau* ㊦ ta-baa-row  
 good *mai kyau* ㊦ mai kyow  
 guide ㊦ *ja-gora* ㊦ jaa-gaw-ra

## H

hand *hannu* ㊦ han-noo  
 happy *mai farin ciki* ㊦ mai fa-rin chi-kee  
 he *shi shee*  
 head *kai* ㊦ kai  
 headache *ciwon kai* ㊦ chee-won kai  
 heart *zuciya* ㊦ zoo-chi-yaa  
 heart condition *halin zuciya* ㊦ haa-lin zoo-chi-yaa  
 heat *zafi* ㊦ zaa-fee  
 here *nan* ㊦ nan

high *dogo/doguwa* ㊦/㊦ daw-gaw/daw-gu-waa  
 highway *babbar hanya* ㊦ bab-bar han-yaa  
 homosexual ㊦ *d'an daudu* ㊦ d'an dow-du  
 hot *mai zafi* ㊦ mai zaa-fee  
 hungry *mai jin yunwa* ㊦ mai jin yun-waa

## I

I *ni nee*  
 identification (card) *katin shaida* ㊦ kaa-tin shai-daa  
 ill *maras lafiya* ㊦ ma-ras laa-fi-yaa  
 important *muhimmi/muhimmiya* ㊦/㊦ mu-him-mee/mu-him-mi-yaa  
 interpreter *mai fassara* ㊦ mai fas-sa-raa

## K

key *makulli* ㊦ ma-kul-lee  
 kilogram *kilo* ㊦ ki-law  
 kitchen (modern) *किन* ㊦ ki-chin  
 kitchen (traditional) *madafa* ㊦ ma-da-faa  
 knife *wuk'a* ㊦ wu-k'aa

## L

laundry (place) *mawanka* ㊦ ma-wan-kaa  
 lawyer *lauya* ㊦ low-yaa  
 leg *k'afa* ㊦ k'a-faa  
 lesbian ㊦ *y'ar mad'igo* ㊦ y'ar maa-d'i-gaw  
 less (do less) ㊦ *rage* ㊦ rag-yey  
 letter (mail) *wasik'a* ㊦ wa-see-k'aa  
 like ㊦ *so so*  
 love ㊦ *so so*  
 lunch *abincin rana* ㊦ a-bin-chin raa-naa

## M

man *mutum* ㊦ mu-tum  
 matches *ashana* ㊦ a-shaa-naa  
 meat *nama* ㊦ naa-maa  
 medicine *magani* ㊦ maa-ga-nee  
 message *sak'o* ㊦ saa-k'aw  
 mobile phone *salula* ㊦ sa-loo-laa  
 month *wata* ㊦ waa-taa  
 morning *safiya* ㊦ saa-fi-yaa  
 (in the) morning *safe* ㊦ saa-fee  
 motorcycle *babur* ㊦ baa-bur  
 motorcycle taxi *acaba* ㊦ a-cha-baa

mouth *baki* ㊦ baa-kee  
 movie *film* ㊦ fim  
 museum *gidan kayan tarihi* ㊦ gi-dan kaa-yan taa-ree-hee  
 music *kad'e-kad'e* ㊦ ka-d'ey-k'a-dey

## N

name *suna* ㊦ soo-naa  
 napkin *takardar goge hannu* ㊦ ta-kar-dar gaw-ge han-noo  
 nappy *banten jinjiri* ㊦ ban-ten jin-ji-ree  
 national park *gandun daji* ㊦ gan-dun daa-jee  
 nausea *tashin zuciya* ㊦ taa-shin zoo-chi-yaa  
 neck *wuya* ㊦ wu-yaa  
 new *sabo/sabuwa* ㊦/㊦ saa-baw/saa-bu-waa  
 news *labari* ㊦ laa-baa-ree  
 newspaper *jarida* ㊦ ja-ree-daa  
 night *dare* ㊦ da-rey  
 nightclub *kulob* ㊦ ku-lob  
 noisy *mai k'ara* ㊦ mai k'aa-raa  
 nonsmoking *ga marasa shan taba* ㊦ ga ma-ra-saa shan taa-baa  
 north *arewa* ㊦ a-rey-wa  
 nose *hanci* ㊦ han-chee  
 now *yanzu* ㊦ yan-zu  
 number *lamba* ㊦ lam-baa  
 nuts *gyad'a* ㊦ gya-d'aa

## O

oil (engine) *man inji* ㊦ man in-jee  
 OK *shi ke nan* ㊦ shee kyey nan  
 old *tsoho/tsohuwa* ㊦/㊦ ts'aw-haw/ts'aw-hu-waa  
 open ㊦ *a bude* ㊦ a boo-de  
 outside *waje* ㊦ wa-je

## P

package *k'unshi* ㊦ k'un-shee  
 pain *ciwo* ㊦ chee-waw  
 palace *fad'a* ㊦ faa-d'a  
 paper *takarda* ㊦ ta-kar-daa  
 park (car) ㊦ *ajije* ㊦ a-ji-ye  
 passport *fasfo* ㊦ fas-fo  
 pay ㊦ *biya* ㊦ bi-yaa  
 pen *biro* ㊦ bee-raw  
 petrol *man fetur* ㊦ man fey-tur

pharmacy *kantin magani* ㊦ kan-tin maa-ga-nee  
 plate *faranti* ㊦ fa-ran-tee  
 postcard *katin gaisuwa* ㊦ kaa-tin gai-su-waa  
 post office *gidan waya* ㊦ gi-dan wa-yaa  
 pregnant *mai juna biyu* ㊦ mai joo-naa bi-yu

## Q

quiet *mai shiru* ㊦ mai shi-roo

## R

rain *ruwan sama* ㊦ ru-wan sa-ma  
 razor (modern) *reza* ㊦ rey-zaa  
 razor (traditional) *aska* ㊦ as-kaa  
 registered mail *wasik'a ta rajista* ㊦ wa-see-k'aa ta ra-jis-taa  
 rent ㊦ *yi hayar* ㊦ yi ha-yar  
 repair ㊦ *gyara* ㊦ gyaa-raa  
 reservation (room) *kama d'aki* ㊦ kaa-ma d'aa-kee  
 restaurant *gidan cin abinci* ㊦ gi-dan chin a-bin-chi  
 return ㊦ *koma* ㊦ kaw-maa  
 road *hanya* ㊦ han-yaa  
 room *d'aki* ㊦ d'aa-kee

## S

sad *mai bak'in ciki* ㊦ mai ba-k'in chi-kee  
 safe (not dangerous) ㊦ *mai lafiya* ㊦ mai laa-fi-yaa  
 safe (reliable) ㊦ *mai aminci* ㊦ mai a-min-chee  
 seafood *abinci daga teku* ㊦ a-bin-chi da-ga tey-ku  
 seat *abin zama* ㊦ a-bin za-maa  
 send *aika* ㊦ ai-kaa da  
 sex (gender) *jinsi* ㊦ jin-see  
 sex (intercourse) *jima'i* ㊦ ji-maa'ee  
 shampoo *shamfu* ㊦ sham-fu  
 shaving cream *sabulu na aski* ㊦ saa-bu-lu na as-kee  
 she *ita* ㊦ i-ta  
 sheet (bed) *zanen gado* ㊦ za-nen ga-daw  
 shirt (modern) *taguwa* ㊦ ta-gu-waa  
 shirt (long traditional) *riga* ㊦ ree-gaa  
 shoes *takalma* ㊦ taa-kal-maa  
 shop *kanti* ㊦ kan-tee  
 shower *shawa* ㊦ shaa-waa  
 skin *fata* ㊦ faa-taa  
 skirt (modern) *siket* ㊦ si-ket  
 skirt (traditional) *zane* ㊦ za-ney  
 sleep ㊦ *yi barci* ㊦ yi bar-chee

© Lonely Planet Publications

small *k'arami/k'arama* ㄎㄜˊㄞㄚˊㄇㄞˊ / ㄎㄜˊㄞㄚˊㄇㄞˊ k'a-ra-mee/k'a-ra-maa  
 soap *sabulu* ㄙㄞㄅㄨˊㄌㄨˊ saa-bu-loo  
 some *kad'an* ka-d'an  
 soon *an jima* an ji-maa  
 sore *throat miki* ㄇㄞˊ ㄎㄜˊ mee-kee  
 south *kudu* ㄎㄨˊㄉㄨˊ ku-du  
 speak *yi magana* yi ma-ga-naa  
 spoon *cokali* ㄘㄜˊㄎㄞˊ chaw-ka-lee  
 stamp *kan sarki* ㄎㄢˊ ㄙㄞˊ kan sar-kee  
 station (train) *tasha(-r jirgin k'asa)* ㄊㄞˊ ㄕㄞˊ ta-sha(-r jir-gin k'a-saa)  
 stomach *ciki* ㄘㄞˊ chi-kee  
 stop ㄙㄞˊ tsaya ts'a-yaa  
 stop (bus) *tasha(-r mota)* ㄊㄞˊ ta-sha(-r mo-taa)  
 street (in general) *hanya* ㄏㄢˊ han-yaa  
 street (paved only) *titi* ㄊㄞˊ tee-tee  
 student *d'alibi/d'aliba* ㄉㄞˊ ㄌㄞˊ d'aa-li-bee/d'aa-li-baa  
 swim ㄙㄞˊ yi iyo yi i-yaw

## T

teeth *hak'ora* ㄏㄞˊ ha-k'aw-raa  
 telephone *waya* ㄨㄞˊ wa-yaa  
 television *talabijin* ㄊㄞˊ ta-la-bi-jin  
 temperature (weather) *yanayi* ㄢㄞˊ ya-na-yee  
 tent *tanti* ㄊㄞˊ tan-tee  
 that (one) *wancan/waccan* ㄨㄢˊ wan-chan/wach-chan  
 they *su* soo  
 thirsty *mai jin k'ishirwa* mai jin k'i-shir-waa  
 this (one) *wannan* ㄨㄢˊ wan-nan  
 throat *mak'ogwaro* ㄇㄞˊ ma-k'aw-gwa-law  
 ticket *tikiti* ㄊㄞˊ ti-ki-ti  
 time *lokaci* ㄌㄞˊ law-ka-chee  
 tired *mai gajiya* mai ga-ji-yaa  
 tissues *takardun share majina* ㄊㄞˊ ta-kar-dun shaa-re  
 maa-ji-naa  
 today *yau* yow  
 toilet *ban d'aki* ㄅㄢˊ ban d'aa-kee  
 tonight *yau da dare* yow da da-re  
 toothache *ciwon hak'ora* ㄘㄞˊ chi-won ha-k'aw-raa  
 toothbrush *buroshin goge baki* ㄅㄨˊ bu-raw-shin gaw-gye baa-kee  
 toothpaste *man goge hak'ora* ㄇㄢˊ man gaw-ge ha-k'aw-raa

torch (flashlight) *tocilan* ㄊㄞˊ taw-chi-lan  
 towel *tawul* ㄊㄞˊ taa-wul  
 translate *fassara* fas-sa-raa  
 travellers cheque *cek* ㄘㄜˊ chek  
 trousers *wando* ㄨㄢˊ wan-daw  
 tyre *taya* ㄊㄞˊ taa-yaa

## U

underwear (underpants) *kamfai* ㄎㄞˊ kam-fai  
 urgent *na/ta gaggawa* ㄢㄞˊ na/ta gag-gaa-waa

## V

vacant *wanda ba kome a wurin*  
 wan-da baa kaw-mey a wu-rin  
 vegetarian ㄞˊ ga wanda ba ya cin nama  
 ga wan-da da baa yaa chin naa-maa

## W

waiter *sabis* ㄨㄞˊ saa-bis  
 walk ㄨㄞˊ yi yawo yi yaa-waw  
 wallet *alabe* ㄞˊ a-la-bey  
 warm ㄞˊ mai d'umi mai d'u-mee  
 wash (something) *wanke* wan-kyey  
 watch *kallo* ㄞˊ kal-law  
 water *ruwa* ㄞˊ ru-waa  
 we *mu* moo  
 west *yamma* ㄞˊ yam-ma  
 wheelchair *keken gurgu* ㄞˊ key-ken gur-goo  
 when *yausha* yow-shey  
 where *ina* i-naa  
 who *wane ne* waa-ney ney  
 why *saboda me* sa-baw-da mey  
 window *taga* ㄞˊ taa-gaa  
 wine *giya* ㄞˊ gi-yaa  
 wine (palm) *bammi* ㄞˊ bam-mee  
 with *tare da* taa-re da  
 without *ba tare da ... ba* baa taa-re da ... ba  
 woman *mace* ㄞˊ ma-che  
 write *rubuta* ru-boo-taa

## Y

you ㄞˊ kai/ke ㄞˊ kai/kyey  
 you ㄞˊ ku koo

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# Malagasy



# pronunciation

| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |               | Consonants |               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------|---------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | English sound | Symbol     | English sound |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | father        | b          | bed           |
| ai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | aisle         | d          | dog           |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | bet           | dz         | adze          |
| i                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | hit           | f          | fun           |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | pot           | g          | go            |
| ow                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | now           | h          | hat           |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | put           | k          | kit           |
| <p>In this chapter, the Malagasy pronunciation is given in pink after each phrase.</p> <p>The pronunciation of Malagasy words is not always obvious from their written form. Unstressed syllables can be elided (dropped) and words may be pronounced in different ways depending on where they fall in a sentence. If you follow the pink pronunciation guides you can't go wrong, however.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot, and the syllable stressed in each word is italicised.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p><i>Misaotra.</i>   <i>mi-sotr</i></p> |               | l          | lot           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | m          | man           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | n          | not           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | ng         | ring          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | p          | pet           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | r          | run           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | s          | sun           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | t          | top           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | v          | very          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | w          | win           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | y          | yes           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               | z          | zero          |

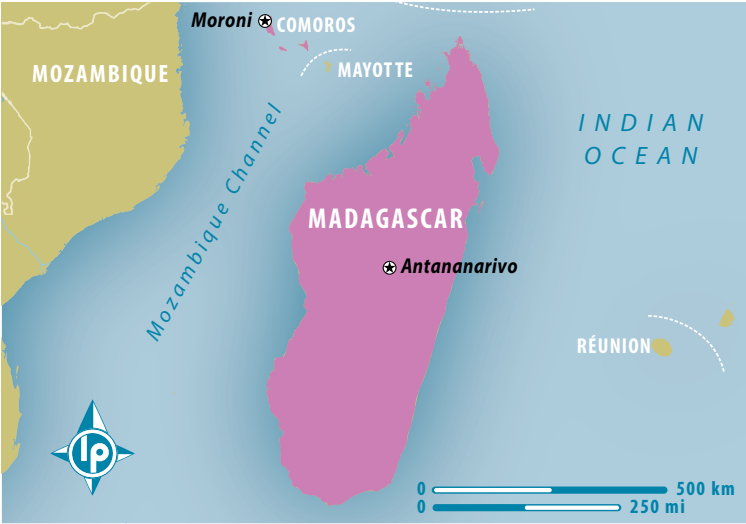
# MALAGASY

malagasy

## introduction

As the official language of Madagascar, Malagasy (*malagasy* maa-laa-gaas) has around 18 million speakers. Malagasy belongs to the Malayo-Polynesian branch of the Austronesian language family and is unrelated to its neighbouring African languages. Its closest relative is the little-known Ma'anyan, a language from southern Borneo, with which it shares over 90 per cent of its vocabulary. This close relationship exists because Madagascar was first settled by Indonesians from southern Borneo. Over the centuries, the language has also been influenced by English and French – first in the 19th century by British and French missionaries, and later as a result of colonisation by the French in the first half of the 20th century. With proverbs like 'If a tree is good to be used for making a boat, it is because it grew on good soil' (*Ny hazo no vanon-ko lakana, dia ny tany naniriany no tsara ni haa-zu nu va-nun-ku laa-kaa-naa de ni taa-ni naa-ni-ri-ni nu tsaar*), Madagascar's language is just as colourful and fascinating as its wildlife, landscapes and people.

malagasy (native language)



## language difficulties

|                       |                                 |                                      |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Do you speak English? | <i>Miteny anglisy ve ianao?</i> | <i>mi-ten aan-gi-lis ve i-aa-now</i> |
| Do you understand?    | <i>Azonao ve?</i>               | <i>aa-zu-now ve</i>                  |
| I (don't) understand. | <i>(Tsy) Azoko.</i>             | <i>(tsi) aa-zuk</i>                  |
| Could you please ...? | <i>Mba afaka ... azafady?</i>   | <i>mbaa aa-faak ... aa-zaa-faad</i>  |
| repeat that           | <i>averinao ve izany</i>        | <i>aa-ve-ri-now ve i-zaan</i>        |
| speak more            | <i>miteny miadana</i>           | <i>mi-ten mi-aa-daan</i>             |
| slowly                | <i>kokoa ve ianao</i>           | <i>ku-ku ve i-aa-now</i>             |
| write it down         | <i>soratanao ve izany</i>       | <i>su-raa-taa-now ve i-zaan</i>      |



## time, dates & numbers

|                     |                                            |                                                   |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| What time is it?    | <i>Amin'ny firy izao?</i>                  | <i>aa-min-ni fi ri-zow</i>                        |
| It's one o'clock.   | <i>Amin'ny iray ora izao.</i>              | <i>aa-min-ni rai ur i-zow</i>                     |
| It's (two) o'clock. | <i>Amin'ny (roa) izao.</i>                 | <i>aa-min-ni (ru) i-zow</i>                       |
| Quarter past (one). | <i>(Iray) sy fahefany.</i>                 | <i>(rai) si faa-he-faan</i>                       |
| Half past (one).    | <i>(Iray) sy sasany.</i>                   | <i>(rai) si saa-saan</i>                          |
| Quarter to (eight). | <i>(Valo) latsaka fahefany.</i>            | <i>(vaal) laat-saa-kaa faa-he-faan</i>            |
| At what time ...?   | <i>Amin'ny firy ...?</i>                   | <i>aa-min-ni fir ...</i>                          |
| At ...              | <i>Amin'ny ...</i>                         | <i>aa-min-ni ...</i>                              |
| It's (15 December). | <i>(Dimy ambiniolo Desambra) androany.</i> | <i>(dim aam-bin-ful de-saam-braa) aan-dru-aan</i> |
| yesterday           | <i>omaly</i>                               | <i>u-maal</i>                                     |
| today               | <i>androany</i>                            | <i>aan-dru-aan</i>                                |
| tomorrow            | <i>rahampitso</i>                          | <i>raa-haam-pits</i>                              |
| Monday              | <i>Alatsinainy</i>                         | <i>aa-laot-si-nain</i>                            |
| Tuesday             | <i>Talata</i>                              | <i>taa-laot</i>                                   |
| Wednesday           | <i>Alarobia</i>                            | <i>aa-laa-ru-bi</i>                               |
| Thursday            | <i>Alakamisy</i>                           | <i>aa-laa-kaa-mis</i>                             |
| Friday              | <i>Zomà</i>                                | <i>zu-maa</i>                                     |
| Saturday            | <i>Asabotsy</i>                            | <i>aa-saa-buts</i>                                |
| Sunday              | <i>Alahady</i>                             | <i>aa-laa-haad</i>                                |

## numbers

|    |                   |                     |      |                       |                          |
|----|-------------------|---------------------|------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 0  | <i>aotra</i>      | <i>ow-traa</i>      | 16   | <i>enina</i>          | <i>e-ni-</i>             |
| 1  | <i>isa/iray</i>   | <i>i-saa/i-rai</i>  |      | <i>ambiniolo</i>      | <i>naam-bin-ful</i>      |
| 2  | <i>roa</i>        | <i>ru</i>           | 17   | <i>fito</i>           | <i>fi-tu-</i>            |
| 3  | <i>telo</i>       | <i>tel</i>          |      | <i>ambiniolo</i>      | <i>aam-bin-ful</i>       |
| 4  | <i>efatra</i>     | <i>e-faatr</i>      | 18   | <i>valo</i>           | <i>vaa-lu-</i>           |
| 5  | <i>dimy</i>       | <i>dim</i>          |      | <i>ambiniolo</i>      | <i>aam-bin-ful</i>       |
| 6  | <i>enina</i>      | <i>e-nin</i>        | 19   | <i>sivy ambiniolo</i> | <i>si-vi-aam-bin-ful</i> |
| 7  | <i>fito</i>       | <i>fit</i>          | 20   | <i>roapolo</i>        | <i>ru-aa-pul</i>         |
| 8  | <i>valo</i>       | <i>vaal</i>         | 21   | <i>iraika</i>         | <i>i-rai-</i>            |
| 9  | <i>sivy</i>       | <i>siv</i>          |      | <i>ambiroampolo</i>   | <i>kaam-bi-ro-pu</i>     |
| 10 | <i>folo</i>       | <i>ful</i>          | 22   | <i>roa</i>            | <i>ru</i>                |
| 11 | <i>iraika</i>     | <i>i-rai-</i>       |      | <i>ambiroampolo</i>   | <i>aam-bi-ro-pul</i>     |
|    | <i>ambiniolo</i>  | <i>kaam-bin-ful</i> | 30   | <i>telopolo</i>       | <i>te-lu-pul</i>         |
| 12 | <i>roa</i>        | <i>ru</i>           | 40   | <i>efapolo</i>        | <i>e-faa-pul</i>         |
|    | <i>ambiniolo</i>  | <i>aam-bin-ful</i>  | 50   | <i>dimampolo</i>      | <i>di-maam-pul</i>       |
| 13 | <i>telo</i>       | <i>tel</i>          | 60   | <i>enimpolo</i>       | <i>e-ni-pul</i>          |
|    | <i>ambiniolo</i>  | <i>aam-bin-ful</i>  | 70   | <i>fitopolo</i>       | <i>fi-tu-pul</i>         |
| 14 | <i>efatra</i>     | <i>e-faa-traam-</i> | 80   | <i>valopolo</i>       | <i>vaa-lu-pul</i>        |
|    | <i>ambiniolo</i>  | <i>bin-ful</i>      | 90   | <i>sivifolo</i>       | <i>si-vi-ful</i>         |
| 15 | <i>dmy</i>        | <i>dim</i>          | 100  | <i>zato</i>           | <i>zaat</i>              |
|    | <i>iambiniolo</i> | <i>aam-bin-ful</i>  | 1000 | <i>arivo</i>          | <i>aa-riv</i>            |

## border crossing

|                                              |                                                 |                            |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| I'm here ...                                 | ... <i>aho no eto.</i>                          | ... <i>ow nu et</i>        |
| in transit                                   | <i>Mandalo fotsiny</i>                          | <i>maan-daa-lu fut-sin</i> |
| on business                                  | <i>Manao raharaha</i>                           | <i>maa-now raa-haa-raa</i> |
| on holiday                                   | <i>Miala sasatra</i>                            | <i>mi-aa-laa saa-saatr</i> |
| I'm here for ...                             | ... <i>aho no eto.</i>                          | ... <i>ow nu et</i>        |
| (10) days                                    | <i>(Folo) andro</i>                             | <i>(ful) aandr</i>         |
| (three) weeks                                | <i>(Telo) herinandro</i>                        | <i>(tel) he-ri-naandr</i>  |
| (two) months                                 | <i>(Roa) volana</i>                             | <i>(ru) vu-laan</i>        |
| I'm going to (Mahajanga).                    |                                                 |                            |
| <i>Ho any (Mahajanga) aho.</i>               | <i>ho aan (maa-haa-dzaang) ow</i>               |                            |
| I'm staying at (the Zahamotel).              |                                                 |                            |
| <i>Mipetraka ao amin'ny (Zahamotel) aho.</i> | <i>mi-pe-traa-kow aa-min-ni (zaa-mo-tel) ow</i> |                            |

## tickets

|                                       |                                                  |                                                           |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| A ... ticket<br>(to Toliary), please. | Tapakila ... iray<br>(mankany Toliary), azafady. | taa-paa-kil ... i-rai<br>(maa-kaan tu-li-aar) aa-zaa-faad |
| one-way                               | mandroso                                         | maan-drus                                                 |
| return                                | miverina                                         | mi-ve-rin                                                 |

|                                       |                                           |                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like to ... my<br>ticket, please. | Mba te ... ny tapakilako<br>aho, azafady. | mbaa te ... ni taa-paa-ki-laa-ku<br>ow aa-zaa-faad |
| cancel                                | hanafoana                                 | haa-naa-fo-naa                                     |
| change                                | hanolo                                    | haa-nul                                            |
| collect                               | haka                                      | haa-kaa                                            |

|                                 |                                                |                                                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like a ...<br>seat, please. | Toerana ho an'ny ...<br>no mba tiako, azafady. | tu-e-raa-naa u aan-ni ...<br>nu mbaa ti-ku aa-zaa-faad |
| nonsmoking                      | tsy mifoka sigara                              | tsi mi-fuk si-gaar                                     |
| smoking                         | mifoka                                         | mi-fuk                                                 |

### Is there a toilet/air conditioning?

Misy efitra fidiovan/kilimatizera ve? mi-si e-fi-traa fi-di-u-vaan/kli-maa-ti-zer ve

### How long does the trip take?

Hafiriana ny dia? haa-fi-ri-naa ni di

### Is it a direct route?

Tsy mijanojanona ve? tsi mi-dzaa-nu-dzaa-nu-naa ve

## transport

### Where does the (Air Madagascar) flight arrive/depart?

Aiza ny sidina (Air Madagascar) ai-zaa ni si-di-naa (air maa-daa-gaa-si-kaar)  
no tonga/miainga? nu tun-gaa/mi-ain-gaa

### How long will it be delayed?

Hafiriana ny fahatarany? haa-fi-ri-naa ni faa-haa-taa-raan

|                                    |                                       |                                         |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Is this the ...<br>to (Toamasina)? | Ity ve ny ... mankany<br>(Toamasina)? | i-ti ve ni ... maa-kaan<br>(to-maa-sin) |
| boat                               | sambo                                 | saamb                                   |
| bus                                | aotobisy                              | o-to-bis                                |
| plane                              | roaplanina                            | ro-plaan                                |
| train                              | laminina                              | laa-maa-sin                             |

### How much is it to ...?

Ohatrinona ny ...? o-trin-naa ni ...

### Please take me to (this address).

Mba ento any amin' mbaa en-tu aa-ni aa-min  
(ityadiresy ity) aho azafady. (tiaa-di-res ti) ow aa-zaa-faad

### I'd like to hire a car/4WD (with air conditioning).

Mba te hanarama fiara/4x4 mbaa te haa-naa-raa-maa fi-aar/kaat-kaat-raa  
(misy kilimatizera) aho azafady. (mis kli-maa-ti-zer) ow aa-zaa-faad

### How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

Ohatrinona ny (telo) o-trin-naa ni (te-lu)  
andro/herinandro? aan-dru/he-ri-naan-dru



## directions

### Where's the (nearest) ...?

internet café  
market

Aiza ny ...  
(akaiky indrindra)?

sibera  
tsena

ai-zaa ni ...  
(aa-kaik in-drin-draa)

si-ber  
tsen

### Is this the road to (Antsirabe)?

Ity ve ny lalana mankany (Antsirabe)? i-ti ve ni laa-laan maa-kaan (aan-tsi-raa-be)

### Can you show me (on the map)?

Afaka asehonao ahy aa-faak aa-se-u-now waa  
(eoamin'ny sarintany) ve? (e-uua-min-ni saa-rin-taan) ve

### What's the address?

Inona ny adiresy? i-nu-naa ni aa-di-res

### How far is it?

Hafiriana avy eto? haa-fi-ri-naa aa-vi et

### How do I get there?

Ahoana no lalako mankany? ow-o-naa nu laa-laa-ku maa-kaan

### Turn left/right.

Mivilia ankavia/ankavanana. mi-vi-li aan-kaa-vi/aan-kaa-vaa-naan

|                 |                           |                         |
|-----------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| It's ...        | ... ilay izy.             | ... i-lai iz            |
| behind ...      | <i>Ao ambadiky ny ...</i> | ow aam-baa-di-ki ni ... |
| in front of ... | <i>Manoloana ny ...</i>   | maa-nu-lo-naa ni ...    |
| near (to ...)   | <i>Akaiky ny</i>          | aa-kai-ki ni            |
| next to ...     | <i>Manaraka ny</i>        | maa-naa-raa-kaa ni      |
| on the corner   | <i>Eo an-jorony</i>       | e-waan-dzu-run          |
| opposite ...    | <i>Mifanatrika ...</i>    | mi-faa-naa-trik ...     |
| straight ahead  | <i>Mandeha mahitsy</i>    | maan-de maa-hits        |
| there           | <i>Eo</i>                 | e-u                     |

## accommodation

|                |                           |                           |
|----------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Where's a ...? | <i>Aiza no misy ...?</i>  | <i>ai-zaa nu mis ...</i>  |
| camping ground | <i>toerana filasiana</i>  | tu-e-raan fi-laa-si-naa   |
| guesthouse     | <i>tranom-bahiny</i>      | traa-num-baa-hin          |
| hotel          | <i>hôtely</i>             | o-tel                     |
| youth hostel   | <i>fandraisana Tanora</i> | faan-drai-saa-naa taa-nur |

### Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

|                                 |                                            |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Afaka manoro ahy toerana</i> | <i>aa-faa-kaa maa-nur waa tu-e-raa-naa</i> |
| <i>mora/tsara ve ianao?</i>     | <i>mu-raa/tsaa-raa ve i-aa-now</i>         |

### I'd like to book a room, please.

|                                                    |                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Mba te hamandrika efitra iray aho, azafady.</i> | <i>mbaa te haa-maan-dri-kaa e-fi-traa rai ow aa-zaa-faad</i> |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|

### I have a reservation.

|                                      |                                                |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Manana famandrihana iray aho.</i> | <i>maa-naa-naa faa-maan-dri-haa-naa rai ow</i> |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

|             |                               |                                  |
|-------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Do you have | <i>Misy ... ve ato aminao</i> | <i>mis ... ve aat-waa-mi-now</i> |
| a ... room? | <i>efitra iray ...?</i>       | <i>e-fi-traa i-rai ...</i>       |
| single      | <i>ho an'olon-tokana</i>      | <i>waa-nu-lun-dru</i>            |
| double      | <i>misy fandriana lehibe</i>  | <i>mis faan-dri-naa le-hi-be</i> |
| twin        | <i>misy fandriana kely</i>    | <i>mis faan-dri-naa kel</i>      |

### How much is it per night/person?

|                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Ohatrinona isan' alina/olona?</i> | <i>o-trin i-saan aa-lin/u-lun</i> |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

### I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

|                                             |                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Mba saika hipetraka (roa) alina aho.</i> | <i>mbaa sai-kaa i-pe-traa-kaa (ru) aa-li-now</i> |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|

### What time is check-out?

|                                                |                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Amin'ny firy no fara-famerenana lakile?</i> | <i>aa-min-ni fir nu faa-raa-faa-me-re-naa-naa laa-ki-le</i> |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|

### Am I allowed to camp here?

|                                  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Mahazo milasy eto ve aho?</i> | <i>maa-haa-zu mi-laas e-tu ve ow</i> |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|

## banking & communications

|                            |                                   |                                          |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| I'd like to ...            | <i>Mba te ... aho azafady.</i>    | <i>mbaa te ... ow aa-zaa-faad</i>        |
| arrange a transfer         | <i>hikarakara famindram-bola</i>  | <i>hi-kaa-raa-kaa faa-min-draam-bul</i>  |
| cash a cheque              | <i>hanakalo seky</i>              | <i>haa-naa-kaa-lu se-ki</i>              |
| change a travellers cheque | <i>hanakalo seky de voazy</i>     | <i>haa-naa-kaa-lu se-ki de vo-yaa-zi</i> |
| change money               | <i>hanakalo vola</i>              | <i>haa-naa-kaa-lu vu-laa</i>             |
| withdraw money             | <i>hisintona vola</i>             | <i>hi-sin-tu-naa vu-laa</i>              |
| I want to ...              | <i>Te ... aho.</i>                | <i>te ... ow</i>                         |
| buy a phonecard            | <i>hividy karatra telefaonina</i> | <i>hi-vid kaa-raa-traa te-le-fon</i>     |
| call (Singapore)           | <i>hiantso an'i (Singapore)</i>   | <i>hi-aan-tsu aa-ni (sin-gaa-pur)</i>    |
| reverse the charges        | <i>hanafaona ny sarany</i>        | <i>haa-naa-fo-naa ni saa-raa-ni</i>      |
| use the internet           | <i>hampiasa emprimanty</i>        | <i>haam-pi-aas em-pri-maan-ti</i>        |
| use a printer              | <i>hijery enterinety</i>          | <i>hi-dze-ri en-ter-net</i>              |

### How much is it per hour?

|                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Ohatrinona ny adiny iray?</i> | <i>o-trin-naa ni aa-din rai</i> |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|

### How much does a (three-minute) call cost?

|                                              |                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ohatrinona ny miantso (telo minitra)?</i> | <i>o-trin-naa ni mi-aant-su (tel mi-ni-traa)</i> |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|

### (One ariary) per minute.

|                                  |                                        |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>(Ariary) ny iray minitra.</i> | <i>(aa-ri-aar) ni i-rai mi-ni-traa</i> |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|

## tours

|                      |                                   |                                          |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| When's the next ...? | <i>Rahoviana ny ... manaraka?</i> | <i>row-vi-naa ni ... maa-naa-raa-kaa</i> |
| day trip             | <i>dia atoandro</i>               | <i>di aa-tu-aan-dru</i>                  |
| tour                 | <i>toro</i>                       | <i>tur</i>                               |

|                      |                              |                             |
|----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Is ... included?     | <i>Ao antiny ve ...?</i>     | ow aa-naa-ti-ni ve ...      |
| accommodation        | <i>ny toerana ipetrahana</i> | ni tu-e-raa-ni-pe-traa-haan |
| the admission charge | <i>ny vidim-pidirana</i>     | ni vi-dim-pi-di-raan        |
| food                 | <i>sakafo</i>                | saa-kaaf                    |
| transport            | <i>fitaterana</i>            | fi-taa-te-raan              |

How long is the tour?

*Hafiriana ny toro?*

haa-fi-ri-naa ni tur

What time should we be back?

*Amin'ny firy isika no  
tokony ho tafaverina?*

aa-min-ni fi-ri-si-kaa nu  
tu-kun nu taa-faa-ve-rin



## shopping

I'm looking for ...

*Mitady ... aho.*

mi-taa-di ... ow

I need film for this camera.

*Mila pelikiola ho an'ity  
fakantsary ity aho.*

mi-laa pe-li-ki-ul waa-ni-ti  
faa-kaan-tsaa-ri-ti ow

Can I listen to this?

*Azoko henoina ve ity?*

aa-zuk we-nu-naa ve i-ti

Can I have my ... repaired?

*Afaka amboarina ve ny ... -ko?*

aa-faa-kaamb-waa-rin ve ni ... -ku

When will it be ready?

*Rahoviana no vita?*

row-vi-naa nu vi-taa

How much is it?

*Ohatrinona?*

o-trin

Can you write down the price?

*Mba afaka soratanao ve ny vidiny?*

mbaa aa-faa-kaa su-raa-taa-now ve ni vi-din

What's your lowest price?

*Ohatrinona ny vidiny farany?*

o-trin-naa ni vi-din faa-raan

I'll give you (five) ariary.

*Omeko Ariary (dimy) ianao.*

u-me-ku aa-ri-aa-ri (di-mi) aa-now

There's a mistake in the bill.

*Miso diso ny fakitiara.*

mis di-su ni faak-tu-raa

It's faulty.

*Tsy marina io.*

tsi maa-ri-ni-u

I'd like a receipt, please.

*Mba mila resio aho, azafady.*

mbaa mi-laa re-si-u ow aa-zaa-faad

Do you accept ...?

credit cards  
travellers cheques

*Mandray ... ve ianao?*

*karatra kiredy  
seky de voiazy*

maan-drai ... ve i-aa-now

*kaa-raa-traa kre-di  
se-ki de vo-yaa-zi*

Could you ...?

*Mba afaka ... ve  
ianao azafady?*

mbaa-aa-faak ... ve  
i-aa-now aa-zaa-faad

burn a CD from  
my memory card

*mameno CD avy  
amin'ny  
oridinaterako  
manasa ity  
pelikiola ity*

maa-me-nu se-de aa-vi  
aa-min-ni  
o-ri-di-naa-te-raa-ku  
maa-naa-saa i-ti  
pe-li-ki-ul i-ti

develop this  
film

## making conversation

Hello.

*Manao ahoana.*

maa-now aa-hon

Good night.

*Tafandria mandry.*

taa-faan-dri maan-dri

Goodbye.

*Veloma.*

ve-lum

Mr

*Ingahy*

in-gaa

Mrs

*Ramatoa*

raa-maa-tu

Ms/Miss

*Ramatoakely*

raa-maa-tu-kel

How are you?

*Manao ahoana ianao?*

maa-now aa-ho-ni-aa-now

Fine, and you?

*Tsara, ary ianao?*

tsaar aa-ri-aa-now

What's your name?

*Iza no anaranao?*

i-zaa nu aa-naa-raa-now

My name's ...

*... no anarako.*

... nu aa-naa-raa-ku

I'm pleased to meet you.

*Faly mahafantatra anao.*

faa-li maa-faan-taa-traa now

|                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>This is my ...</b><br>boyfriend<br>brother (man/<br>woman saying)<br>daughter<br>father<br>friend<br>girlfriend<br>husband<br>mother<br>sister (man/<br>woman saying)<br>son<br>wife | <i>Izy no ... ko.</i><br><i>sakaiza-</i><br><i>rahalahi-/</i><br><i>anadahi-</i><br><i>zanaka vavi-</i><br><i>rai-</i><br><i>nama-</i><br><i>sakaiza-</i><br><i>vadi-</i><br><i>reni-</i><br><i>anabavi-/</i><br><i>rahavavi-</i><br><i>zanaka lahi-</i><br><i>vadi-</i> | <i>i-zi nu ... ku</i><br><i>saa-kai-zaa-</i><br><i>raa-laa-hi-/</i><br><i>aa-naa-daa-hi-</i><br><i>zaa-naa-kaa vaa-vi-</i><br><i>rai-</i><br><i>naa-maa-</i><br><i>saa-kai-zaa-</i><br><i>vaa-di-</i><br><i>re-ni-</i><br><i>aa-naa-baa-vi-/</i><br><i>raa-vaa-vi-</i><br><i>zaa-naa-kaa laa-hi-</i><br><i>vaa-di-</i> |
| <b>Here's my ...</b><br><b>What's your ...?</b><br>address<br>email address<br>phone number                                                                                             | <i>Ity ny ... ko.</i><br><i>Inona ny ... nao?</i><br><i>adiresi-</i><br><i>adiresy maila-</i><br><i>numerao telefaoni-</i>                                                                                                                                               | <i>i-ti ni ... ku</i><br><i>i-nu-naa ni ... now</i><br><i>aa-di-re-si-</i><br><i>aa-di-res mai-laa-</i><br><i>nu-me-row te-le-fon-</i>                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Where are you from?</b>                                                                                                                                                              | <i>Avy aiza ianao?</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <i>aa-vi ai-zaa i-aa-now</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>I'm from ...</b><br>Australia<br>Canada<br>New Zealand<br>the UK<br>the USA                                                                                                          | <i>Avy any ... aho.</i><br><i>Aositralia</i><br><i>Kanadà</i><br><i>Niò Zelandy</i><br><i>Angiletera</i><br><i>Amerika</i>                                                                                                                                               | <i>aa-vi aa-ni ... ow</i><br><i>os-traa-li</i><br><i>kaa-naa-daa</i><br><i>ni-u ze-laan-di</i><br><i>aan-gle-ter</i><br><i>aa-me-rik</i>                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>I'm (not) married.</b><br><b>Can I take a photo</b><br><b>(of you)?</b>                                                                                                              | <i>(Tsy) Manam-bady aho.</i><br><i>Afaka maka sary</i><br><i>(anao) ve aho?</i>                                                                                                                                                                                          | <i>(tsi) maa-naam-baa-di ow</i><br><i>aa-faa-kaa maa-kaa saa-ri</i><br><i>(aa-now) ve ow</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## eating out

|                                                                          |                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Can you</b><br><b>recommend a ...?</b><br>bar<br>dish<br>place to eat | <i>Afaka manoro ahy</i><br><i>... tsara ve ianao?</i><br><i>bara</i><br><i>sakafo</i><br><i>toerana</i><br><i>hisakafoanana</i> | <i>aa-faa-kaa maa-nur waa</i><br><i>... tsaar ve i-aa-now</i><br><i>baa-raa</i><br><i>saa-kaaf</i><br><i>tu-e-raan</i><br><i>i-saa-kaa-fu-aa-naan</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>I'd like ..., please.</b><br><b>the bill</b><br><b>the menu</b><br><b>a table for (two)</b><br><br><b>that dish</b> | <i>Mba mila ..., azafady.</i><br><i>ny fakitiora</i><br><i>ny lisitra sakafo</i><br><i>latabatra ho an'</i><br><i>(olon-droa)</i><br><i>iny sakafo iny</i> | <i>mbaa mi-laa ... aa-zaa-faad</i><br><i>ni faak-ti-ur</i><br><i>ni lis-traa saa-kaaf</i><br><i>laa-taa-baa-traa waan</i><br><i>(u-lun-dru)</i><br><i>in saa-kaa-fu in</i> |
| <b>Do you have vegetarian food?</b>                                                                                    | <i>Manana sakafo tsy misy hena ve ianareo?</i>                                                                                                             | <i>maa-naa-naa saa-kaaf tsi mis he-naa ve i-aa-naa-re-u</i>                                                                                                                |
| <b>Could you prepare a meal without ...?</b>                                                                           | <i>Mba afaka manao sakafo tsy misy ... ve ianareo?</i>                                                                                                     | <i>mbaa aa-faak maa-now saa-kaaf tsi mis ... ve i-aa-naa-re-u</i>                                                                                                          |
| <b>eggs</b><br><b>meat stock</b>                                                                                       | <i>atody</i><br><i>hena</i>                                                                                                                                | <i>aa-tud</i><br><i>he-naa</i>                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>(cup of) coffee ...</b><br><b>(cup of) tea ...</b><br><b>with milk</b><br><b>without sugar</b>                      | <i>kafe (iray kaopy) ...</i><br><i>dite (iray kaopy) ...</i><br><i>misy ronono</i><br><i>tsy misy siramamy</i>                                             | <i>kaa-fe (i-rai kop) ...</i><br><i>di-te (i-rai kop) ...</i><br><i>mis ru-nun</i><br><i>tsi mis si-raa-maam</i>                                                           |
| <b>(boiled) water</b>                                                                                                  | <i>rano (mangotraka)</i>                                                                                                                                   | <i>raa-nu (maan-gu-traak)</i>                                                                                                                                              |

## emergencies

|                                                                                 |                                                                               |                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Help!</b><br><b>I'm lost.</b>                                                | <i>Vonjeo!</i><br><i>Very aho.</i>                                            | <i>vun-dze-u</i><br><i>ve-ri ow</i>                                               |
| <b>Call ...!</b><br><b>an ambulance</b><br><b>a doctor</b><br><b>the police</b> | <i>Antsoy ny ...!</i><br><i>ambilansy</i><br><i>dokotera</i><br><i>polisy</i> | <i>aant-su-i ni ...</i><br><i>aam-bi-laans</i><br><i>duk-ter</i><br><i>po-lis</i> |
| <b>Could you help me, please?</b>                                               | <i>Mba ampio kely aho, azafady?</i>                                           | <i>mbaa aam-pi-u kel ow aa-zaa-faad</i>                                           |
| <b>Where are the toilets?</b>                                                   | <i>Aiza ny trano fivoahana?</i>                                               | <i>ai-zaa ni traa-nu fi-vu-aa-haan</i>                                            |
| <b>I want to report an offence.</b>                                             | <i>Mba te hitatitra heloka iray aho.</i>                                      | <i>mbaa te hi-taa-ti-traa he-lu-ki rai ow</i>                                     |
| <b>I have insurance.</b>                                                        | <i>Manana fiantohana aho.</i>                                                 | <i>maa-naa-naa fi-aan-tu-haa-now</i>                                              |

I want to contact my consulate/embassy.

*Te hanatona ny masoivohonay aho.* te haa-naa-tu-naa ni maa-su-i-vu-aa-nai ow

|               |                      |                   |
|---------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| I've been ... | <i>Nisy ... aho.</i> | nis ... ow        |
| assaulted     | <i>nanafika</i>      | naa-naa-fik       |
| raped         | <i>nanolana</i>      | naa-nu-laan       |
| robbed        | <i>nangalatra</i>    | naan-gaa-laa-traa |

|                    |                        |                       |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| I've lost my ...   | <i>Very ny ... ko.</i> | ve-ri ni ... ku       |
| My ... was/were    | <i>Nisy nangalatra</i> | nis naan-gaa-laa-traa |
| stolen.            | <i>ny ... ko.</i>      | ni ... ku             |
| bags               | <i>haro-</i>           | haa-ru-               |
| handbag            | <i>paoketra-</i>       | po-ke-traa-           |
| jewellery          | <i>firava-</i>         | fi-raa-vaa-           |
| money              | <i>vola-</i>           | vu-laa-               |
| passport           | <i>pasipaoro-</i>      | paa-si-por-           |
| travellers cheques | <i>seki-</i>           | se-ki-                |
| wallet             | <i>paoketra keli-</i>  | po-ke-traa kel-       |

## medical needs

|                          |                                      |                                           |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Where's the nearest ...? | <i>Aiza ny ... akaiky indrindra?</i> | <i>ai-zaa ni ... aa-kaik in-drin-draa</i> |
| dentist                  | <i>mpanao nify</i>                   | <i>paa-now nif</i>                        |
| doctor                   | <i>dokotera</i>                      | <i>duk-ter</i>                            |
| hospital                 | <i>hôpitaly</i>                      | <i>ho-pi-taal</i>                         |
| pharmacist               | <i>fivarotam-panafody</i>            | <i>fi-vaa-ru-taam-paa-naa-fud</i>         |

I need a doctor (who speaks English).

*Mba mila dokotera* mbaa mi-laa duk-te-raa  
*(miteny Angilisy) aho.* (mi-ten aan-gi-lis) ow

Could I see a female doctor?

*Mba afaka manatona dokotera* mbaa aa-faa-kaa maa-naa-tu-naa duk-te-raa  
*vavy ve aho azafady?* vaav ve ow aa-zaa-faad

It hurts here.

*Marary eto.* maa-raa-ri et

I'm allergic to (penicillin).

*Tys mahazaka (penisilina) aho.* tsi maa-haa-zaa-kaa (pe-ni-si-lin) ow

## english–malagasy dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as n (noun), a (adjective), v (verb), ♂ (masculine), ♀ (feminine), sg (singular) and pl (plural) where necessary.

### A

**accommodation** *toerna ipetrahana*  
 tu-e-raa-ni-pe-traa-haan  
**adaptor** *adapitera* aa-daa-pi-ter  
**after** *aoriana* ow-ri-naa  
**airport** *tobi-piaramanidina* tu-bi-pi-aa-raa-maa-ni-din  
**alcohol** *alikaola* aa-li-ko-laa  
**all** *rehetra* re-he-traa  
**allergy** *tsy fahazakana* tsi faa-haa-zaa-kaan  
**and** *ary* aa-ri  
**ankle** *kitrokely* ki-tru-kel  
**antibiotics** *antibiôtika* aan-ti-bi-o-ti-kaa  
**anti-inflammatories** *tsy mampivonto* tsi maam-pi-vun-tu  
**arm** *sandry* saan-dri  
**aspirin** *asipirinina* aa-si-pi-rin  
**asthma** *asima* aas-maa

### B

**baby** *zazakely* zaa-zaa-ke-li  
**back (body)** *lamosina* laa-mu-si-naa  
**backpack** *kitapo fibaby* ki-taa-pu fi-baab  
**bad** *ratsy* raats  
**baggage claim** *fijerena entana* fi-dze-re-naa en-taan  
**bank** *banky* baan-ki  
**bathroom** *efitra fandroana* e-fi-traa faan-dru-aan  
**battery** *pila* pil  
**beautiful** *tsara tarehy* tsaa-raa taa-re  
**bed** *fandriana* faan-drin  
**beer** *labiera* laa-bi-er  
**bees** *tantely* taan-tel  
**before** *mialoha* mi-aa-lu  
**bicycle** *bisikileta* bis-ki-le-taa  
**big** *ngeza* nge-zaa  
**blanket** *firakotra* fi-raa-ku-traa  
**blood group** *sokajin-drà* so-kaad-zin-draa  
**bottle** *tavoahangy* taa-vu-haan-gi  
**bottle opener** *famohana tavoahangy*  
 faa-mu-haa-naa taa-vu-haan-gi  
**boy** *lahy* laa  
**brakes (car)** *fire fre*  
**breakfast** *sakafo maraina* saa-kaaf maa-rai-naa  
**bronchitis** *koha-davareny* ku-haa-daa-vaa-ren

### C

**café** *kafé* kaa-fe  
**cancel** *foanana* fu-aa-naa-naa  
**can opener** *famohana kapoaka* faa-mu-haa-naa kaa-pok  
**cash** n *lelavola* le-laa-vu-laa  
**cell phone** *paoritaba* por-taa-bi-laa  
**centre** n *ivo* i-vu  
**cheap** *moravidy* mu-raa-vid  
**check (bill)** *seky* se-ki  
**check-in** n *tomboka fidirana* tum-bu-kaa fi-di-raan  
**chest** *tratra* tra-a-traa  
**child** *ankizy* aan-kiz  
**cigarette** *sigara* si-gaa-raa  
**city** *tanàn-dehibe* taa-naan-de-hi-be  
**clean** a *madio* maa-di-u  
**closed** *mihidy* mi-hid  
**codeine** *kaodehinina* ko-de-in  
**cold** a *mangatsiaka* maan-gaa-tsik  
**condom** *kapaoty* kaa-po-ti  
**constipation** *fitohanana* fi-to-haa-naa-naa  
**contact lenses** *solomaso* su-lu-maa-su  
**cough** n *kohaka* ku-haak  
**currency exchange** *fanakalozana devizy*  
 faa-naa-kaa-lu-zaa-naa de-viz  
**customs (immigration)** *lodoany* laa-du-aan

### D

**dairy products** *ronono* ru-nun  
**dangerous** *mampidi-doza* maam-pi-di-duz  
**date (time)** n *daty* daa-ti  
**day** *andro* aan-dru  
**diaper** *tatin-jaza* taa-tind-zaa-zaa  
**diarrhoea** *mivalana* mi-vaa-laan  
**dinner** *sakafo hariva* saa-kaa-fu aa-ri-vaa  
**dirty** *maloto* maa-lut  
**disabled** *kilemaina* ki-le-mai-naa  
**double bed** *fandriana lehibe* faan-dri-naa le-hi-be  
**drink** n *zava-pisotro* zaa-vaa-pi-su-tru  
**drivers licence** *perimia* per-mi  
**drug (illicit)** *zava-mahadomelina* zaa-vaa-maa-du-mel

### A

## E

ear *sofina* su-fi-naa  
 east *atsinanana* aat-si-naa-naan  
 economy class *kilasy faharoa* ki-laa-si faa-haa-lu  
 elevator *asansera* aa-saan-ser  
 email *n mailaka* mai-laak  
 English (language) *angilisy* aan-gi-lis  
 exchange rate *vidy takalo* vi-di taa-kaa-lu  
 exit *n fivoahana* fi-vu-aa-haan  
 expensive *lafo* laa-fu  
 eye *maso* maa-su

## F

fast *a haingana* hain-gaa-naa  
 fever *tazo* taa-zu  
 finger *rantsan-tanana* raant-saan-taa-naan  
 first-aid kit *fanafody vonjy taitra*  
   faa-naa-fu-di vund-zi-tai-traa  
 first class *kilasy voalohany* ki-laa-si vu-aa-lu-haan  
 fish *n trondro* trun-dru  
 food *sakafo* saa-kaaf  
 foot *tongotra* tun-gu-traa  
 fork *forisety* fu-ri-se-ti  
 free (of charge) *maimaimpoana* mai-mai-po-naa  
 fruit *voankazo* vu-aan-kaaz  
 funny *mampimehy* maam-pi-u-me

## G

game park *kianjan-dalao* ki-aand-zaa-daa-low  
 gift *fanomezana* faa-nu-me-zaan  
 girl *vehivavy* ve-hi-vaav  
 glass (drinking) *vera* ve-raa  
 glasses *solomaso* su-lu-maas  
 gluten *gilotenina* glu-ten  
 good *tsara* tsaa-raa  
 gram *girama* graa-maa  
 guide *n mpitarika* pi-taa-ri-kaa

## H

hand *tanana* taa-naa-naa  
 happy *faly* faa-li  
 have *manana* maa-naa-naa  
 he *izy* iz  
 head *loha* lu

headache *aretina an-doha* aa-re-tin-aan-du  
 heart *fô* fu  
 heart condition *toe-pô* tu-e-pu  
 heat *n hafanana* haa-faa-naan  
 here *eto* e-tu  
 high *avo* aa-vu  
 highway *lalambe* laa-laam-be  
 homosexual *n&a sarindahy/sarimbavy*    
   saa-rin-daa/saa-rim-baa-vi  
 hot *mahamay* maa-mai  
 hungry *noana* no-naa

## I

I *aho* ow  
 identification (card) *kara-panondro* kaa-raa-paa-nun-dru  
 ill *marary* maa-raa-ri  
 important *zava-dehibe* zaa-vaa-de-hi-be  
 internet *enterinety* en-ter-net  
 interpreter *mpandika* teny paan-di-kaa te-ni

## J

job *asa* aa-saa

## K

key *lakile* laa-ki-le  
 kilogram *kilao* ki-low  
 kitchen *lakoza* laa-ku-zi  
 knife *antsy aant* si

## L

laundry (place) *fanasan-damba* faa-naa-saan-daam-baa  
 lawyer *mpisolô* vava mpi-su-lu vaa-vaa  
 left-luggage office *birao mpitahiry entana*  
   bi-row pi-taa-hi-ri en-taa-naa  
 leg *ranjo* raand-zu  
 lesbian *n&a sarindahy* saa-rin-daa  
 less *kely kokoa* ke-li ku-ku  
 letter (mail) *taratasy* taa-raa-taas  
 like *v tia* ti  
 lost-property office *biraon' entana* very  
   bi-row-ni-en-taa-naa-ve-ri  
 love *v tia* ti  
 lunch *sakafo atoandro* saa-kaaf waa-tu-aan-dru

## M

man *lehilahy* le-hi-laa  
 matches *afokasoka* aa-fu-kaa-su-kaa  
 meat *hena* he-naa  
 medicine *fanafody* faa-naa-fu-di  
 message *hafatra* haa-faa-traa  
 mobile phone *paoritabila* por-taa-bi-laa  
 month *volana* vu-laa-naa  
 morning *maraina* maa-rai-naa  
 motorcycle *môtô* mo-to  
 mouth *vava* vaa-vaa  
 movie *sarimihetsika* saa-ri-mi-het-si-kaa  
 MSG *MSG* em-es-dze  
 museum *trano firaketana* traan fi-raa-ke-taan  
 music *mazika* mu-zik

## N

name *n anarana* aa-naa-raan  
 napkin *serivietan-databatra*  
   se-ri-vi-e-taan-daa-taa-baa-traa  
 nappy *te hatory* te haa-tu-ri  
 national park *parika nasiônaly* paar-kaa naa-si-o-naa-li  
 nausea *malohilohy* maa-lo-hi-lo-hi  
 neck *hatoka* haa-tu-kaa  
 new *vaovao* vow-vow  
 news *vaovao* vow-vow  
 newspaper *gazety* gaa-ze-ti  
 night *alina* aa-li-naa  
 nightclub *toeram-pandihizana* tu-e-raam-paan-di-hi-zaan  
 noisy *mitabataba* mi-taa-baa-taa-baa  
 nonsmoking *tsy mifoka sigara* tsi mi-fu-kaa si-gaa-raa  
 north *avaratra* aa-vaa-raa-traa  
 nose *orona* u-ru-naa  
 now *izao* i-zow  
 number *isa* i-saa  
 nuts *voanjo* vu-aan-dzu

## O

oil (engine) *menaka* me-naa-kaa  
 OK *mety* me-ti  
 old *antitra* aan-ti-traa  
 open *a mivoha* mi-vu  
 outside *ivelany* i-ve-laa-ni

## P

package *entana* en-taa-naa  
 pain *fanaintainana* faa-nain-tai-naa-naa

palace *rova* ru-vaa  
 paper *taratasy* taa-raa-taas  
 park (car) *v fijanonana* fid-zaa-nu-naan  
 passport *pasipaoro* paa-si-po-ru  
 pay *v karama* kaa-raa-maa  
 pen *penina* pen  
 petrol *lasantsy* laa-saant-si  
 pharmacy *farimasia* faa-ri-maa-si  
 plate *lovina* lu-vi  
 postcard *karatra paositany* kaa-raa-traa pos-taa-li  
 post office *paositra* po-si-traa  
 pregnant *bevhoka* be-vu-kaa

## Q

quiet *mangiangiana* maan-gin-gi-naa

## R

rain *n orana* u-raan  
 razor *hareza* haa-rez  
 registered mail *taratasy rekômande*  
   taa-raa-taas re-ko-maan-de  
 rent *v hofany* hu-faan  
 repair *v mamboatra* maam-bo-traa  
 reservation *famandrihana* faa-maan-dri-haan  
 restaurant *hôtely fisakafoana* o-te-li fi-saa-kaa-fu-aa-naa  
 return *v miverina* mi-ve-ri-naa  
 road *lalana* laa-laa-naa  
 room *efitra* e-fi-traa

## S

sad *malahelo* maa-laa-he-lu  
 safe *a milamina* mi-laa-mi-naa  
 sanitary napkin *serivietana fidiovana*  
   se-ri-vi-e-taa fi-di-u-vaa-naa  
 seafood *hazan-drano* haa-zaan-draa-nu  
 seat *fitoerana* fi-tu-e-raan  
 send *mandefa* maan-def  
 sex *vavy* na lahy vaa-vi naa laa  
 shampoo *fanasam-bolo* faa-naa-saam-bu-lu  
 share (a dorm, etc) *mizara* mi-zaa-raa  
 shaving cream *kirema fiharatana* krem fi-haa-raa-taan  
 she *izy* iz  
 sheet (bed) *lambam-pandriana* laam-baam-paan-dri-naa  
 shirt *lobaka* lu-baa-kaa  
 shoes *kiraro* ki-raa-ru

## M

© Lonely Planet Publications

**shop** *n* *fivarotana* fi-vaa-ru-taan  
**shower** *n* *fandroana* faan-dru-naa  
**skin** *hoditra* hu-di-traa  
**skirt** *zipo* zi-po  
**sleep** *v* *matory* maa-tu-ri  
**small** *kely* ke-li  
**smoke (cigarettes)** *v* *mifoka* mi-fu-kaa  
**soap** *savony* saa-vu-ni  
**some** *sasany* saa-saan  
**soon** *atoato* aa-tu-aa-tu  
**sore throat** *aretin-tenda* aa-re-tin-ten-daa  
**south** *atsimo* aat-si-mu  
**souvenir shop** *fivarotana fahatsiarovana*  
 fi-vaa-ru-taan faa-tsi-aa-ru-vaan  
**speak** *miteny* mi-ten  
**spoon** *sotro* su-tru  
**stamp** *haja* haad-zi  
**stand-by ticket** *tapakila ho an'ny lisitra miandry*  
 taa-paa-kil waan-ni-li-si-traa mi-aan-dri  
**station (train)** *gara* gaa-raa  
**stomach** *vavony* vaa-vu-ni  
**stop** *v* *mijanona* mid-zaa-nu-naa  
**stop (bus)** *n* *fjanonana* fid-zaa-nu-naan  
**street** *arabe* aa-raa-be  
**student** *mpianatra* pi-aa-naa-traa  
**sunscreen** *aro-masoandro* aa-ru-maa-su-aan-dru  
**swim** *v* *milomano* mi-lu-maan

## T

**tampons** *servieta hygienika* se-ri-vi-e-taa hi-dzi-e-ni-kaa  
**teeth** *nify* nif  
**telephone** *n* *telefaonina* te-le-fon  
**television** *televiziona* te-le-vi-zi-on  
**temperature (weather)** *hafanana* haa-faa-naan  
**tent** *lay* lai  
**that (one)** *iny* i-ni  
**they** *zareo* zaa-re-u  
**thirsty** *mangetaheta* maan-ge-taa-he-taa  
**this (one)** *ity* i-ti  
**throat** *tenda* ten-daa  
**ticket** *tapakila* taa-paa-kil  
**time** *fotoana* fu-ton  
**tired** *vizana* vi-zaan  
**tissues** *mosoara* mu-swaa-raa  
**today** *androany* aan-dru-aan  
**toilet** *toerana fivoahana* tu-e-raan fi-vu-aa-haan  
**tonight** *rahalina* raa-haa-li-naa  
**toothache** *areti-nify* aa-re-ti-nif  
**toothbrush** *borosynify* bu-ru-si-nif  
**toothpaste** *dantifirisy* daan-ti-fris

**torch (flashlight)** *lampy de paosy* laam-pi de pos  
**tourist office** *biraon' ny vahiny* bi-row-ni vaa-hin  
**towel** *servieta* se-ri-vi-e-taa  
**translate** *mandika teny* maan-di-kaa ten  
**travel agency** *birao mpandrindra dia*  
 bi-row paan-drin-draa di  
**travellers cheque** *seky de voiazay* se-ki de vo-yaa-zi  
**trousers** *pataloha* paa-taa-lu  
**twin beds** *fandriana kely* faan-dri-naa kel  
**tyre** *kodiarana* ku-di-aa-raan

## U

**underwear** *atin* 'akanjo aa-ti-naa-kaan-dzu  
**urgent** *maika mai-kaa*

## V

**vacant** *malalaka* maa-laa-laa-kaa  
**vegetarian** *a* *tsy misy hena tsi mis he-naa*  
**visa** *vizà* vi-zaa

## W

**waiter** *mpandroso sakafo* paan-dru-su saa-kaaf  
**walk** *v* *mandeha tongotra* maan-de tun-gu-traa  
**wallet** *paoketra kely* po-ke-traa kel  
**warm** *a* *mafana* maa-faan  
**wash (something)** *manasa* maa-naas  
**watch** *n* *famataranandro* faa-maa-taa-raa-naan-dru  
**water** *rano* raa-nu  
**we (including person addressed)** *isika* i-sik  
**we (excluding person addressed)** *izahay* i-zaa-hai  
**weekend** *faran'ny herinandro* faa-raan-ni he-ri-naan-dru  
**west** *andrefana* aan-dre-faan  
**wheelchair** *sezan'ny kilemaina* se-zaan-ni ki-le-mai-naa  
**when** *oviana* o-vi-naa  
**where** *aiza* ai-zaa  
**who** *iza* i-zaa  
**why** *nahoana* naa-hon  
**window** *varavarankely* vaa-raa-vaa-raan-kel  
**wine** *divay* di-vai  
**with** *miaraka amin'ny* mi-aa-raa-kaa-min-ni  
**without** *tsy misy tsi mis*  
**woman** *vehivavy* ve-hi-vaav  
**write** *manoratra* maa-nu-raa-traa

## Y

**you** *sg* *ianao* i-aa-now  
**you** *pl* *ianareo* i-aa-naa-re-u

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# Portuguese



# pronunciation

| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |               | Consonants |                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | English sound | Symbol     | English sound                                 |
| a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | run           | b          | bed                                           |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | father        | d          | dog                                           |
| ai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | aisle         | f          | fun                                           |
| ay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | say           | g          | go                                            |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | bet           | k          | kit                                           |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | see           | l          | lot                                           |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | pot           | ly         | million                                       |
| oh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | note          | m          | man                                           |
| oo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | zoo           | n          | not                                           |
| ow                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | now           | ng         | ring (indicates the preceding vowel is nasal) |
| oy                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | boy           |            |                                               |
| <p>In this chapter, the Portuguese pronunciation is given in red after each word or phrase.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot, and the syllable stressed in each word is italicised.</p> <p>For example:<br/><i>Olá. o-laa</i></p> |               | ny         | canyon                                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | p          | pet                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | r          | like 'tt' in 'butter' said fast               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | rr         | run (throaty)                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | s          | sun                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | sh         | shot                                          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | t          | top                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | v          | very                                          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | w          | win                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | y          | yes                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | z          | zero                                          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               | zh         | pleasure                                      |

# PORTUGUESE

## português

## language difficulties

Do you speak English?  
Do you understand?  
I (don't) understand.

*Fala inglês?*  
*Entende?*  
*(Não) Entendo.*

*faa-la eeng-glesh*  
*eng-teng-de*  
*(nowng) eng-teng-doo*

Could you please ...?  
repeat that  
speak more slowly  
write it down

*Podia ..., por favor?*  
*repetir isto*  
*falar mais devagar*  
*escrever isso*

*poo-dee-a ... poor fa-vor*  
*rre-pe-teer eesh-too*  
*fa-laar maish de-va-gaar*  
*shkre-ver ee-soo*

## time, dates & numbers

What time is it?  
It's one o'clock.  
It's (ten) o'clock.  
Quarter past (ten).  
Half past (ten).  
Quarter to (eleven).  
At what time ...?  
At ...  
It's (18 October).

*Que horas são?*  
*É uma hora.*  
*São (dez) horas.*  
*(Dez) e quinze.*  
*(Dez) e meia.*  
*Quinze para as (onze).*  
*A que horas ...?*  
*À ...*  
*Hoje é dia (dezoito de Outubro).*

*kee o-rash sowng*  
*e oo-ma o-ra*  
*sowng (desh) o-rash*  
*(desh) e keeng-ze*  
*(desh) e may-a*  
*keeng-ze pa-ra ash (ong-ze)*  
*a ke o-rash ...*  
*aa ...*  
*o-zhe e dee-a (de-zoy-too*  
*de oh-too-broo)*

Monday  
Tuesday  
Wednesday  
Thursday  
Friday  
Saturday  
Sunday

*segunda-feira*  
*terça-feira*  
*quarta-feira*  
*quinta-feira*  
*sexta-feira*  
*sábado*  
*domingo*

*se-goong-da-fay-ra*  
*ter-sa-fay-ra*  
*kwaar-ta-fay-ra*  
*keeng-ta-fay-ra*  
*saysh-ta-fay-ra*  
*saa-ba-doo*  
*doo-meeng-goo*

yesterday  
today  
tomorrow

*ontem*  
*hoje*  
*amanhã*

*ong-teng*  
*o-zhe*  
*aa-ma-nyang*

## numbers

|    |         |           |      |              |                  |
|----|---------|-----------|------|--------------|------------------|
| 0  | zero    | ze-roo    | 16   | dezasseis    | de-za-saysh      |
| 1  | um      | oong      | 17   | dezassete    | de-za-se-te      |
| 2  | dois    | doysh     | 18   | dezoito      | de-zoy-too       |
| 3  | três    | tresh     | 19   | dezanove     | de-za-no-ve      |
| 4  | quatro  | kwaa-troo | 20   | vinte        | veeng-te         |
| 5  | cinco   | seeng-koo | 21   | vinte e um   | veeng-te e oong  |
| 6  | seis    | saysh     | 22   | vinte e dois | veeng-te e doysh |
| 7  | sete    | se-te     | 30   | trinta       | treeng-ta        |
| 8  | oito    | oy-too    | 40   | quarenta     | kwa-reng-ta      |
| 9  | nove    | no-ve     | 50   | cinquenta    | seeng-kweng-ta   |
| 10 | dez     | desh      | 60   | sessenta     | se-seng-ta       |
| 11 | onze    | ong-ze    | 70   | setenta      | se-teng-ta       |
| 12 | doze    | do-ze     | 80   | oitenta      | oy-teng-ta       |
| 13 | treze   | tre-ze    | 90   | noventa      | no-veng-ta       |
| 14 | catorze | ka-tor-ze | 100  | cem          | seng             |
| 15 | quinze  | keeng-ze  | 1000 | mil          | meel             |

## border crossing

| I'm here ... | Estou ...          | shtoh ...         |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| in transit   | <i>em trânsito</i> | eng trang-zee-too |
| on business  | <i>em negócios</i> | eng ne-go-syoosh  |
| on holiday   | <i>de férias</i>   | de fe-ree-ash     |

| I'm here for ... | Vou ficar por ...     | voh fee-kaar poor ... |
|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| (10) days        | <i>(dez) dias</i>     | (desh) dee-ash        |
| (three) weeks    | <i>(três) semanas</i> | (tresh) se-ma-nash    |
| (two) months     | <i>(dois) meses</i>   | (doysh) me-zesh       |

I'm going to (Maputo).  
*Vou para (Maputo).*                      voh pa-ra (ma-poo-to)

I'm staying at the (Panorama Hotel).  
*Estou no (Hotel Panorama).*                      shtoh noo (o-tel pa-no-ra-ma)

## tickets

|                                                             |                                                                                   |                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| One ... ticket<br>(to Sofala), please.<br>one-way<br>return | <i>Um bilhete de ...<br/>(para Sofala), por favor.<br/>ida<br/>ida e volta</i>    | oong bee-lye-te de ...<br>(pra so-faa-laa) poor fa-vor<br>ee-da<br>ee-da ee vol-ta         |
| Is there ...?<br>air conditioning<br>a toilet               | <i>Tem ...?<br/>ar condicionado<br/>casa de banho</i>                             | teng ...<br>aar kong-dee-syoo-naa-doo<br>kaa-za de ba-nyoo                                 |
| I'd like a ... seat,<br>please.<br>nonsmoking<br>smoking    | <i>Queria um lugar ...<br/>por favor.<br/>de não fumadores<br/>para fumadores</i> | ke-ree-a oong loo-gaar ...<br>poor fa-vor<br>de nowng foo-ma-do-resh<br>pra foo-ma-do-resh |



## transport

| Is this the ...<br>to (Luanda)? | <i>Este é o ...<br/>para (Luanda)?</i> | esh-te e oo ...<br>pra (lwan-da) |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| boat                            | <i>barco</i>                           | baar-koo                         |
| bus                             | <i>autocarro</i>                       | ow-to-kaa-rroo                   |
| train                           | <i>comboio</i>                         | kong-boy-oo                      |

How much is it to ...?  
*Quanto custa até ao ...?*                      kwang-too koosh-ta a-te ow ...

Please take me to (this address).  
*Leve-me para (este endereço),  
por favor.*                      le-ve-me pa-ra (esh-te eng-de-re-soo)  
poor fa-vor

|                                                                 |                                                                         |                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like to hire a ...<br>car (with<br>air conditioning)<br>4WD | <i>Queria alugar ...<br/>um carro (com<br/>ar condicionado)<br/>4WD</i> | ke-ree-a a-loo-gaar ...<br>oong kaa-rroo (kong<br>aar kong-dee-syoo-naa-doo)<br>kwaa-troo poor kwaa-troo |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## directions

|                          |                                    |                                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Where's the nearest ...? | Onde é o ...<br><i>mais perto?</i> | ong-de e oo ...<br>maish <i>per-to</i> |
| internet café            | <i>café da internet</i>            | ka-fe da eeng-ter-net                  |
| market                   | <i>mercado</i>                     | mer-kaa-doo                            |
| It's ...                 | É ...                              | e ...                                  |
| behind ...               | <i>atrás de ...</i>                | a-traash de ...                        |
| in front of ...          | <i>em frente de ...</i>            | eng <i>fren-g-te</i> de ...            |
| near (to ...)            | <i>perto (de ...)</i>              | per-too (de ...)                       |
| next to ...              | <i>ao lado de ...</i>              | ow laa-doo de ...                      |
| on the corner            | <i>na esquina</i>                  | na shkee-na                            |
| opposite ...             | <i>do lado oposto ...</i>          | doo laa-doo oo-posh-too ...            |
| straight ahead           | <i>em frente</i>                   | eng <i>fren-g-te</i>                   |
| there                    | <i>lá</i>                          | laa                                    |



## accommodation

|                                                |                            |                             |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| I'd like to book a room, please.               |                            |                             |
| <i>Eu queria fazer uma reserva, por favor.</i> | e-oo ke-ree-a fa-zer oo-ma | rre-zer-va poor fa-vor      |
| I'd like to stay for (three) nights.           |                            |                             |
| <i>Para (três) noites.</i>                     | pa-ra (tresh)              | noy-tesh                    |
| Do you have a ... room?                        | Tem um quarto ...?         | teng oong kwaar-too ...     |
| single                                         | <i>de solteiro</i>         | de sol-tay-roo              |
| double                                         | <i>de casal</i>            | de ka-zaal                  |
| twin                                           | <i>duplo</i>               | doo-ploo                    |
| How much is it per ...?                        | Quanto custa por ...?      | kwang-too koosh-ta poor ... |
| night                                          | <i>noite</i>               | noy-te                      |
| person                                         | <i>pessoa</i>              | pe-so-a                     |

## banking & communications

|                            |                                |                              |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| I'd like to ...            | Queria ...                     | ke-ree-a ...                 |
| change a travellers cheque | <i>trocar traveller cheque</i> | troo-kaar tra-ve-ler shek    |
| change money               | <i>trocar dinheiro</i>         | troo-kaar dee-nyay-roo       |
| get internet access        | <i>ter acesso à internet</i>   | ter a-se-soo aa eeng-ter-net |
| withdraw money             | <i>levantar dinheiro</i>       | le-vang-taar dee-nyay-roo    |

## shopping

|                               |                             |                          |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| I'm looking for ...           |                             |                          |
| <i>Estou à procura de ...</i> | shtoh aa proo-koo-ra de ... |                          |
| How much is it?               |                             |                          |
| <i>Quanto custa?</i>          | kwang-too koosh-ta          |                          |
| Can you write down the price? |                             |                          |
| <i>Pode escrever o preço?</i> | po-de shkre-ver oo pre-soo  |                          |
| Do you accept ...?            | Aceitam ...?                | a-say-tang ...           |
| credit cards                  | <i>cartão de crédito</i>    | kar-towng de kre-dee-too |
| travellers cheques            | <i>travellers cheques</i>   | tra-ve-ler she-kesh      |

## making conversation

|                          |                                              |                                          |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Hello.                   | <i>Olá.</i>                                  | o-laa                                    |
| Good night.              | <i>Boa noite.</i>                            | bo-a noy-te                              |
| Goodbye.                 | <i>Adeus.</i>                                | a-de-oosh                                |
| Mr                       | <i>Senhor</i>                                | se-nyor                                  |
| Mrs                      | <i>Senhora</i>                               | se-nyo-ra                                |
| Ms                       | <i>Menina</i>                                | me-nee-na                                |
| How are you?             | <i>Como está?</i>                            | ko-moo shtaa                             |
| Fine. And you?           | <i>Bem, e você?</i>                          | beng e vo-se                             |
| What's your name?        | <i>Qual é o seu nome?</i>                    | kwaal e oo se-oo no-me                   |
| My name's ...            | <i>O meu nome é ...</i>                      | oo me-oo no-me e ...                     |
| I'm pleased to meet you. | <i>Prazer em conhecê-lo/ conhecê-la. m/f</i> | pra-zer eng koo-nye-se-lo/ koo-nye-se-la |

|                       |                                                          |                                                               |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>This is my ...</b> | <i>Este é o meu ... m</i><br><i>Esta é a minha ... f</i> | <i>esh-te e oo me-oo ...</i><br><i>esh-ta e a mee-nya ...</i> |
| boyfriend             | <i>namorado</i>                                          | <i>na-moo-raa-doo</i>                                         |
| daughter              | <i>filha</i>                                             | <i>fee-lya</i>                                                |
| friend                | <i>amigo/a m/f</i>                                       | <i>a-mee-goo/ga</i>                                           |
| girlfriend            | <i>namorada</i>                                          | <i>na-moo-raa-da</i>                                          |
| husband               | <i>marido</i>                                            | <i>ma-ree-doo</i>                                             |
| partner (intimate)    | <i>companheiro/a m/f</i>                                 | <i>kong-pa-nyay-roo/a</i>                                     |
| son                   | <i>filho</i>                                             | <i>fee-lyoo</i>                                               |
| wife                  | <i>esposa</i>                                            | <i>shpo-za</i>                                                |
| <b>I'm ...</b>        | <i>Eu sou ...</i>                                        | <i>e-oo soh ...</i>                                           |
| married               | <i>casado/a m/f</i>                                      | <i>ka-zaa-doo/a</i>                                           |
| single                | <i>solteiro/a m/f</i>                                    | <i>sol-tay-roo/a</i>                                          |



|                                     |                                          |                                                       |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Where are you from?</b>          | <i>De onde é?</i>                        | <i>dong-de e</i>                                      |
| <b>I'm from ...</b>                 | <i>Eu sou ...</i>                        | <i>e-oo soh ...</i>                                   |
| Australia                           | <i>da Austrália</i>                      | <i>da owsh-traa-lya</i>                               |
| Canada                              | <i>do Canadá</i>                         | <i>doo ka-na-daa</i>                                  |
| New Zealand                         | <i>da Nova Zelândia</i>                  | <i>da no-va ze-lang-dya</i>                           |
| the UK                              | <i>do Reino Unido</i>                    | <i>doo ray-noo oo-nee-doo</i>                         |
| the USA                             | <i>dos Estados Unidos</i>                | <i>doosh shtaa-doosh oo-nee-doosh</i>                 |
| <b>Here's my ...</b>                | <i>Aqui está o meu ...</i>               | <i>a-kee shtaa oo me-oo ...</i>                       |
| <b>What's your ...?</b>             | <i>Qual é o seu ...?</i>                 | <i>kwaal e oo se-oo ...</i>                           |
| address                             | <i>endereço</i>                          | <i>eng-de-re-soo</i>                                  |
| email address                       | <i>email</i>                             | <i>ee-mayl</i>                                        |
| phone number                        | <i>número de telefone</i>                | <i>noo-me-roo de te-le-fo-ne</i>                      |
| <b>Can I take a photo (of you)?</b> | <i>Posso(-lhe) tirar uma fotografia?</i> | <i>po-soo(-lye) tee-raar oo-ma foo-too-graa-fee-a</i> |

## eating out

|                                              |                                |                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <b>I'd like ..., please.</b>                 | <i>Queria ..., por favor.</i>  | <i>ke-ree-a ... poor fa-vor</i>            |
| <b>the bill</b>                              | <i>a conta</i>                 | <i>a kong-ta</i>                           |
| <b>the menu</b>                              | <i>um menu</i>                 | <i>oong me-noo</i>                         |
| <b>a table for (five)</b>                    | <i>uma mesa para (cinco)</i>   | <i>oo-ma me-za pa-ra (seeng-koo)</i>       |
| <b>that dish</b>                             | <i>aquele prato</i>            | <i>a-ke-le praa-too</i>                    |
| <b>Do you have vegetarian food?</b>          | <i>Tem comida vegetariana?</i> | <i>teng koo-mee-da ve-zhe-ta-ree-aa-na</i> |
| <b>Could you prepare a meal without ...?</b> | <i>Pode preparar sem ...?</i>  | <i>po-de pre-pa-raar seng ...</i>          |
| eggs                                         | <i>ovos</i>                    | <i>o-voosh</i>                             |
| meat stock                                   | <i>caldo de carne</i>          | <i>kaal-doo de kaar-ne</i>                 |

## emergencies

|                                   |                                   |                                            |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <b>Help!</b>                      | <i>Socorro!</i>                   | <i>soo-ko-rroo</i>                         |
| <b>Call ...!</b>                  | <i>Chame ...!</i>                 | <i>shaa-me ...</i>                         |
| <b>an ambulance</b>               | <i>uma ambulância</i>             | <i>oo-ma ang-boo-lang-sya</i>              |
| <b>the police</b>                 | <i>a polícia</i>                  | <i>a poo-lee-sya</i>                       |
| <b>Could you help me, please?</b> | <i>Pode ajudar, por favor?</i>    | <i>po-de a-zhoo-daar poor fa-vor</i>       |
| <b>Can I use the telephone?</b>   | <i>Posso usar o seu telefone?</i> | <i>po-soo oo-zaar oo se-oo te-le-fo-ne</i> |
| <b>I'm lost.</b>                  | <i>Estou perdido/a. m/f</i>       | <i>shtoh per-dee-doo/a</i>                 |
| <b>Where are the toilets?</b>     | <i>Onde é a casa de banho?</i>    | <i>ong-de e a kaa-za de ba-nyoo</i>        |
| <b>I've been assaulted.</b>       | <i>Eu fui agredido/a. m/f</i>     | <i>e-oo fwee a-gre-dee-doo/a</i>           |
| <b>I've been raped.</b>           | <i>Eu fui violado/a. m/f</i>      | <i>e-oo fwee vee-oo-laa-doo/a</i>          |

|                                                |                                             |                                       |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| I've lost my ...<br>My ... was/were<br>stolen. | <i>Eu perdi ...</i><br><i>Roubaram ...</i>  | e-oo per-dee ...<br>rrh-baa-rang ...  |
| bags                                           | <i>os meus sacos</i>                        | oosh me-oosh saa-koosh                |
| credit card                                    | <i>o meu cartão</i><br><i>de crédito</i>    | oo me-oo kar-towng<br>de kre-dee-too  |
| handbag                                        | <i>a minha bolsa</i>                        | a mee-nya bol-sa                      |
| jewellery                                      | <i>as minhas jóias</i>                      | ash mee-nyash zhoy-ash                |
| money                                          | <i>o meu dinheiro</i>                       | oo me-oo dee-nyay-roo                 |
| passport                                       | <i>o meu passaporte</i>                     | oo me-oo paa-sa-por-te                |
| travellers                                     | <i>os meus</i>                              | oosh me-oosh                          |
| cheques                                        | <i>travellers cheques</i>                   | tra-ve-ler she-kesh                   |
| wallet                                         | <i>a minha carteira</i>                     | a mee-nya kar-tay-ra                  |
| I want to contact<br>my ...                    | <i>Eu quero</i><br><i>contactar com ...</i> | e-oo ke-roo<br>kong-tak-taar kong ... |
| embassy                                        | <i>a minha embaixada</i>                    | a mee-nya eng-bai-shaa-da             |
| consulate                                      | <i>o meu consulado</i>                      | oo me-oo kong-soo-laa-doo             |

## medical needs

|                                                                                                      |                                         |                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Where's the<br>nearest ...?                                                                          | <i>Qual é ...</i><br><i>mais perto?</i> | kwaal e ...<br>maish per-too                                   |
| dentist                                                                                              | <i>o dentista</i>                       | oo deng-teesh-ta                                               |
| doctor                                                                                               | <i>o médico m</i><br><i>a médica f</i>  | oo me-dee-koo<br>a me-dee-ka                                   |
| hospital                                                                                             | <i>o hospital</i>                       | oo osh-pee-taal                                                |
| pharmacist                                                                                           | <i>a farmácia</i>                       | a far-maa-sya                                                  |
| I need a doctor (who speaks English).<br><i>Eu preciso de um médico</i><br><i>(que fale inglês).</i> |                                         | e-oo pre-see-zoo de oong me-dee-koo<br>(que faa-le eeng-glesh) |
| It hurts here.<br><i>Dói-me aqui.</i>                                                                |                                         | doy-me a-kee                                                   |
| I'm allergic to (penicillin).<br><i>Eu sou alérgico/a</i><br><i>a (penicilina). m/f</i>              |                                         | e-oo soh a-ler-zhee-koo/a<br>a (pe-nee-see-lee-na)             |

## english–portuguese dictionary

Portuguese nouns and adjectives in this dictionary have their gender indicated with ♂ (masculine) and ♀ (feminine). If it's a plural noun, you'll see pl too. Words are also marked as v (verb), n (noun), a (adjective), pl (plural), sg (singular), inf (informal) and pol (polite) where necessary.

### A

accommodation *hospedagem* ♂ osh-pe-daa-zheng  
after *depois de* poysh  
airport *aeroporto* ♂ a-e-ro-por-too  
alcohol *alcoól* ♂ al-ko-ol  
all a *todo/a* ♂/♀ to-doo/a  
allergy *alergia* ♀ a-ler-zhee-a  
and e e  
ankle *tornozelo* ♂ toor-noo-ze-loo  
antibiotics *antibióticos* ♂ pl ang-tee-bee-o-tee-koosh  
arm *braço* ♂ braa-soo  
aspirin *aspirina* ♀ ash-pee-ree-na  
asthma *asma* ♀ ash-ma  
ATM *caixa automático* ♂ kai-sha ow-too-maa-tee-koo

### B

baby *bebê* ♂&♀ be-be  
back (body) *costas* ♀ pl kosh-tash  
backpack *mochila* ♀ moo-shee-la  
bad *mau/má* ♂/♀ ma-oo/maa  
baggage claim *balcão de bagagens* ♂  
bal-kowng de ba-gaa-zhengsh  
bank *banco* ♂ bang-koo  
bathroom *casa de banho* ♀ kaa-za de ba-nyoo  
battery *pilha* ♀ pee-ly  
beautiful *bonito/a* ♂/♀ boo-nee-too/a  
bed *cama* ♀ ka-ma  
bee *abelha* ♀ a-be-ly  
beer *cerveja* ♀ ser-ve-zha  
before *antes* ang-tesh  
bicycle *bicicleta* ♀ bee-see-kle-ta  
big *grande* ♂&♀ grang-de  
blanket *cobertor* ♂ koo-ber-tor  
blood group *grupo sanguíneo* ♂  
groo-poo sang-gwee-nee-oo  
bottle *garrafa* ♀ ga-rraa-fa  
bottle opener *saca-rolhas* ♂ saa-ka-rra-lyash  
boy *menino* ♂ me-nee-noo  
brake (car) *travão* ♂ tra-vowng  
breakfast *pequeno almoço* ♂ pe-ke-noo aal-mo-soo

### C

cancel *cancelar* kang-se-laar  
can opener *abre latas* ♂ aa-bre laa-tash  
cash *dinheiro* ♂ dee-nyay-roo  
cell phone *telemóvel* ♂ te-le-mo-vel  
centre *centro* ♂ seng-troo  
cheap *barato/a* ♂/♀ ba-raa-too/a  
check (bill) *conta* ♀ kong-ta  
chest *peito* ♂ pay-too  
child *criança* ♂&♀ kree-ang-sa  
cigarette *cigarro* ♂ see-gaa-rroo  
city *cidade* ♀ see-daa-de  
clean a *limpo/a* ♂/♀ leeng-poo/a  
closed *fechado/a* ♂/♀ fe-shaa-doo/a  
cold a *frio/a* ♂/♀ free-oo/a  
collect call *ligação a cobrar* ♀  
lee-ga-sowng a koo-braar  
condom *preservativo* ♂ pre-zer-va-tee-vo  
constipation *prisão de ventre* ♀  
pree-zowng de ven-tre  
contact lenses *lentes de contacto* ♂ pl  
leng-tesh de kong-taak-too  
cough *tosse* ♀ to-se  
currency exchange *câmbio* ♂ kang-byoo  
customs (immigration) *alfândega* ♀ aal-fang-de-ga

### D

dairy products *produtos lácteos* ♂ pl  
pro-doo-toosh laak-tee-oosh  
dangerous *perigoso/a* ♂/♀ pe-ree-go-zoo/a  
day *dia* ♂ dee-a  
diaper *fralda* ♀ fraal-da  
diarrhoea *diarreia* ♀ dee-a-rray-a  
dinner *jantar* ♂ zhang-taar  
dirty *sujo/a* ♂/♀ soo-zhoo/a  
disabled *deficiente* de-fee-see-eng-te  
double bed *cama de casal* ♀ ka-ma de ka-zaal  
drink *bebida* ♀ be-bee-da  
drivers licence *carta de condução* ♀  
kaar-ta de kong-doo-sowng  
drug (illicit) *droga* ♀ dro-ga

## E

ear orelha ① o-re-lyā  
 east leste lesh-te  
 economy class classe econômica ①  
*klaa-se ee-koo-no-mee-ka*  
 elevator elevador ① ee-le-va-dor  
 email email ① ee-mayl  
 English (language) inglês ① eeng-glesh  
 exchange rate taxa de câmbio ① taa-sha de kang-byoo  
 exit saída ① saa-ee-da  
 expensive caro/a ①/② kaa-roo/a

## F

fast rápido/a ①/② rraa-pee-doo/a  
 fever febre ① fe-bre  
 finger dedo ① de-doo  
 first-aid kit estojo de primeiros socorros ①  
*shto-zhoo de pree-may-roosh so-ko-roosh*  
 first class primeira classe ① pree-may-ra klaa-se  
 fish peixe ① pay-she  
 food comida ① koo-mee-da  
 foot pé ① pe  
 fork garfo ① gaar-foo  
 free (of charge) grátis graa-teesh  
 funny engraçada/a ①/② eng-gra-saa-doo/a

## G

gift presente ① pre-zeng-te  
 girl menina ① me-nee-na  
 glass (drinking) copo ① ko-poo  
 glasses óculos ① pl o-koo-loosh  
 gluten glúten ① gloo-teng  
 good bom/boa ①/② bong/bo-a  
 gram grama ① graa-ma  
 guide n guia ① gee-a

## H

hand mão ① mowng  
 happy feliz ①/② fe-leesh  
 have ter ter  
 he ele e-le  
 head cabeça ① ka-be-sa  
 headache dor de cabeça ① dor de ka-be-sa  
 heart coração ① koo-ra-sowng

heart condition problema de coração ①  
*proo-ble-ma de koo-ra-sowng*  
 heat calor ① ka-lor  
 here aqui a-kee  
 high alto/a ①/② aal-too/aa  
 highway autoestrada ① ow-to-shtraa-da  
 homosexual n&a homossexual ①&②  
*o-mo-sek-soo-aal*  
 hot quente keng-te  
 hungry faminto/a ①/② fa-meeng-too/a

## I

I eu e-oo  
 identification (card) bilhete de identidade ①  
*bee-lye-te de ee-deng-tee-daa-de*  
 ill doente ①&② doo-eng-te  
 important importante ①&② eeng-por-tang-te  
 Internet internet ① eeng-ter-net  
 interpreter intérprete ①&② eeng-ter-pre-te

## K

key chave ① shaa-ve  
 kilogram quilograma ① kee-loo-graa-ma  
 kitchen cozinha ① koo-zee-nya  
 knife faca ① faa-ka

## L

laundry (place) lavanderia ① la-vang-da-ree-a  
 lawyer advogado/a ①/② a-de-voo-gaa-doo/a  
 left-luggage office perdidos e achados ① pl  
*per-dee-doosh ee aa-shaa-doosh*  
 leg perna ① per-na  
 lesbian n&a lésbica ① lezh-bee-ka  
 less menos me-noosh  
 letter (mail) carta ① kaar-ta  
 like v gostar goosh-taar  
 lost-property office gabinete de perdidos e achados ①  
*gaa-bee-ne-te de per-dee-doosh ee a-shaa-doosh*  
 love v amar a-maar  
 lunch almoço ① aal-mo-soo

## M

man homem ① o-meng  
 matches fósforos ① pl fosh-foo-roosh  
 meat carne ① kaar-ne  
 medicine medicamentos ① pl me-dee-ka-meng-toosh

message mensagem ① meng-saa-zheng  
 mobile phone telemóvel ① te-le-mo-vel  
 month mês ① mesh  
 morning manhã ① ma-nyang  
 motorcycle moto ① mo-ta  
 mouth boca ① bo-ka  
 movie filme ① feel-me  
 MSG MSG ① e-me-e-se-zhe  
 museum museu ① moo-ze-oo  
 music música ① moo-zee-ka

## N

name nome ① no-me  
 napkin guardanapo ① gwar-da-naa-poo  
 nappy fralda ① fraal-da  
 national park parque nacional ①  
*paar-ke na-syoo-naal*  
 nausea náusea ① now-zee-a  
 neck pescoço ① pesh-ko-soo  
 new novo/a ①/② no-voo/a  
 news notícias ① pl noo-tee-syash  
 newspaper jornal ① zhor-naal  
 night noite ① noy-te  
 noisy barulhento/a ①/② ba-roo-lyeng-too/a  
 nonsmoking não-fumador nowng-foo-ma-dor  
 north norte noar-te  
 nose nariz ① na-reesh  
 now agora a-go-ra  
 number número ① noo-me-roo  
 nuts oleaginosas ① pl o-lee-a-zhee-no-zash

## O

oil (engine) petróleo ① pe-tro-lyoo  
 OK bem beng  
 old velho/a ①/② ve-lyoo/a  
 open a aberto/a ①/② a-ber-too/a  
 outside fora fo-ra

## P

package embrulho ① eng-broo-lyoo  
 pain dor ① dor  
 paper papel ① pa-pel  
 park (car) v estacionamento shta-syoo-naar  
 passport passaporte ① paa-sa-por-te  
 pay pagar pa-gaar  
 pen caneta ① ka-ne-ta  
 petrol gasolina ① ga-zoo-lee-na

pharmacy farmácia ① far-maa-sya  
 plate prato ① praa-too  
 postcard postal ① poosh-taal  
 post office correio ① koo-rray-oo  
 pregnant grávida ① graa-vee-da

## R

rain chuva ① shoo-va  
 razor gilete ① zhee-le-te  
 registered mail correio registrado ①  
*koo-rray-oo re-zhee-shtaa-doo*  
 rent v alugar a-loo-gaar  
 repair v consertar kong-ser-taar  
 reservation reserva ① rre-zer-va  
 restaurant restaurante ① rresh-tow-rang-te  
 return v voltar vol-taar  
 road estrada ① shtraa-da  
 room quarto ① kwaar-too

## S

sad triste treesh-te  
 safe a seguro/a ①/② se-goo-roo/a  
 sanitary napkin penso higiênico ①  
*peng-soo ee-zhee-e-nee-koo*  
 seafood marisco ① ma-reesh-koo  
 seat assento ① a-seng-too  
 send enviar eng-vee-aar  
 sex sexo ① sek-soo  
 shampoo champô ① shang-poo  
 share (a dorm) partilhar par-tee-lyaar  
 shaving cream creme de barbear ①  
*kre-me de bar-bee-aar*  
 she ela e-la  
 sheet (bed) lençol ① leng-sol  
 shirt camisa ① ka-mee-za  
 shoes sapatos ① pl sa-paa-toosh  
 shop n loja ① lo-zha  
 shower n chuveiro ① shoo-vay-roo  
 skin pele ① pe-le  
 skirt saia ① sai-a  
 sleep v dormir door-meer  
 small pequeno/a ①/② pe-ke-noo/a  
 smoke (cigarettes) v fumar foo-maar  
 soap sabonete ① sa-booo-ne-te  
 some uns/umas ①/② pl oongsh/oo-mash  
 soon em breve eng bre-ve  
 sore throat dores de garganta ① pl  
*do-resh de gar-gang-ta*

© Lonely Planet Publications

south *sul* sool  
 souvenir shop *loja de lembranças* ①  
*lo-zha de leng-brang-sash*  
 speak *falar* fa-laar  
 spoon *colher* ① koo-lyer  
 stamp *selo* ① se-loo  
 stand-by ticket *bilhete sem garantia* ①  
*bee-lye-te seng ga-rang-tee-a*  
 station (train) *estação* ① shta-sowng  
 stomach *estômago* ① shto-ma-goo  
 stop √ *parar* pa-raar  
 stop (bus) *paragem* ① pa-raa-zheng  
 street *rua* ① rroo-a  
 student *estudante* ①&② shtoo-dang-te  
 sunscreen *protecção anti-solar* ①  
*proo-te-sowng ang-tee-soo-laar*  
 swim √ *nadar* na-daar

## T

tampons *tampões* ① pl tang-powngsh  
 teeth *dentes* ① pl deng-tesh  
 telephone *telefone* ① te-le-fo-ne  
 television *televisão* ① te-le-vee-zowng  
 temperature (weather) *temperatura* ①  
*teng-pe-ra-too-ra*  
 tent *tenda* ① teng-da  
 that one *aquele/a* ①/② a-ke-le/a  
 they *eles/elas* ①/② e-lesh/e-lash  
 thirsty *sedento/a* ①/② se-deng-too/a  
 this one *este/a* ①/② esh-te/a  
 throat *garganta* ① gar-gang-ta  
 ticket *bilhete* ① bee-lye-te  
 time *tempo* ① teng-poo  
 tired *cansado/a* ①/② kang-saa-doo/a  
 tissues *lenços de papel* ① pl leng-soosh de pa-pel  
 today *hoje* o-zhe  
 toilet *casa de banho* ① kaa-za de ba-nyoo  
 tonight *hoje à noite* o-zhe aa noy-te  
 toothache *dor de dentes* ① dor de deng-tesh  
 toothbrush *escova de dentes* ① shko-va de deng-tesh  
 toothpaste *pasta de dentes* ① paash-ta de deng-tesh  
 torch (flashlight) *lanterna eléctrica* ①  
*lang-ter-na ee-le-tree-ka*  
 tourist office *escritório de turismo* ①  
*shkree-to-ryoo de too-reezh-moo*  
 towel *toalha* ① twaa-lyaa  
 translate *traduzir* tra-doo-zeer

travel agency *agência de viagens* ①  
*a-zheng-sya de vee-aa-zhengsh*  
 travellers cheque *travellers cheque* ① tra-ve-ler shek  
 trousers *calças* ① pl kaal-sash  
 twin beds *camas gémeas* ① pl ka-mash zhe-me-ash  
 tyre *pneu* ① pe-ne-oo

## U

underwear *roupa interior* ① rroh-pa eeng-te-ree-or  
 urgent *urgente* ①&② oor-zheng-te

## V

vacant *vago/a* ①/② vaa-goo/a  
 vegetable *legume* ① le-goo-me  
 vegetarian ② *vegetariano/a* ①/② ve-zhe-ta-ree-a-noo/a  
 visa *visto* ① veesh-too

## W

waiter *criado/a de mesa* ①/② kree-aa-doo/a de me-za  
 walk √ *caminhar* ka-mee-nyaar  
 wallet *carteira* ① kar-tay-ra  
 warm ② *morno/a* ①/② mor-noo/a  
 wash (something) *lavar* la-vaar  
 watch *relógio* ① rre-lo-zhyoo  
 water *água* ① aa-gwa  
 we nós nosh  
 weekend *fim-de-semana* ① feeng-de-se-ma-na  
 west *oeste* o-esh-te  
 wheelchair *cadeira de rodas* ① ka-day-ra de rro-dash  
 when *quando* kwang-doo  
 where *onde* ong-de  
 who *quem* keng  
 why *porque* poor-ke  
 window *janela* ① zha-ne-la  
 wine *vinho* ① vee-nyoo  
 with *com* kong  
 without *sem* seng  
 woman *mulher* ① moo-lyer  
 write *escrever* shkree-ver

## Y

you inf sg/pl *tu/vocês* too/vo-sesh  
 you pol sg/pl *você/vós* vo-se/vosh

Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this © chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of 'saying the above' - 'Do the right thing with our content'

# Shona



| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |               | Consonants |                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | English sound | Symbol     | English sound                   |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | father        | b          | bed                             |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | bet           | b'         | strong b with air sucked inward |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | see           | ch         | cheat                           |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | pot           | d          | dog                             |
| oo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | zoo           | d'         | strong d with air sucked inward |
| <p>In this chapter, the Shona pronunciation is given in orange after each phrase.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot. For example:</p> <p><i>Mazviita.</i> maa-zvee-ta</p> <p>Shona's glottalised consonants, simplified as b' and d' in our pronunciation guide, are made by tightening and releasing the space between the vocal cords when you pronounce them. Both sounds are 'implosive' – instead of breathing out to make the sound, you breathe in.</p> |               | dz         | adze                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | f          | fun                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | g          | go                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | h          | hat                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | j          | jar                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | k          | kit                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | m          | man                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | n          | not                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | ng         | ring                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | ny         | canyon                          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | p          | pet                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | r          | run (trilled)                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | s          | sun                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | sh         | shot                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | t          | top                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | ts         | lets                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | v          | very                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | w          | win                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | y          | yes                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | z          | zero                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               | zh         | pleasure                        |

## introduction

'Saunter', 'stroll', 'amble', 'march': a few of the English variations on 'walk'. Shona (*ChiShona* chee-sho-na) beats English hands down in this department, though – what about 'walk with buttocks shaking' (*mbwembwera* mbwe-mbwe-raa), 'walk squelchingly through mud' (*chakwaira* chaa-kwaa-ee-raa), 'walk with a stick' (*donzva* d'o-nzvaa), 'walk a long way' (*panha* paa-nhaa) or 'walk in a very short dress' (*pushuka* poo-shoo-kaa)? And that's just a sample of the more than 200 words Shona has for this everyday activity. Shona, a member of the Bantu language family, is spoken by about 11 million people, mainly in the southern African countries of Mozambique, Botswana and Zambia, in addition to a large number in the diaspora. The vast majority of speakers, however, are in Zimbabwe: the three official languages are English, Shona and Ndebele, but Shona is spoken by about 80 per cent of the population. The language has a flourishing literary culture, including novels, short stories, plays and journalism, and an enormous output of poetry – in fact, due to the metaphorical nature of the language, it's as though every Shona speaker is a poet.

shona (native language) shona (generally understood)



## language difficulties

|                                                                               |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Do you speak English?                                                         | <i>Munotaura chiNgezi here?</i>                                                                  | moo-no-taa-oo-raa<br>chee-nge-zee he-re                                                                            |
| Do you understand?                                                            | <i>Munonzvisisa here?</i>                                                                        | moo-no-nzvee-see-saa<br>he-re                                                                                      |
| I understand.                                                                 | <i>Ndinonzvisisa.</i>                                                                            | ndee-no-nzvee-see-saa                                                                                              |
| I don't understand.                                                           | <i>Handinzvisisi.</i>                                                                            | haa-ndee-nzvee-see-see                                                                                             |
| Could you please ...?<br>repeat that<br>speak more<br>slowly<br>write it down | <i>Munga ... wo here?<br/>dzokorora izvozvo<br/>taurisa<br/>zvinyoronyoro<br/>zvinyorei pasi</i> | moo-ngaa ... wo he-re<br>dzo-ko-ro-raa i-zvo-zvo<br>taa-oo-ree-saa<br>zvee-nyo-ro-nyo-ro<br>zvee-nyo-re-ee paa-see |

## time, dates & numbers

In time and date expressions, Shona uses English-style numbers.

|                     |                               |                                       |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| What time is it?    | <i>Inguvai?</i>               | ee-ngoo-vaa-ee                        |
| It's (two) o'clock. | <i>I(tu) kiroko.</i>          | ee-(too) kee-ro-ko                    |
| Quarter past (one). | <i>Kota pasiti (hwani).</i>   | ko-taa paa-see-tee (hwaa-nee)         |
| Half past (one).    | <i>Hafu pasiti (hwani).</i>   | haa-foo paa-see-tee (hwaa-nee)        |
| Quarter to (eight). | <i>Kota tu(eyiti).</i>        | ko-taa too-(e-yee-tee)                |
| At what time ...?   | <i>Nenguvai ...?</i>          | ne-ngoo-vaa-ee ...                    |
| At ...              | <i>Na ...</i>                 | naa ...                               |
| It's (15 December). | <i>Ndi<br/>(15 Dhisemba).</i> | ndee<br>(fee-fee-tee-nee dee-se-mbaa) |

|           |                 |               |
|-----------|-----------------|---------------|
| yesterday | <i>nezuro</i>   | ne-zoo-ro     |
| today     | <i>nhasi</i>    | nhaa-see      |
| tomorrow  | <i>mangwana</i> | maa-ngwaa-naa |

|           |                 |               |
|-----------|-----------------|---------------|
| Monday    | <i>Muvhuro</i>  | moo-vhoo-ro   |
| Tuesday   | <i>Chipiri</i>  | chee-pee-ree  |
| Wednesday | <i>Chitatu</i>  | chee-taa-too  |
| Thursday  | <i>China</i>    | chee-naa      |
| Friday    | <i>Chishanu</i> | chee-shaa-noo |
| Saturday  | <i>Mugovera</i> | mu-go-ve-raa  |
| Sunday    | <i>Svondo</i>   | svo-ndo       |

### numbers

|    |                    |                     |      |                  |                  |
|----|--------------------|---------------------|------|------------------|------------------|
| 0  | <i>ziro</i>        | zee-ro              | 20   | <i>makumi</i>    | ma-koo-mee       |
| 1  | <i>-mwe</i>        | -mwe                |      | <i>maviri</i>    | maa-vee-ree      |
| 2  | <i>-viri</i>       | -vee-ree            | 21   | <i>makumi</i>    | ma-koo-mee       |
| 3  | <i>-tatu</i>       | -taa-too            |      | <i>maviri</i>    | maa-vee-ree      |
| 4  | <i>-na</i>         | -naa                |      | <i>neimwe</i>    | ne-ee-mwe        |
| 5  | <i>-shanu</i>      | -shaa-noo           | 22   | <i>makumi</i>    | ma-koo-mee       |
| 6  | <i>-tanhatu</i>    | -taa-nhaa-too       |      | <i>maviri</i>    | maa-vee-ree      |
| 7  | <i>-nomwe</i>      | -no-mwe             |      | <i>nembiri</i>   | ne-mbee-ree      |
| 8  | <i>-sere</i>       | -se-re              | 30   | <i>makumi</i>    | maa-koo-mee      |
| 9  | <i>-pfumbamwe</i>  | -pfoo-mbaa-mwe      |      | <i>matatu</i>    | maa-taa-too      |
| 10 | <i>gumi</i>        | goo-mee             | 40   | <i>makumi</i>    | maa-koo-mee      |
| 11 | <i>gumi neimwe</i> | goo-mee ne-ee-mwe   |      | <i>mana</i>      | maa-naa          |
| 12 | <i>gumi</i>        | goo-mee             | 50   | <i>makumi</i>    | maa-koo-mee      |
|    | <i>nembiri</i>     | ne-mbee-ree         |      | <i>mashanu</i>   | maa-shaa-noo     |
| 13 | <i>gumi</i>        | goo-mee             | 60   | <i>makumi</i>    | maa-koo-mee      |
|    | <i>nenhatu</i>     | ne-nhaa-too         |      | <i>matanhatu</i> | maa-taa-nhaa-too |
| 14 | <i>gumi nena</i>   | goo-mee ne-naa      | 70   | <i>makumi</i>    | maa-koo-mee      |
| 15 | <i>gumineshanu</i> | goo-mee-ne-shaa-noo |      | <i>manomwe</i>   | maa-no-mwe       |
| 16 | <i>gumi</i>        | goo-mee             | 80   | <i>makumi</i>    | maa-koo-mee      |
|    | <i>nenhanhatu</i>  | ne-nhaa-nhaa-too    |      | <i>masere</i>    | maa-se-re        |
| 17 | <i>gumi</i>        | goo-mee             | 90   | <i>makumi</i>    | maa-koo-mee      |
|    | <i>nenomwe</i>     | ne-no-mwe           |      | <i>mapfu-</i>    | maa-pfoo-        |
| 18 | <i>gumi nesere</i> | goo-mee ne-se-re    |      | <i>mbamwe</i>    | mbaa-mwe         |
| 19 | <i>gumi nepfu-</i> | goo-me ne-pfoo-     | 100  | <i>zana</i>      | zaa-naa          |
|    | <i>mbamwe</i>      | mbaa-mwe            | 1000 | <i>chiuru</i>    | chee-oo-roo      |

## border crossing

|                  |                           |                           |
|------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| I'm here ...     | <i>Ndiri muno ...</i>     | ndee-ree moo-no ...       |
| in transit       | <i>patiranziti</i>        | paa-tee-ra-nzee-tee       |
| on business      | <i>nezve bhizinesi</i>    | ne-zve bee-zee-ne-see     |
| on holiday       | <i>pahorodhi</i>          | paa-ho-ro-dee             |
| I'm here for ... | <i>Ndiri muno kwe ...</i> | ndee-ree moo-no kwe ...   |
| (10) days        | <i>mazuva (gumi)</i>      | maa-zoo-vaa (goo-mee)     |
| (three) weeks    | <i>mavhiki (matatu)</i>   | maa-vhee-kee (maa-ta-too) |
| (two) months     | <i>mwedzi (miviri)</i>    | mwe-dzee (mee-vee-ree)    |

**I'm going to (Gweru).**

*Ndiri kuenda ku (Gweru).*

ndee-ree koo-e-ndaa koo (gwe-roo)

**I'm staying at the (Midland Hotel).**

*Ndiri kugara pa  
(Midland Hotera).*

ndee-ree koo-gaa-raa paa  
(mee-dlaand ho-te-raa)



## tickets

**One ... ticket  
(to Bulawayo),  
please.**

**one-way  
return**

*Ndinodawo tiketi  
rimwe ... (roku  
Bhuruwayo).*

*rehwaniweyi  
rokuenda  
ndichidzoka*

ndee-no-daa-wo tee-ke-tee  
ree-mwe ... (ro-koo  
boo-roo-waa-yo)  
re-hwaa-nee-we-yee  
ro-koo-e-ndaa  
ndee-chee-dzo-kaa

**I'd like to ... my  
ticket, please.**

**cancel  
change  
collect**

*Ndinodawo ku ...  
tiketi rangu.  
kanzura  
chinja  
korekita*

ndee-no-daa-wo koo ...  
tee-ke-tee raa-ngoo  
kaa-nzoo-raa  
chee-njaa  
ko-re-kee-ta

**Is there a ...?**

**toilet  
air conditioning**

*Pane ... here?  
chimbudzi  
eya kondishina*

paa-ne ... he-re  
che-mboo-dzee  
e-yaa ko-ndee-shee-naa

**I'd like a smoking/nonsmoking seat, please.**

*Ndingadawo pasiti  
panoputirwa/  
pasingaputirwi.*

ndee-ngaa-daa-wo paa-see-tee  
paa-no-poo-tee-rwaa/  
paa-see-ngaa-poo-tee-rwee

**How long does the trip take?**

*Pane mufambo wakadii?*

paa-ne moo-faa-mbo waa-kaa-dee-ee

**Is it a direct route?**

*Iyi ndiyo nzira inonanga  
ikoko here?*

ee-yee ndee-yo nzee-raa ee-no-naa-ngaa  
ee-ko-ko he-re

## transport

**Where does the flight (to Victoria Falls) arrive/depart?**

*Ndege ye (kuVictoria Falls)  
inosvikira/inosimukira  
kupi?*

nde-ge ye (koo-vee-kee-to-ree-yaa fols)  
ee-no-svee-kee-raa/ee-no-see-moo-kee-raa  
koo-pee

**How long will it be delayed?**

*Ichanonoka zvakadii?*

ee-chaa-no-no-kaa zva-kaa-d'ee-ee

**Is this the bus to (Chivhu)?**

*Iri ndiro bhazi roku  
(Chivhu) here?*

ee-ree ndee-ro baa-zee ro-koo  
(chee-vhoo) he-re

**Is this the train to (Mutare)?**

*Ichi ndicho chitima chokwa  
(Mutare) here?*

ee-che ndee-cho chee-tee-maa cho-kwaa  
(moo-taa-re) he-re

**How much is it to ...?**

*Kunoita marii kuenda ku ...?*

koo-no-ee-taa maa-ree-ee koo-e-ndaa koo ...

**Please take me to (this address).**

*Nditakureiwo kuenda  
ku (adhiresi iyi).*

ndee-taa-koo-re-ee-wo koo-e-ndaa  
koo (aa-dee-re-see ee-yee)

**I'd like to hire a ...  
(with air conditioning).**

**car  
4WD**

*Ndinoda kuhaya ...  
(ine eya kondishina).  
motokari  
ye fohwiri  
dhiraivhi*

ndee-no-d'a koo-haa-yaa ...  
(ee-ne e-yaa ko-ndee-shee-naa)  
mo-to-kaa-ree  
ye fo-hwee-ree  
dee-raa-ee-vhee

**How much is it for (three) days/weeks?**

*Inoita marii kwemazuva/  
mavhiki (matatu)?*

ee-no-ee-taa maa-ree-ee kwe-maa-zoo-vaa/  
maa-vhee-kee (maa-taa-too)

## directions

**Where's the (nearest) internet café?**

*Ko indaneti kafe  
(iri pedyo pedyo) iri kupi?*

ko ee-ndaa-ne-tee kaa-fe  
(ee-ree pe-jgo pe-jgo) ee-ree koo-pee

**Where's the (nearest) market?**

*Ko musika (uri pedyo pedyo)  
uri kupi?*

ko moo-see-kaa (oo-ree pe-jgo pe-jgo)  
oo-ree koo-pee

**Is this the road to (Mozambique)?**

*Uyu ndiwo mugwagwa woku* oo-yoo ndee-wo moo-gwaa-gwaa wo-koo  
(Mozambiki) here? (mo-zaa-mbee-kee) he-re

**Can you show me (on the map)?**

*Munganditaridzawo* moo-ngaa-ndee-taa-ree-dzaa-wo  
(pamepu) here? (paa-me-poo) he-re

**What's the address?** *Kero yacho ndiyani?* ke-ro yaa-cho ndee-yaa-nee

**How far is it?** *Kure zvakadii?* koo-re zvaa-kaa-d'ee-ee

**How do I get there?** *Ndinosvikako sei?* ndee-no-svee-kaa-ko se-ee

**Turn left/right.** *Konera kuruboshwe/* ko-ne-raa koo-roo-bo-shwe/  
*kurudyi.* koo-roo-jgee

|                        |                            |                                |
|------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>It's ...</b>        | <i>Iri ...</i>             | ee-ree ...                     |
| <b>behind ...</b>      | <i>seri ...</i>            | se-ree ...                     |
| <b>in front of ...</b> | <i>mberi kwe ...</i>       | mbe-ree kwe                    |
| <b>near (to ...)</b>   | <i>pedyo (ne ...)</i>      | pe-jgo (ne ...)                |
| <b>next to ...</b>     | <i>padivi pe ...</i>       | pa-d'ee-vee pe ...             |
| <b>on the corner</b>   | <i>pakona</i>              | paa-ko-naa                     |
| <b>opposite ...</b>    | <i>pakatarisana ne ...</i> | paa-kaa-taa-ree-saa-naa ne ... |
| <b>straight ahead</b>  | <i>nanga mberi</i>         | naa-nga mbe-ree                |
| <b>there</b>           | <i>apo</i>                 | aa-po                          |

**accommodation**

|                       |                        |                            |
|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Where's a ...?</b> | <i>Ndokupi ...?</i>    | ndo-koo-pee ...            |
| <b>camping ground</b> | <i>kunokembwa</i>      | koo-no-ke-mbwaa            |
| <b>guesthouse</b>     | <i>kuimba yavaenzi</i> | koo-ee-mbaa yaa-vaa-e-nzee |
| <b>hotel</b>          | <i>kuhotera</i>        | koo-ho-te-raa              |
| <b>youth hostel</b>   | <i>kuhositeri</i>      | koo-ho-see-te-ree          |

**Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?**

*Ungarekomenda kumwe* oo-ngaa-re-ko-me-ndaa koo-mwe  
*kwakachipa/kwakanaka?* kwaa-kaa-chee-paa/kwaa-kaa-naa-kaa

**I'd like to book a room, please.**

*Ndinokumbirawo* ndee-no-koo-mbee-raa-wo  
*kubhuka rumu.* koo-boo-kaa-roo-moo

**I have a reservation.**

*Ndakarizevha.* ndaa-kaa-ree-ze-vha

**Do you have****a ... room?****single****double****twin***Mune rumu**... here?**yomunhu mumwe**yavanhu vaviri**ine mibhedha miviri*

moo-ne-roo-moo

... he-re

yo-moo-nhoo moo-mwe

yaa-vaa-nhoo vaa-vee-ree

ee-ne-mee-be-daa mee-vee-ree

**How much is it per (night/person)?**

*Imarii pa(zuva/munhu)?* ee-maa-ree-ee paa-(zoo-vaa/moo-nhoo)

**I'd like to stay for (two) nights.**

*Ndingada kugara* ndee-ngaa-daa koo-gaa-raa  
*kweusiku (huviri).* kwe-oo-see-koo (hoo-vee-ree)

**What time is check-out?**

*Cheki auti iriko nenguvai?* che-kee aa-oo-tee ee-ree-ko ne-ngoo-vaa-ee

**Am I allowed to camp here?**

*Ndinobvumirwa kukemba* ndee-no-bvoo-mee-rwaa koo-ke-mbaa  
*panohere?* paa-no-he-re

**banking & communications**

|                            |                             |                                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>I'd like to ...</b>     | <i>Ndinoda ku-...</i>       | ndee-no-daa koo-...             |
| <b>arrange a transfer</b>  | <i>ronga zvetiranzifeya</i> | ro-ngaa-zve-tee-raa-nzee-fe-yaa |
| <b>cash a cheque</b>       | <i>kesha cheki</i>          | ke-shaa che-kee                 |
| <b>change a travellers</b> | <i>chinja macheiki</i>      | chee-njaa maa-che-kee           |
| <b>cheque</b>              | <i>okufambisa</i>           | o-koo-faa-mbee-saa              |
| <b>change money</b>        | <i>chinja mari</i>          | chee-njaa maa-ree               |
| <b>withdraw money</b>      | <i>dhirowa mari</i>         | dee-ro-waa maa-ree              |

|                            |                           |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>I want to ...</b>       | <i>Ndinoda ku-...</i>     | ndee-no-daa koo-...             |
| <b>buy a phonecard</b>     | <i>tenga kadhi refoni</i> | te-ngaa-kaa-dee-re-fo-nee       |
| <b>call (Singapore)</b>    | <i>fonera (kuSingapo)</i> | fo-ne-raa (koo-see-ngaa-po)     |
| <b>reverse the charges</b> | <i>rivhesa machaji</i>    | ree-vhe-saa maa-chaa-jee        |
| <b>use a printer</b>       | <i>shandisai purinda</i>  | shaa-ndee-saa-ee poo-ree-ndaa   |
| <b>use the internet</b>    | <i>shandisai indaneti</i> | shaa-ndee-saa-ee ee-ndaa-ne-tee |

**How much is it per hour?**

*Imarii paawa?* ee-maa-ree-ee paa-aa-waa

**How much does a (three-minute) call cost?**

*Kufona kwe (maminitsi matatu)* koo-fo-naa kwe (maa-mee-nee-tsee maa-taa-too)  
*kunoita marii?* koo-no-ee-taa maa-ree-ee

**(One dollar) per minute/hour.**

*(Dhora rimwe) paminiti/paawa.* (do-raa-ree-mwe) paa-mee-nee-tee/paa-aa-waa

## tours

|                             |                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>When's the next ...?</b> | <i>Ko ... rini?</i>               | ko ... ree-nee                      |
| <b>day trip</b>             | <i>rwendo rwanhasi</i>            | rwe-ndo rwaa-nhaa-see               |
|                             | <i>runotevera ruriko</i>          | roo-no-te-ve-raa roo-re-ko          |
| <b>tour</b>                 | <i>tuwa inotevera</i>             | too-waa ee-no-te-ve-raa             |
|                             | <i>iriko</i>                      | ee-ree-ko                           |
| <b>Is ... included?</b>     | <i>Ko ... -kasanganiswa here?</i> | ko ... -kaa-saa-ngaa-nee-swaa he-re |
| <b>accommodation</b>        | <i>pokurara pa</i>                | po-koo-raa-raa paa                  |
| <b>the admission</b>        | <i>mari yokupindisa</i>           | maa-ree yo-koo-pee-ndee-saa         |
| <b>charge</b>               | <i>ya</i>                         | yaa                                 |
| <b>food</b>                 | <i>mari yokudya ya</i>            | maa-ree yo-koo-jgaa yaa             |
| <b>transport</b>            | <i>mari yokufambisa ya</i>        | maa-ree yo-koo-faa-mbee-saa yaa     |

### How long is the tour?

*Tuwa ichatora nguva yakadii?* too-waa ee-cha-a-to-raa ngoo-vaa yaa-kaa-d'ee-ee

### What time should we be back?

*Tinofanira kudzoka nenguvaai?* tee-no-faa-nee-raa koo-dzo-kaa ne-ngoo-vaa-ee-ee

## shopping

### I'm looking for ...

*Ndiri kutsvaga ...* ndee-ree koo-tsvaa-gaa ...

### I need film for this camera.

*Ndinoda firimu rekamera iyi.* ndee-no-da fee-ree-moo re-kaa-me-raa ee-yee

### Can I listen to this?

*Ndingateererawo kune izvi here?* ndee-ngaa-te-e-re-raa-wo koo-nee ee-zvee he-re

### Can I have my ... repaired?

*Ndingagadzirirwa ... yangu here?* ndee-ngaa-gaa-dzee-ree-rwaa ... yaa-ngoo he-re

### When will it be ready?

*Inenge yapera rinhi?* ee-ne-nge yaa-pe-raa ree-nee

### How much is it?

*Inoita marii?* ee-o-ee-taa maa-ree-ee

### Can you write down the price?

*Unganyora mutengo wacho pasi here?* oo-ngaa-nyo-raa moo-te-ngo waa-cho paa-see he-re

### What's your lowest price?

*Mutengo wakachipisa ndoupi?* moo-te-ngo waa-kaa-chee-pee-saa ndo-oo-pee

### I'll give you (five) dollars.

*Ndinokupai madhora (mashanu).* ndee-no-koo-paa-ee maa-do-raa (maa-shaa-noo)

### There's a mistake in the bill.

*Pane chakanganiswa pabhiri.* pa-ne chaa-kaa-ngaa-nee-swaa paa-bee-ree

### It's faulty.

*Rakanyangara.* raa-kaa-nyaa-ngaa-raa

### I'd like a receipt/refund, please.

*Ndinodawo risiti/rifandi.* ndee-no-daa-wo ree-see-tee/ree-faa-ndee

### Do you accept ...?

|                           |                            |                             |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>credit cards</b>       | <i>Munobvuma ... here?</i> | moo-no-bvoo-maa ... he-re   |
| <b>debit cards</b>        | <i>makiredhiti kadzi</i>   | maa-kee-re-dee-tee kaa-dzee |
| <b>travellers cheques</b> | <i>madhebhati kadzi</i>    | ma-de-bee-tee ka-dzee       |
|                           | <i>macheki</i>             | maa-che-kee                 |
|                           | <i>okufambisa</i>          | oo-koo-faa-mbee-saa         |

### Could you ...?

|                                      |                        |                         |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>burn a CD from my memory card</b> | <i>Munga ... here?</i> | moo-nga ... he-re       |
|                                      | <i>pisa CD kubva</i>   | pee-sa see-dee koo-bvaa |
|                                      | <i>mumemori</i>        | moo-me-mo-ree           |
|                                      | <i>kadhi rangu</i>     | kaa-dee raa-ngoo        |
| <b>develop this film</b>             | <i>dhivheropai</i>     | dee-vhe-ro-pa-ee        |
|                                      | <i>firimu iri</i>      | fee-ree-moo ee-ree      |

## making conversation

### Hello.

### Good night.

### Goodbye.

### Mr

### Ms

### Ms/Miss

### How are you?

### Fine, and you?

### What's your name?

### My name's ...

### I'm pleased to

### meet you.

### Mhoroi.

### Rarai zvakanaka.

### Tichaonana.

### Va-

### Mai

### Muzvare

### Makadii?

### Ndiripo makadiiwo?

### Zita renyu ndiani?

### Zita rangu ndinonzi ...

### Ndinofara

### kukuzivai.

### mho-ro-ee

### raa-raa-ee zvaa-kaa-naa-kaa

### tee-cha-a-o-naa-naa

### vaa-

### maa-ee

### moo-zvaa-re

### maa-kaa-d'ee-ee

### ndee-ree-po maa-kaa-d'ee-ee-wo

### zee-taa re-nyoo ndee-aa-nee

### zee-taa raa-ngoo ndee-no-nzee ...

### ndee-no-faa-raa

### koo-koo-zee-vaa-ee

This is my ...

|                                   |                               |                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| boyfriend                         | <i>Uyu mukomana wangu.</i>    | oo-yoo moo-ko-maa-naa<br>waa-ngoo       |
| daughter                          | <i>Uyu mwanasikana wangu.</i> | oo-yoo mwaa-naa-see-kaa-naa<br>waa-ngoo |
| father                            | <i>Ava ndi-baba vangu.</i>    | aa-vaa ndee-b'aa-b'aa vaa-ngoo          |
| friend                            | <i>Iyi ishamwari yangu.</i>   | ee-yee ee-shaa-mwaa-ree<br>yaa-ngoo     |
| girlfriend                        | <i>Uyu musikana wangu.</i>    | oo-yoo moo-see-kaa-naa<br>waa-ngoo      |
| husband                           | <i>Uyu murume wangu.</i>      | oo-yoo moo-roo-me waa-ngoo              |
| mother                            | <i>Ava ndi-amai vangu.</i>    | aa-vaa ndee-aa-maa-ee vaa-ngoo          |
| sibling (of the opposite sex)     | <i>Iyi ihanzvadzi yangu.</i>  | ee-yee ee-haa-nzvaa-dzee<br>yaa-ngoo    |
| sibling (elder of the same sex)   | <i>Uyu mukoma wangu.</i>      | oo-yoo moo-ko-maa waa-ngoo              |
| sibling (younger of the same sex) | <i>Uyu munin'ina wangu.</i>   | oo-yoo moo-nee-ngee-naa<br>waa-ngoo     |
| son                               | <i>Uyu mwanakomana wangu.</i> | oo-yoo mwaa-naa-ko-maa-naa<br>waa-ngoo  |
| wife                              | <i>Ava vadzimai vangu.</i>    | aa-vaa vaa-dzee-maa-ee vaa-ngoo         |
| Here's my ...                     | <i>Heyi ... yangu.</i>        | he-yee ... yaa-ngoo                     |
| What's your ...?                  | <i>Ko ... yenyu ndiani?</i>   | ko ... ye-nyoo ndee-aa-nee              |
| (email) address                   | <i>(imeiri) adhiresi</i>      | (ee-me-ree) a-dee-re-see                |
| phone number                      | <i>nhamba yefoni</i>          | nhaa-mbaa ye-fo-nee                     |

Where are you from? *Munobva kupi?* moo-no-bvaa koo-pee

|              |                        |                      |
|--------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| I'm from ... | <i>Ndinobva ku ...</i> | ndee-no-bvaa koo ... |
| Australia    | <i>Ositireriya</i>     | o-see-tee-re-ree-yaa |
| Canada       | <i>Kanadha</i>         | kaa-naa-daa          |
| New Zealand  | <i>Nyuzirandi</i>      | nyoo-zee-raa-ndee    |

|                              |                                         |                                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| I'm married. <b>m</b>        | <i>Ndakaroora.</i>                      | ndaa-kaa-ro-o-raa                                 |
| I'm married. <b>f</b>        | <i>Ndakaroorwa.</i>                     | ndaa-kaa-ro-o-rwaa                                |
| I'm not married. <b>m</b>    | <i>Handina kuroora.</i>                 | haa-ndee-naa koo-ro-o-raa                         |
| I'm not married. <b>f</b>    | <i>Handina kuroorwa.</i>                | haa-ndee-naa koo-ro-o-rwaa                        |
| Can I take a photo (of you)? | <i>Ndingatora pikicha (inewe) here?</i> | ndee-ngaa-to-raa pee-kee-chaa<br>(ee-ne-we) he-re |

## eating out

|                                       |                                             |                                                        |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Can you recommend a ...?              | <i>Munga-rekomenda ... here?</i>            | moo-nga-re-ko-me-ndaa<br>... he-re                     |
| bar                                   | <i>bhawa</i>                                | baa-waa                                                |
| dish                                  | <i>chokudya</i>                             | cho-koo-jgaa                                           |
| place to eat                          | <i>nzvimbo yokudyira</i>                    | nzvee-mbo yo-koo-jgee-raa                              |
| I'd like ..., please.                 | <i>Ndingadawo ...</i>                       | ndee-ngaa-daa-wo ...                                   |
| the bill                              | <i>bhiri</i>                                | bee-ree                                                |
| the menu                              | <i>minyu</i>                                | mee-nyoo                                               |
| a table for (two)                     | <i>tebhuru ye (vaviri)</i>                  | te-boo-roo ye (vaa-vee-ree)                            |
| that dish                             | <i>chikafu icho</i>                         | chee-kaa-foo ee-cho                                    |
| Do you have vegetarian food?          | <i>Mune kudya kwechi-vhegiterieni here?</i> | moo-ne koo-jga kwe-chee-<br>vhe-gee-te-ree-e-nee he-re |
| Could you prepare a meal without ...? | <i>Mungagadzira kudya kusina ... here?</i>  | moo-ngaa-gaa-dzee-raa koo-jga<br>koo-see-naa ... he-re |
| eggs                                  | <i>mazai</i>                                | maa-zaa-ee                                             |
| meat stock                            | <i>muto wenyama</i>                         | mo-to we-nyaa-maa                                      |
| (cup of) coffee/tea ...               | <i>(kapu ye-)kofi/tii ...</i>               | (kaa-poo ye-)ko-fee/tee-ee ...                         |
| with milk                             | <i>ine mukaka</i>                           | ee-ne moo-kaa-kaa                                      |
| without sugar                         | <i>isina shuga</i>                          | ee-see-naa shoo-gaa                                    |
| (boiled) water                        | <i>mvura (yakavidzwa)</i>                   | mvoo-raa (yaa-kaa-vee-dzwaa)                           |

## emergencies

|                              |                                   |                                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Call ...!                    | <i>Daidzai ...!</i>               | d'aa-ee-dzaa-ee ...                   |
| an ambulance                 | <i>ambhurenzi</i>                 | aam-boo-re-nzee                       |
| a doctor                     | <i>dhokotera</i>                  | do-ko-te-raa                          |
| the police                   | <i>mapurisa</i>                   | maa-poo-ree-saa                       |
| Could you help me, please?   | <i>Mungandibatsirawo here?</i>    | moo-ngaa-ndee-b'aa-tsee-raa-wo he-re  |
| Where are the toilets?       | <i>Zvimbudzi zviri kupi?</i>      | zvee-mboo-dzee zvee-ree koo-pee       |
| I want to report an offence. | <i>Ndinoda kumhan'ara mhosva.</i> | ndee-no-daa koo-mha-ngaa-raa mho-svaa |

**I have insurance.**

*Ndine ishuwareenzi.* ndee-ne ee-shoo-waa-re-nzee

**I want to contact my consulate/embassy.**

*Ndinoda kutaura neEmbasi yangu.* ndee-no-d'aa koo-taa-oo-raa ne-e-mba-see yaa-ngoo

**My bags were stolen.**

*Mabhegi angu abiwa.* maa-bhe-gee aa-ngoo aa-b'ee-waa

**My passport was stolen.**

*Pasipoti rangu rabiwa.* paa-see-po-tee raa-ngoo raa-b'ee-waa

**My wallet was stolen.**

*Chikwama changu chabiwa.* chee-kwaa-maa chaa-ngoo chaa-b'ee-waa

**I've been assaulted.**

*Ndarohwa.* ndaa-roh-waa

**I've been raped.**

*Ndabatwa chibharo.* ndaa-baa-twaa chee-ba-ro

**I've been robbed.**

*Ndabirwa.* ndaa-bee-rwaa

**medical needs****Where's the nearest dentist?**

*Chiremba wemazino ari pedyo pedyo ari kupi?* chee-re-mbaa we-maa-zee-no aa-ree pe-jgo pe-jgo aa-ree koo-pee

**Where's the nearest doctor?**

*Dhokotera ari pedyo pedyo ari kupi?* do-ko-te-raa aa-ree pe-jgo pe-jgo aa-ree koo-pee

**Where's the nearest pharmacist?**

*Famasi iri pedyo pedyo iri kupi?* faa-maa-see ee-ree pe-jgo pe-jgo ee-ree koo-pee

**I need a doctor (who speaks English).**

*Ndinoda dhokotera (anotaura chiNgezi).* ndee-no-d'aa do-ke-te-raa (aa-no-taa-oo-raa chee-nge-zee)

**Could I see a female doctor?**

*Ndingaonawo dhokotera wechikadzi here?* ndee-ngaa-o-naa-wo do-ko-te-raa we-chee-kaa-dzee he-re

**It hurts here.**

*Panorwadza ndapapa.* paa-no-rwaa-dzaa ndaa-paa-paa

**I'm allergic to (penicillin).**

*Muviri wangu unosema (penesirini).* moo-vee-ree waa-ngoo oo-no-se-maa (pe-ne-see-ree-nee)

**english–shona dictionary**

In this dictionary, words are marked as **n** (noun), **a** (adjective), **v** (verb), **sg** (singular), **pl** (plural), **inf** (informal) and **pol** (polite) where necessary.

**A**

**accommodation** pokurara po-koo-raa-raa  
**adaptor** adhaputa aa-daa-poo-taa  
**after** musure moo-soo-re  
**airport** nhandare yendege nhaa-ndaa-re ye-nde-ge  
**alcohol** hwahwa hwaa-hwaa  
**all** -ose -o-se  
**allergy** rusemo roo-se-mo  
**and** na- naa-  
**ankle** ziso regumbo zee-so re-goo-mbo  
**antibiotics** mapiritsi okudzivirira  
 maa-pee-ree-tsee o-koo-dzee-vee-ree-raa  
**arm** ruoka roo-o-ko  
**asthma** asima a-see-maa  
**ATM** ATM ay-tee-em

**B**

**baby** mucheche moo-che-che  
**back (body)** musana moo-saa-naa  
**backpack** nhava yokumusana  
 nhaa-vaa yo-koo-moo-saa-naa  
**bad** -ipa -ee-paa  
**baggage claim** kunotorwa mabhegi  
 koo-no-to-rwaa maa-be-gee  
**bank** bhangi baa-ngee  
**bathroom** imba yokugezera ee-mbaa yo-koo-ge-ze-ra  
**battery** bhatiri baa-tee-ree  
**beautiful** kunaka koo-naa-kaa  
**bed** mubhedha moo-be-daa  
**beer** doro do-ro  
**bees** nyuchi nyoo-chee  
**before** pasure paa-soo-re  
**bicycle** bhasikoro baa-see-ko-ro  
**big** -kuru -koo-roo  
**blanket** jira jee-raa  
**blood group** chikamu cheropa chee-kaa-moo che-ro-paa  
**bottle** bhodhoro bo-do-ro  
**bottle opener** chivhuro chebhodhoro  
 chee-vhoo-ro che-bo-do-ro  
**boy** mukomana moo-ko-maa-naa  
**brakes (car)** mabhureki maa-boo-re-kee  
**breakfast** bhurekifasi boo-re-kee-faa-see  
**bronchitis** chirwere chemapapu  
 chee-rwe-re che-maa-paa-pu

**C**

**café** kafe kaa-fe  
**cancel** kanzura kaa-nzoo-raa  
**can opener** chivhuro chegaba  
 chee-vhoo-ro che-gaa-b'aa  
**cash** **n** keshi ke-shee  
**cell phone** serifoni se-ree-fo-nee  
**centre** **n** pakati paa-kaa-tee  
**cheap** chipa chee-paa  
**check (bill)** cheki che-kee  
**check-in** pokuchekaini po-koo-che-kaa-ee-nee  
**chest** chipfuva chee-pfoo-vaa  
**child** mwana mwaa-naa  
**cigarette** mudzanga moo-dzaa-ngaa  
**city** guta goo-taa  
**clean** **a** chena che-naa  
**closed** vharwa vhaa-rwaa  
**cold** **a** -tonhora -to-nho-raa  
**collect call** rivhesi chaji ree-ve-see chaa-jee  
**condom** kondomu ko-ndo-moo  
**constipation** kupatirwa koo-paa-tee-rwaa  
**contact lenses** makondakiti renzi  
 maa-ko-ndaa-kee-tee re-nzee  
**cough** **n** -kosora -ko-so-raa  
**currency exchange** kuchinjirwa kwemari  
 koo-chee-njee-waa kwe-maa-ree  
**customs (immigration)** kupinda nokubuda  
 koo-pee-ndaa no-koo-b'oo-d'aa

**D**

**dairy products** zvine mukaka zvee-ne moo-ka-ka  
**dangerous** -ne ngozi -ne ngo-zee  
**date (time)** musi we (nguva) moo-see we (ngoo-vaa)  
**day** zuva zoo-vaa  
**diaper** napukeni naa-poo-ke-nee  
**diarrhoea** manyoka maa-nyo-kaa  
**dinner** zvokudya zo-koo-jgaa  
**dirty** tsvina tsvee-naa  
**disabled** chikoshwa chee-ko-shaa  
**double bed** mubhedha wevanhu vaviri  
 moo-be-daa we-vaa-nhoo vaa-vee-ree  
**drink** **n** chokunwa cho-koo-nwaa  
**drivers licence** raisenzi yemotokari  
 raa-ee-se-nzee ye-mo-to-kaa-ree  
**drug (illicit)** dhiragi dee-raa-gee

## E

ear *nzeve* nze-ve  
 east *madokero* maa-do-ke-ro  
 economy class *mbhombhera* mbo-mbe-raa  
 elevator *rifuti* ree-foo-tee  
 email *imeri* ee-me-ree  
 English (language) *chiNgezi* chee-nge-zee  
 exchange rate *reti yokochinja mari*  
   re-tee yo-ko-chee-njaa maa-ree  
 exit *pokubuda napo* po-koo-b'oo-d'aa naa-po  
 expensive *-dhura* -doo-raa  
 eye *ziso* zee-so

## F

fast *-kurumidza* -koo-roo-mee-dzaa  
 fever *hosha* ho-shaa  
 finger *munwe* moo-nwe  
 first-aid kit *bhokisi refesiti eidhi*  
   bo-kee-see re-fe-see-tee e-ee-dee  
 first class *kutopa* koo-to-paa  
 fish *hove* ho-ve  
 food *kudya* koo-jgaa  
 foot *tsoka* tso-kaa  
 fork *foroko* fo-ro-kaa  
 free (of charge) *mahara* ma-haa-raa  
 fruit *muchero* moo-che-ro  
 funny *-setsa* -se-tsaa

## G

game park *gemupaki* maa-ge-moo-paa-kee  
 gift *chipa* chee-po  
 girl *musikana* moo-see-kaa-naa  
 glass (drinking) *girazi* gee-kaa-zee  
 glasses *magirazi* ma-gee-raa-zee  
 gluten *-rembuka* -re-mboo-kaa  
 good *-naka* -na-kaa  
 gram *giramu* gee-kaa-moo  
 guide *mutungamiriri* moo-too-ngaa-mee-ree-ree

## H

hand *ruoko* roo-o-ko  
 happy *-fara* -faa-raa  
 have *-ne* -ne  
 he *a-* aa-  
 head *musoro* moo-so-ro  
 headache *kutemwa nemusoro* koo-te-mwaa ne-moo-so-ro  
 heart *moyo* mo-yo

heart condition *chirwere chemoyo* chee-rwe-re che-mo-yo  
 heat *n kudziya* koo-dzee-yaa  
 here *pano* paa-no  
 high *-refu* -re-foo  
 highway *mugwagwa* moo-gwaa-gwaa  
 homosexual *n ngochani* ngo-chaa-nee  
 homosexual *a hungochani* hoo-ngo-chaa-nee  
 hot *-pisa* -pee-saa  
 hungry *-ne nzara* -ne nzaa-raa

## I

I *Ini* ee-nee  
 identification (card) *chitupa* chee-too-paa  
 ill *-rwara* -rwaa-raa  
 important *-koshu* -ko-shaa  
 internet *Indaneti* ee-ndaa-ne-tee  
 interpreter *muturikiri* moo-too-ree-kee-ree

## K

key *kiyi* kee-yee  
 kilogram *kirogiramu* kee-ro-gee-raa-moo  
 kitchen *imba yokubikira* ee-mbaa yo-koo-b'ee-kee-raa  
 knife *banga* b'aa-ngaa

## L

laundry (place) *imba yokuwachira*  
   ee-mbaa yo-koo-waa-chee-raa  
 lawyer *gweta* gwe-taa  
 left-luggage office *pahofisi panosiwa nhumbi*  
   paa-ho-fee-see pa-no-see-ee-waa nhoo-mbee  
 leg *gumbo* goo-mbo  
 lesbian *n ngochani* ngo-chaa-nee  
 lesbian *a hungochani* hoo-ngo-chaa-nee  
 less *hafuka* haa-foo-ka  
 letter (mail) *tsamba* tsaa-mbaa  
 like *v -da* -d'aa  
 lost-property office  
   *pahofisi panochengetedzwa zvakarasiika*  
   paa-hof-ee-see paa-no-che-nge-te-dzwa  
   zva-kaa-raa-see-kaa  
 love *v -da* -daa  
 lunch *ranji* raa-njee

## M

man *murume* moo-roo-me  
 matches *machisi* maa-chee-see  
 meat *nyama* nyaa-maa

medicine *mushonga* moo-sho-ngaa  
 message *shoko* sho-ko  
 mobile phone *serifoni* se-ree-fo-nee  
 month *mwedzi* mwe-dzee  
 morning *mangwanani* ma-ngwaa-naa-nee  
 motorcycle *mudhudhudhu* moo-doo-doo-doo  
 mouth *muromo* moo-ro-mo  
 movie *firimu* fee-ree-moo  
 MSG *MSG* em-es-jee  
 museum *muziyamu* moo-zee-ya-moo  
 music *mumanzi* moo-maa-nzee

## N

name *n zita* zee-taa  
 napkin *napukeni* naa-poo-ke-nee  
 nappy *mutambo* moo-taa-mbo  
 national park *neshinari paki* ne-shee-naa-ree paa-kee  
 nausea *chisvoto* chee-swo-to  
 neck *huro* hoo-ro  
 new *-tsva* -tsvaa  
 news *nha* nha-oo  
 newspaper *bepanhau* be-paa-nha-oo  
 night *usiku* oo-see-koo  
 nightclub *naiti kirabhu* na-ee-tee kee-raa-bu  
 noisy *ruzha* roo-zha  
 nonsmoking *hapaputirwi fodya*  
   haa-paa-poo-tee-rwee fo-jgaa  
 north *maodzanyemba* ma-o-dzaa-nye-mbaa  
 nose *mhino* m-hee-no  
 now *ikozvino* ee-ko-zvee-no  
 number *nhamba* nhaa-mbaa  
 nuts *nzungu* nzoo-ngoo

## O

oil (engine) *airi* o-ee-ree  
 OK *okeyi* o-ke-yee  
 old *tsaru* tsaa-roo  
 open *a vhurika* vho-ree-kaa  
 outside *panze* paa-nze

## P

package *pakeji* paa-ke-jee  
 pain *chirwadzo* chee-rwaa-dzo  
 palace *dzimababwe* dzee-mbaa-bwe  
 paper *bepa* b'e-paa  
 park (car) *v -paka* -paa-kaa  
 passport *pasipoti* paa-see-po-tee  
 pay *-bhadhara* -baa-daa-raa  
 pen *chinyoreso* chee-nyo-re-so

petrol *peturo* pe-tu-ro  
 pharmacy *famasai* faa-maa-see  
 plate *ndiro* ndee-ro  
 postcard *positikadhi* po-see-tee-kaa-dee  
 post office *hofisi yetsamba* ho-fee-see ye-tsaa-mbaa  
 pregnant *-ne nhumbu* -ne noo-mboo

## R

rain *n mvura* mvoo-ra  
 registered mail *tsamba yaka rejisitiwa*  
   tsaa-mbaa yaa-kaa re-jee-see-tee-waa  
 rent *v -renda* -re-ndaa  
 repair *v -gadziira* -gaa-dzee-raa  
 reservation *kurizevha* koo-ree-ze-vhaa  
 restaurant *resitorendi* re-see-to-re-ndee  
 return *v -dzoka* -dzo-kaa  
 road *mugwagwa* moo-gwaa-gwaa  
 room *imba* ee-mbaa

## S

sad *-suruvara* -soo-roo-vaa-raa  
 safe *a banya* baa-nyaa  
 sanitary napkin *chidhende* chee-de-nde  
 seafood *chokudya chomumvura*  
   cho-koo-jgaa cho-moo-mvoo-raa  
 seat *chigaro* chee-gaa-ro  
 send *-tuma* -too-maa  
 (have) sex *-svirana* -swee-raa-naa  
 shampoo *shambu* shaa-mboo  
 share (a dorm, etc) *kusheya* koo-she-yaa  
 shaving cream *kirimu yokushevha*  
   kee-ree-moo yo-koo-she-vhaa  
 she *a-* aa-  
 sheet (bed) *shiti (bhedha)* shee-tee (be-daa)  
 shirt *hembe* he-mbe  
 shoes *shangu* shaa-ngoo  
 shop *n chitoro* chee-to-ro  
 shower *n shawa* shaa-waa  
 skin *ganda* gaa-ndaa  
 skirt *siketi* see-ke-tee  
 sleep *v -rara* -raa-raa  
 small *-diki* -d'ee-kee  
 smoke (cigarettes) *v -puta* -poo-taa  
 soap *sipo* see-po  
 some *-mwe* -mwe  
 soon *iko zvino* ee-ko zvee-no  
 sore throat *-karakata* -kaa-raa-kaa-taa  
 south *chamhembe* chaa-mhe-mbe  
 souvenir shop *chitoro chesuvheniya*  
   chee-to-ro che-soo-vhe-nee-yaa

## N

© Lonely Planet Publications

**speak** -*taura* -taa-oo-raa  
**spoon** *chipunu* chee-poo-noo  
**stamp**  $\cap$  *chitambi* chee-taa-mbee  
**station (train)** *chiteshi chechitima*  
 chee-te-shee che-chee-tee-maa  
**stomach** *dumbu* d'oo-mboo  
**stop**  $\vee$  -*mira* -mee-raa  
**stop (bus)**  $\cap$  *chiteshi chebhazi* chee-te-shee che-baa-zee  
**street** *mugwagwa* moo-gwaa-gwaa  
**student** *mudzidzi* moo-dzee-dzee  
**sunscreen** *mafuta okudzivirira zuva*  
 maa-foo-taa o-koo-dzee-vee-ree-raa zoo-vaa  
**swim**  $\vee$  -*shambira* -shaa-mbee-raa

## T

**tampons** *matambuni* maa-taa-mboo-nee  
**teeth** *mazino* maa-zee-no  
**telephone**  $\cap$  *fon* fo-nee  
**television** *terevhizhini* te-re-vhee-zhee-nee  
**temperature (weather)** *temburicha* te-mboo-ree-cha  
**tent** *tende* te-nde  
**that (one)** *icho* ee-cho  
**they (lit: people)** *ivo* ee-vo  
**thirsty** -*ne nyota* -ne nyo-taa  
**this (one)** *ichi* ee-chee  
**throat** *huro* hoo-ro  
**ticket** *tikiti* tee-kee-tee  
**time** *nguva* ngoo-vaa  
**tired** -*neta* -ne-taa  
**tissues** *matishu* maa-tee-shoo  
**today** *nhasi* nhaa-see  
**toilet** *chimbudzi* chee-mboo-dzee  
**tonight** *usiku hwuno* oo-see-koo hwoo-no  
**toothache** *kurwadza kwezino* koo-rwaa-dza kwe-zee-no  
**toothbrush** *bhurashi remazino* boo-raa-shee re-maa-zee-no  
**toothpaste** *mushonga wemazino*  
 moo-sho-ngaa we-maa-zee-no  
**torch (flashlight)** *tochi* to-chee  
**tourist office** *hofisi yetuwarizimu*  
 ho-fee-see ye-too-waa-ree-zee-moo  
**towel** *tauro* taa-oo-ro  
**translate** -*turikira* -too-ree-kee-raa  
**travel agency** *tiraveri ajendi* tee-raa-ve-ree aa-je-ndee  
**travellers cheque** *macheki okufambisa*  
 maa-che-kee o-koo-faa-mbee-saa  
**trousers** *mabhurukwa* maa-boo-roo-kwaa

**twin beds** *imba ine mibhedha miviri*  
 ee-mba ee-ne mee-be-daa mee-vee-ree  
**tyre** *taya* taa-yaa

## U

**underwear** *nduwe* ndoo-we  
**urgent** *kukurumidza* koo-koo-roo-mee-dzaa

## V

**vacant** *pane nzvimbo* paa-ne nvee-mbo  
**vegetable**  $\cap$  *muriwo* moo-ree-wo  
**vegetarian**  $\Delta$  *muvehijiteriyeni* moo-vhe-jee-te-ree-ye-nee  
**visa** *vhiza* vhee-zaa

## W

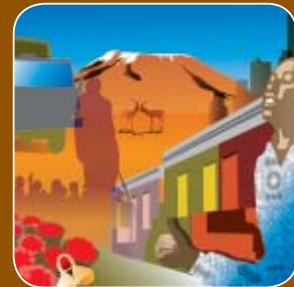
**waiter** *hweta* hwe-taa  
**walk**  $\vee$  -*famba* -faa-mbaa  
**wallet** *chikwama* chee-kwaa-maa  
**warm**  $\Delta$  -*dziya* -dzee-yaa  
**wash (something)** -*geza* -ge-zaa  
**watch**  $\cap$  *wachi* waa-chee  
**water** *mvura* mvoo-raa  
**we** *ti*-tee-  
**weekend** *hwikendi* hwee-ke-ndee  
**west** *madokero* maa-d'o-ke-ro  
**wheelchair** *hwirichya* hwee-ree-che-yaa  
**when** *rini* ree-nee  
**where (at what place)** *papi* paa-pee  
**where (in what place)** *mupi* moo-pee  
**where (to where)** *kupi* koo-pee  
**who** *ani* aa-nee  
**why** *sei* se-ee  
**window** *hwindo* hwee-ndo  
**wine** *waini* waa-ee-nee  
**with** *ne*-ne-  
**without** -*sina* -see-naa  
**woman** *mukadzi* moo-kaa-dzee  
**write** *nyora* nyo-raa

## Y

**you** *sg inf/pol iwe/imi* ee-we/ee-mee  
**you** *pl inf&pol imi* ee-mee

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# Swahili



## Vowels

| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | English sound              | Symbol | English sound                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------------|
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | father                     | b      | bed                                     |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | see                        | ch     | cheat                                   |
| ey                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | as in 'bet',<br>but longer | d      | dog                                     |
| oh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | note                       | dh     | that                                    |
| oo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | zoo                        | f      | fun                                     |
| <p>In this chapter, the Swahili pronunciation is given in brown after each phrase.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot, and the syllable stressed in each word is italicised.</p> <p>For example:<br/><i>Habari.</i>    haa-baa-ree</p> |                            | g      | go                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | h      | hat                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | j      | jar                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | k      | kit                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | l      | lot                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | m      | man                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | n      | not                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | ng     | ring                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | ny     | canyon                                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | p      | pet                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | r      | run (but softer, more like a light 'd') |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | s      | sun                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | sh     | shot                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | t      | top                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | th     | thin                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | v      | very                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | w      | win                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | y      | yes                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                            | z      | zero                                    |

SWAHILI  
kiswahili

## introduction

Swahili (*kiswahili* kee-swa-hee-lee) is one of the most widely spoken African languages, with an estimated 50 million-plus speakers throughout East Africa. Though it's the mother tongue of only about 4 to 5 million people, it's used as a second language or a lingua franca by speakers of many other African languages. Swahili is the national language of Tanzania and Kenya and is widely used in Uganda, Rwanda and Burundi, as well as in the eastern part of the Democratic Republic of Congo and on the Indian Ocean islands of Zanzibar and the Comoros. There are speakers of Swahili in the southern parts of Ethiopia and Somalia, the north of Mozambique and Zambia, and even on the northwestern coast of Madagascar. Swahili belongs to the Bantu group of languages from the Niger-Congo family and can be traced back to the first millennium AD. Standard Swahili developed from the urban dialect of Zanzibar City, dominant from precolonial times. Although there are many dialects of Swahili, you'll be understood if you stick to the standard coastal form, as used in this book.

 swahili (native language)

 swahili (generally understood)


## language difficulties

|                         |                              |                                      |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Do you speak (English)? | <i>Unasema (Kiingereza)?</i> | oo-naa-sey-maa (kee-een-gey-rey-zaa) |
| Do you understand?      | <i>Unaelewa?</i>             | oo-naa-ey-ley-waa                    |
| I understand.           | <i>Naelewa.</i>              | naa-ey-ley-waa                       |
| I don't understand.     | <i>Sielewi.</i>              | see-ey-ley-wee                       |
| Could you please ...?   | <i>Tafadhali ...</i>         | taa-faa-dhaa-lee ...                 |
| repeat that             | <i>sema tena</i>             | sey-maa tey-naa                      |
| speak more slowly       | <i>sema pole pole</i>        | sey-maa poh-ley poh-ley              |
| write it down           | <i>andika</i>                | aan-dee-kaa                          |

## time, dates & numbers

|                     |                                                                                      |                                                            |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| What time is it?    | <i>Ni saa ngapi?</i>                                                                 | nee saa n-gaa-pee                                          |
| It's one o'clock.   | <i>Ni saa saba.</i>                                                                  | nee saa saa-baa                                            |
| It's (two) o'clock. | <i>Ni saa (nane).</i>                                                                | nee saa (naa-ne)                                           |
| Quarter past (one). | <i>Ni saa (saba) na robo.</i>                                                        | nee saa (saa-baa) naa roh-boh                              |
| Half past (one).    | <i>Ni saa (saba) na nusu.</i>                                                        | nee saa (saa-baa) naa noo-soo                              |
| Quarter to (ten).   | <i>Ni saa (nne) kasarobo.</i>                                                        | nee saa (n-ney) kaa-saa-roh-boh                            |
| At what time ...?   | <i>... saa ngapi?</i>                                                                | ... saa n-gaa-pee                                          |
| At ...              | <i>Saa ...</i>                                                                       | saa ...                                                    |
| It's (18 October).  | <i>Ni (tarehe kumi na nane, mwezi wa kumi).</i><br>(lit: date eighteen, month tenth) | nee (taa-rey-hey koo-mee naa naa-ney mwey-zee waa koo-mee) |

|           |                 |                        |
|-----------|-----------------|------------------------|
| yesterday | <i>jana</i>     | <i>jaa-naa</i>         |
| today     | <i>leo</i>      | <i>ley-oh</i>          |
| tomorrow  | <i>kesho</i>    | <i>key-shoh</i>        |
| Monday    | <i>Jumatatu</i> | <i>joo-maa-taa-too</i> |
| Tuesday   | <i>Jumanne</i>  | <i>joo-maa-n-ney</i>   |
| Wednesday | <i>Jumatano</i> | <i>joo-maa-taa-noh</i> |
| Thursday  | <i>Alhamisi</i> | <i>aal-haa-mee-see</i> |
| Friday    | <i>Ijumaa</i>   | <i>ee-joo-maa</i>      |
| Saturday  | <i>Jumamosi</i> | <i>joo-maa-moh-see</i> |
| Sunday    | <i>Jumapili</i> | <i>joo-maa-pee-lee</i> |

## numbers

|    |                      |                       |      |                     |                     |
|----|----------------------|-----------------------|------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 0  | <i>sifuri</i>        | see-foo-ree           | 17   | <i>kumi na saba</i> | koo-mee naa saa-baa |
| 1  | <i>moja</i>          | moh-jaa               | 18   | <i>kumi na nane</i> | koo-mee naa naa-ney |
| 2  | <i>mbili</i>         | m-bee-lee             | 19   | <i>kumi na tisa</i> | koo-mee naa tee-saa |
| 3  | <i>tatu</i>          | taa-too               | 20   | <i>ishirini</i>     | ee-shee-ree-nee     |
| 4  | <i>nne</i>           | n-ney                 | 21   | <i>ishirini</i>     | ee-shee-ree-nee     |
| 5  | <i>tano</i>          | taa-noh               |      | <i>na moja</i>      | naa moh-jaa         |
| 6  | <i>sita</i>          | see-taa               | 22   | <i>ishirini</i>     | ee-shee-ree-nee     |
| 7  | <i>saba</i>          | saa-baa               |      | <i>na mbili</i>     | naa m-bee-lee       |
| 8  | <i>nane</i>          | naa-ney               | 30   | <i>thelathini</i>   | they-laa-thee-nee   |
| 9  | <i>tisa</i>          | tee-saa               | 40   | <i>arobaini</i>     | aa-roh-baa-ee-nee   |
| 10 | <i>kumi</i>          | koo-mee               | 50   | <i>hamsini</i>      | haam-see-nee        |
| 11 | <i>kumi na moja</i>  | koo-mee naa moh-jaa   | 60   | <i>sitini</i>       | see-tee-nee         |
| 12 | <i>kumi na mbili</i> | koo-mee naa m-bee-lee | 70   | <i>sabini</i>       | saa-bee-nee         |
| 13 | <i>kumi na tatu</i>  | koo-mee naa taa-too   | 80   | <i>themanini</i>    | they-maa-nee-nee    |
| 14 | <i>kumi na nne</i>   | koo-mee naa n-ney     | 90   | <i>tisini</i>       | tee-see-nee         |
| 15 | <i>kumi na tano</i>  | koo-mee naa taa-noh   | 100  | <i>mia moja</i>     | mee-aa moh-jaa      |
| 16 | <i>kumi na sita</i>  | koo-mee naa see-taa   | 1000 | <i>elfu</i>         | eyl-foo             |



## border crossing

|                                 |                           |                                   |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| I'm ...                         | <i>Mimi ni ...</i>        | <i>mee-mee nee ...</i>            |
| in transit                      | <i>safarini</i>           | <i>saa-faa-ree-nee</i>            |
| on business                     | <i>kwa biashara</i>       | <i>kwaa bee-aa-shaa-raa</i>       |
| on holiday                      | <i>kwa likizo</i>         | <i>kwaa lee-kee-zoh</i>           |
| I'm here for ...                | <i>Nipo kwa ...</i>       | <i>nee-poh kwaa ...</i>           |
| (three) days                    | <i>siku (tatu)</i>        | <i>see-koo (taa-too)</i>          |
| (two) weeks                     | <i>wiki (mbili)</i>       | <i>wee-kee (m-bee-lee)</i>        |
| (four) months                   | <i>miezi (minne)</i>      | <i>mee-ey-zee (mee-n-ney)</i>     |
| I'm going to (Malindi).         | <i>Naenda (Malindi).</i>  | <i>naa-eyn-daa (maa-leen-dee)</i> |
| I'm staying at (the Pendo Inn). | <i>Nakaa (Pendo Inn).</i> | <i>naa-kaa (peyn-doh een)</i>     |

## tickets

|                                                             |                                                                                   |                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| One ... ticket<br>to (Iringa), please.<br>one-way<br>return | <i>Tiketi moja ya ...<br/>kwenda (Iringa).<br/>kwenda tu<br/>kwenda na kurudi</i> | tee-key-tee moh-jaa yaa ...<br>kweyn-daa (ee-reen-gaa)<br>kweyn-daa too<br>kweyn-daa naa koo-roo-dee |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                      |                                                                                           |                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like to ... my<br>ticket, please.<br>cancel<br>change<br>confirm | <i>Nataka ... tiketi<br/>yangu, tafadhali.<br/>kufuta<br/>kubadilisha<br/>kuhakikisha</i> | naa-taa-kaa ... tee-key-tee<br>yaan-goo taa-faa-dhaa-lee<br>koo-foo-taa<br>koo-baa-dee-lee-shaa<br>koo-haa-kee-kee-shaa |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### I'd like a smoking/nonsmoking seat, please.

|                                                 |                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nataka kiti kuvuta/<br/>kutovuta sigara.</i> | naa-taa-kaa kee-tee koo-voo-taa/<br>koo-toh-voo-taa see-gaa-raa |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|

### Is there a toilet?

|                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| <i>Kuna choo?</i> | koo-naa choh |
|-------------------|--------------|

### Is there a air conditioning?

|                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| <i>Kuna a/c?</i> | koo-naa ey-see |
|------------------|----------------|

### How long does the trip take?

|                                   |                                             |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Safari huchukua muda gani?</i> | saa-faa-ree hoo-choo-koo-aa moo-daa gaa-nee |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

### Is it a direct route?

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Njia ni moja kwa moja?</i> | n-jee-aa nee moh-jaa kwaa moh-jaa |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|



## transport

### Where does flight (number 432) arrive/depart?

|                                                                                  |                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ndege (namba mia nne<br/>thelathini na mbili)<br/>itaфика/itaondoka wapi?</i> | n-dey-gey (naam-baa mee-aa n-ney<br>they-laa-thee-nee naa m-bee-lee)<br>ee-taa-fee-kaa/ee-taa-ohn-doh-kaa waa-pee |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### How long will it be delayed?

|                                  |                                          |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Itachelewa kwa muda gani?</i> | ee-taa-chey-ley-waa kwaa moo-daa gaa-nee |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|

### Is this the ... to (Mombasa)?

|       |                                         |                                         |
|-------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| boat  | <i>Hii ni ... kwenda<br/>(Mombasa)?</i> | hee nee ... kweyn-daa<br>(mohm-baa-saa) |
| bus   | <i>Boti</i>                             | boh-tee                                 |
| plane | <i>Basi</i>                             | baa-see                                 |
| train | <i>Ndege</i>                            | n-dey-gey                               |
|       | <i>Treni</i>                            | treyn-nee                               |

### How much is it to ...?

|                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Ni bei gani kwenda ...?</i> | nee bey gaa-nee kweyn-daa ... |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|

### Please take me to (this address).

|                                                    |                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Tafadhali niendeshe<br/>mpaka (anwani hii).</i> | taa-faa-dhaa-lee nee-eyn-dey-shey<br>m-paa-kaa (aan-waa-nee hee) |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|

### I'd like to hire a car/4WD (with air conditioning).

|                                                        |                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nataka kukodi gari/<br/>forbaifor (kwenye a/c).</i> | naa-taa-kaa koo-koh-dee gaa-ree/<br>fohr-baa-ee-fohr (kweyn-nyey ey-see) |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

|                                          |                                                |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ni bei gani kwa siku/wiki (tatu)?</i> | nee bey gaa-nee kwaa see-koo/wee-kee (taa-too) |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

## directions

### Where's the nearest ...?

|               |                                        |                                               |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| internet café | <i>... hapo karibuni<br/>iko wapi?</i> | ... haa-poh kaa-ree-boo-nee<br>ee-koh waa-pee |
| market        | <i>Intaneti Kafe<br/>Soko</i>          | een-taa-ney-tee kaa-fey<br>soh-koh            |

### Is this the road to (Embu)?

|                                       |                                             |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hii ni barabara kwenda (Embu)?</i> | hee nee baa-raa-baa-raa kweyn-daa (eym-boo) |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

### Can you show me (on the map)?

|                                                 |                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Unaweza kunionyesha<br/>(katika ramani)?</i> | oo-naa-vey-zaa koo-nee-oh-nyey-shaa<br>(kaa-tee-kaa raa-maa-nee) |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|

### What's the address?

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Anwani ni nini?</i> | aan-waa-nee nee nee-nee |
|------------------------|-------------------------|

### How far is it?

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Ni umbali gani?</i> | nee oom-baa-lee gaa-nee |
|------------------------|-------------------------|

### How do I get there?

|                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nifikaje?</i> | nee-fee-kaa-jey |
|------------------|-----------------|

### Turn left/right.

|                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Geuza kushoto/kulia.</i> | gey-oo-zaa koo-shoh-toh/koo-lee-aa |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|

| It's ...        | Iko ...               | ee-koh ...                  |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| behind ...      | <i>nyuma ya ...</i>   | <i>nyoo-maa yaa ...</i>     |
| in front of ... | <i>mbele ya ...</i>   | <i>m-bey-ley yaa ...</i>    |
| near ...        | <i>karibu na ...</i>  | <i>kaa-ree-boo naa ...</i>  |
| next to ...     | <i>jirani ya ...</i>  | <i>jee-raa-nee yaa ...</i>  |
| on the corner   | <i>pembeni</i>        | <i>peym-bey-nee</i>         |
| opposite ...    | <i>ng'ambo ya ...</i> | <i>ng-aam-boh yaa ...</i>   |
| straight ahead  | <i>moja kwa moja</i>  | <i>moh-jaa kwaa moh-jaa</i> |
| there           | <i>hapo</i>           | <i>haa-poh</i>              |

## accommodation

| Where's a ...? | ... iko wapi?            | ... ee-koh waa-pee                  |
|----------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| camping ground | <i>Uwanja wa kambi</i>   | <i>oo-waan-jaa waa kaam-bee</i>     |
| guesthouse     | <i>Gesti</i>             | <i>gey-stee</i>                     |
| hotel          | <i>Hoteli</i>            | <i>hoh-tey-lee</i>                  |
| youth hostel   | <i>Hosteli ya vijana</i> | <i>hoh-stey-lee yaa vee-jaa-naa</i> |

### Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

|                                                     |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Unaweza kunipendeke zea malazi rahisi/nzuri?</i> | <i>oo-naa-wey-zaa koo-nee-peyn-dey-key zey-aa maa-laa-zee raa-hee-see/n-zoo-ree</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### I'd like to book a room, please.

|                                          |                                                            |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nataka kufanya buking, tafadhali.</i> | <i>naa-taa-kaa koo-faa-nyaa boo-keeng taa-faa-dhaa-lee</i> |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|

### I have a reservation.

|                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Nina buking.</i> | <i>nee-naa boo-keeng</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------------|

### How much is it per night/person?

|                                   |                                             |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ni bei gani kwa usiku/mtu?</i> | <i>nee bey gaa-ne kwaa oo-see-koo/m-too</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

### Do you have a ... room? Kuna chumba kwa ...? koo-naa choom-baa kwaa ...

|        |                                    |                                                     |
|--------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| single | <i>mtu mmoja</i>                   | <i>m-too m-moh-jaa</i>                              |
| double | <i>watu wawili, kitanda kimoja</i> | <i>waa-too waa-wee-lee kee-taan-daa kee-moh-jaa</i> |
| twin   | <i>watu wawili, vitanda viwili</i> | <i>waa-too waa-wee-lee vee-taan-daa vee-wee-lee</i> |

### I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

|                                        |                                                        |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nataka kukaa kwa usiku (mbili).</i> | <i>naa-taa-kaa koo-kaa kwaa oo-see-koo (m-bee-lee)</i> |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|

### What time is check-out?

|                                             |                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Muda wa kuachia chumba ni saa ngapi?</i> | <i>moo-daa waa koo-aa-chee-aa choom-baa nee saa n-gaa-pee</i> |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|

### Am I allowed to camp here?

|                                    |                                                    |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Naweza kuwa hapa kwa usiku?</i> | <i>naa-wey-zaa koo-waa haa-paa kwaa oo-see-koo</i> |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|

## banking & communications

| I'd like to ...            | Nataka ...                             | naa-taa-kaa ...                                           |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| cash a cheque              | <i>kulipwa fedha kutokana na hundi</i> | <i>koo-leep-waa fey-dhaa koo-toh-kaa-naa naa hoon-dee</i> |
| change a travellers cheque | <i>kubadilisha hundi ya msafiri</i>    | <i>koo-baa-dee-lee-shaa hoon-dee yaa m-saa-fee-ree</i>    |
| change money               | <i>kubadilisha hela</i>                | <i>koo-baa-dee-lee-shaa hey-laa</i>                       |
| transfer money             | <i>kufikisha hela</i>                  | <i>koo-fee-kee-shaa hey-laa</i>                           |
| withdraw money             | <i>kuondoa hela</i>                    | <i>koo-ohn-doh-aa hey-laa</i>                             |

### I want to ...

|                     |                                    |                                                           |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| buy a phonecard     | <i>kununua kadi ya simu</i>        | <i>naa-taa-kaa ... koo-noo-noo-aa kaa-dee yaa see-moo</i> |
| call (Singapore)    | <i>kupiga simu kwa (Singapore)</i> | <i>koo-pee-gaa see-moo kwaa (seen-gaa-pohr)</i>           |
| reverse the charges | <i>kugeza gharama</i>              | <i>koo-gey-oo-zaa gaa-raa-maa</i>                         |
| use a printer       | <i>kutumia printa</i>              | <i>koo-too-mee-aa preen-taa</i>                           |
| use the internet    | <i>kutumia intaneti</i>            | <i>koo-too-mee-aa een-taa-ney-tee</i>                     |

### How much is it per hour?

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Ni bei gani kwa saa?</i> | <i>nee bey gaa-nee kwaa saa</i> |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|

### How much does a (three)-minute call cost?

|                                                   |                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kupiga simu kwa dakika (tatu) ni bei gani?</i> | <i>koo-pee-gaa see-moo kwaa daa-kee-kaa (taa-too) nee bey gaa-nee</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|

### (1000 shillings) per minute/hour.

|                                             |                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>(Shilingi elfu moja) kwa dakika/saa.</i> | <i>(shee-leen-gee eyl-foo moh-jaa) kwaa daa-kee-kaa/saa</i> |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|

## tours

|                       |                                   |                                          |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| When's the next ...?  | ... ijayo<br><i>itakuwa lini?</i> | ... ee-jaa-yoh<br>ee-taa-koo-waa lee-nee |
| day trip              | <i>Safari ya siku moja</i>        | saa-faa-ree yaa see-koo moh-jaa          |
| tour                  | <i>Safari</i>                     | saa-faa-ree                              |
| Is ... included?      | <i>Inazingatia ...?</i>           | ee-naa-zeen-gaa-tee-aa ...               |
| accommodation         | <i>malazi</i>                     | maa-laa-zee                              |
| food                  | <i>chakula</i>                    | chaa-koo-laa                             |
| the park entrance fee | <i>ada za hifadhi</i>             | aa-daa zaa hee-faa-dhee                  |
| transport             | <i>usafiri</i>                    | oo-saa-fee-ree                           |

### How long is the tour?

|                                    |                                                |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Safari itachukua muda gani?</i> | saa-faa-ree ee-taa-choo-koo-aa moo-daa gaa-nee |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

### What time should we be back?

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Turudi saa ngapi?</i> | too-roo-dee saa n-gaa-pee |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|

## shopping

### I'm looking for ...

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Natafuta ...</i> | naa-taa-foo-taa ... |
|---------------------|---------------------|

### I need film for this camera.

|                                       |                                               |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nahitaji filamu kwa kemra hii.</i> | naa-hee-taa-jee fee-laa-moo kwaa keym-raa hee |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|

### Can I listen to this?

|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Naomba tusikilize.</i> | naa-ohm-baa too-see-kee-lee-zey |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|

### Can I have my ... repaired?

|                                            |                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Mnaweza kutengeneza ... yangu hapa?</i> | m-naa-vey-zaa koo-teyn-gey-ney-zaa ... yaan-goo haa-paa |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|

### When will it be ready?

|                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Itakuwa tayari lini?</i> | ee-taa-koo-waa taa-yaa-ree lee-nee |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|

### How much is it?

|                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>Ni bei gani?</i> | ni bey gaa-nee |
|---------------------|----------------|

### Can you write down the price?

|                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Andika bei.</i> | aan-dee-kaa bey |
|--------------------|-----------------|

### What's your lowest price?

|                              |                                          |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Niambe bei ya mwisho.</i> | nee-aam-bee-ey bey yaa-koh yaa mwee-shoh |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|

### I'll give you (500 shillings).

|                                      |                                                |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nitakupa (shilingi mia tano).</i> | nee-taa-koo-paa (shee-leen-gee mee-aa taa-noh) |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

### There's a mistake in the bill.

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Kuna kosa kwenye bili.</i> | koo-naa koh-saa kweyn-yey bee-lee |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

### It's faulty.

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Haifanyi kazi.</i> | haa-ee-faa-nyee kaa-zee |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|

### I'd like a receipt, please.

|                                  |                                          |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Naomba risiti, tafadhali.</i> | naa-ohm-baa ree-see-tee taa-faa-dhaa-lee |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|

### I'd like a refund, please.

|                                            |                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nataka unirudishie hela, tafadhali.</i> | naa-taa-kaa oo-nee-roo-dee-shee-ey hey-laa taa-faa-dhaa-lee |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|

### Do you accept ...?

|                           |                                    |                                            |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <b>credit cards</b>       | <i>Mnakubali ... kadi ya benki</i> | m-naa-koo-baa-lee ... kaa-dee yaa beyn-kee |
| <b>travellers cheques</b> | <i>hundi ya msafiri</i>            | hoon-dee yaa m-saa-fee-ree                 |

### Could you ...?

|                                      |                                                                       |                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>burn a CD from my memory card</b> | <i>Mnaweza ... kurekodi CD kutoka kadi ya kunakili ya kemra yangu</i> | m-naa-vey-zaa ... koo-ree-koh-dee see-dee koo-toh-kaa kaa-dee yaa koo-naa-kee-lee yaa keym-raa yaan-goo |
| <b>develop this film</b>             | <i>kusafisha picha hizi</i>                                           | koo-saa-fee-shaa pee-chaa hee-zee                                                                       |

## making conversation

### Hello.

### Good night.

### Goodbye.

### Mr

### Mrs

### Ms/Miss

### Habari.

### Usiku mwema.

### Tutaonana.

### Bwana

### Bi

### Bibi

### haa-baa-ree

### oo-see-koo mwey-maa

### too-taa-oh-naa-naa

### bwaa-naa

### bee

### bee-bee

How are you?  
Fine, and you?  
What's your name?  
My name's ...  
I'm pleased to  
meet you.

*Habari?*  
*Nzuri, wewe je?*  
*Jina lako nani?*  
*Jina langu ni ...*  
*Nafurahi*  
*kukufahamu.*

*haa-baa-ree*  
*n-zoo-ree wey-wey jey*  
*jee-naa laa-koh naa-nee*  
*jee-naa laan-goo nee ...*  
*naa-foo-raa-hee*  
*koo-koo-faa-haa-moo*

This is my ...

boyfriend  
brother  
daughter  
father  
friend  
girlfriend  
husband  
mother  
sister  
son  
wife

*Huyu ni ...*  
*mpenzi wangu*  
*kakangu*  
*binti yangu*  
*babangu*  
*rafiki yangu*  
*mpenzi wangu*  
*mume wangu*  
*mamangu*  
*dadangu*  
*mwanangu*  
*mke wangu*

*hoo-yoo nee ...*  
*m-peyn-zee waan-goo*  
*kaa-kaan-goo*  
*been-tee yaan-goo*  
*baa-baan-goo*  
*raa-fee-kee yaan-goo*  
*m-peyn-zee waan-goo*  
*moo-mey waan-goo*  
*maa-maan-goo*  
*daa-daan-goo*  
*mwaa-naan-goo*  
*m-key waan-goo*

Here's my ...

address  
email address  
  
phone number

*Hii ni ... yangu.*  
*anwani*  
*anwani ya*  
*barua pepe*  
*simu*

*hee nee ... yaan-goo*  
*aan-waa-nee*  
*aan-waa-nee yaa*  
*baa-roo-aa pey-pey*  
*see-moo*

Where are you from?

*Unatoka wapi?*

*oo-naa-toh-kaa waa-pee*

I'm from ...

Australia  
Canada  
New Zealand  
the UK  
the USA

*Natoka ...*  
*Australia*  
*Kanada*  
*Nyuzilandi*  
*Uingereza*  
*Marekani*

*naa-toh-kaa ...*  
*aa-oo-straa-lee-aa*  
*kaa-naa-daa*  
*nyoo-zee-laan-dee*  
*oo-een-gey-rey-zaa*  
*maa-rey-kaa-nee*

I'm married.

*Nimeoa. m*  
*Nimeolewa. f*

I'm single.

Can I take a photo  
(of you)?

*Mimi sina mpenzi.*  
*Ni sawa nikipiga*  
*picha (ya wewe)?*

*nee-mey-oh-aa*  
*nee-mey-oh-ley-waa*  
*mee-mee see-naa m-peyn-zee*  
*nee saa-waa nee-kee-pee-gaa*  
*pee-chaa (yaa wey-wey)*

## eating out

Can you  
recommend a ...?  
bar  
dish  
place to eat

*Unaweza*  
*kupendekeza ...?*  
*baa*  
*chakula*  
*hoteli kwa*  
*chakula*

*oo-naa-wey-zaa*  
*koo-peyn-dey-key-zaa ...*  
*baa*  
*chaa-koo-laa*  
*hoh-tey-lee kwaa*  
*chaa-koo-laa*

I'd like ...,  
please.  
the bill  
the menu  
a table for (two)  
that dish

*Naomba ...,*  
*tafadhali.*  
*bili*  
*menyu*  
*meza kwa (wawili)*  
*chakula kile*

*naa-ohm-baa ...*  
*taa-faa-dhaa-lee*  
*bee-lee*  
*mey-nyoo*  
*mey-zaa kwaa (wa-wee-lee)*  
*cha-koo-la kee-ley*

Do you have  
vegetarian food?

*Mna chakula*  
*bila nyama?*

*m-naa chaa-koo-laa*  
*bee-laa nyaa-maa*

Could you prepare  
a meal without ...?  
eggs  
meat stock

*Unaweza kuandaa*  
*mlo bila ...?*  
*mayai*  
*supu ya nyama*

*oo-naa-wey-zaa koo-aan-daa*  
*m-loh bee-laa ...*  
*maa-yaa-ee*  
*soo-poo yaa nyaa-maa*

(cup of)  
coffee/tea ...  
with milk  
without sugar

*(kikombe cha)*  
*kahawa/chai ...*  
*na maziwa*  
*bila sukari*

*(kee-kohm-bey chaa)*  
*kaa-haa-waa/chaa-ee ...*  
*naa maa-zee-waa*  
*bee-laa soo-kaa-ree*

(boiled) water

*maji (ya kuchemshwa)* *maa-jee (yaa koo-cheym-shwaa)*

## emergencies

Call an ambulance!  
Call a doctor!  
Call the police!  
Help me, please.  
I'm lost.  
Where are the toilets?

*Ita gari la hospitali.*  
*Mwite daktari.*  
*Waite polisi.*  
*Saidia, tafadhali.*  
*Nimejipotea.*  
*Vyoo viko wapi?*

*ee-taa gaa-ree laa ho-spee-taa-lee*  
*m-wee-tey daak-taa-ree*  
*waa-ee-tey poh-lee-see*  
*saa-ee-dee-aa taa-faa-dhaa-lee*  
*nee-mey-jee poh-tey-aa*  
*vyoh vee-ko waa-pee*

I have insurance.

*Nina bima.*

*nee-naa bee-maa*

I want to contact my consulate/embassy.

*Nataka kuwasiliana  
na ubalozi wangu.*

*naa-taa-kaa koo-waa-see-lee-aa-naa  
naa oo-baa-loh-zee waan-goo*

I've been assaulted.

*Nilishambuliwa.*

*nee-lee-shaam-boo-lee-waa*

I've been raped.

*Nilibakwa.*

*nee-lee-baa-kwaa*

I've been robbed.

*Nilibiwa.*

*nee-lee-ee-bee-waa*

I've lost my ...

*Nilipoteza ...*

*nee-lee-poh-tey-zaa ...*

**bags**

*mizigo yangu*

*mee-zee-goh yaan-goo*

**credit card**

*kadi ya benki*

*kaa-dee yaa beyn-kee*

**handbag**

*mkoba wangu*

*m-koh-baa waan-goo*

**jewellery**

*vipuli vyangu*

*vee-poo-lee vyaan-goo*

**money**

*pesa yangu*

*pey-saa yaan-goo*

**passport**

*pasipoti yangu*

*paa-see-poh-tee yaan-goo*

**travellers**

*hundi za msafiri*

*hoon-dee zaa m-saa-fee-ree*

**cheques**

*zangu*

*zaan-goo*

**wallet**

*pochi ya pesa*

*poh-chee ya pey-sa*

## medical needs

Where's the  
nearest ...?

*... hapo karibuni  
iko wapi?*

*... haa-poh kaa-ree-boo-nee  
ee-koh waa-pee*

**dentist**

*Daktari wa meno*

*daak-taa-ree waa mey-noh*

**doctor**

*Daktari*

*daak-taa-ree*

**hospital**

*Hospitali*

*hoh-spee-taa-lee*

**pharmacist**

*Duka la madawa*

*doo-kaa laa maa-daa-waa*

I need a doctor (who speaks English).

*Nahitaji daktari*

*naa-hee-taa-jee daak-taa-ree*

*(anayesema Kiingereza).*

*(aa-naa-yey-sey-maa kee-een-gey-rey-zaa)*

Could I see a female doctor?

*Inawezekana nione*

*ee-naa-wey-zey-kaa-naa nee-oh-ney*

*daktari mwanamke?*

*daak-taa-ree mwaa-naam-key*

It hurts here.

*Inauma hapa.*

*ee-naa-oo-maa haa-paa*

I'm allergic to (penicillin).

*Nina mzio wa (penisilini).*

*nee-naa m-zee-oh waa (pey-nee-see-lee-nee)*

## english–swahili dictionary

Swahili verbs are shown in their root (basic) forms, with a hyphen in front. To express a series of functions in a sentence, the verb can have several elements added: prefixes, infixes and suffixes. Some adjectives also have a hyphen in front, as they take different prefixes depending on the characteristics of the thing described. Words are also marked as *a* (adjective), *n* (noun), *v* (verb), *sg* (singular) or *pl* (plural) as necessary.

### A

**accommodation** *malazi maa-laa-zee*

**adaptor** *adapta aa-daap-taa*

**after** *baada ya baa-aa-daa yaa*

**airport** *uwanja wa ndege oo-waan-jaa waa n-dey-gey*

**alcohol** *kilevi kee-ley-vee*

**all** *zote zoh-tey*

**allergy** *mzio m-zee-oh*

**and** *na naa*

**ankle** *kiwiko cha mguu kee-wee-koh chaa m-goo*

**antibiotic** *kiuavijasumu kee-oo-aa-vee-jaa-soo-moo*

**arm** *mkono m-koh-noh*

**aspirin** *aspirini aa-spee-ree-nee*

**asthma** *pumu poo-moo*

**ATM** *mashine ya kutolea pesa*

*maa-shee-ney yaa koo-toh-ley-aa pey-saa*

### B

**baby** *mtoto mchanga m-toh-toh m-chaan-gaa*

**back (body)** *mgongo m-gohn-goh*

**backpack** *shanta shaan-taa*

**bad** *mbaya m-baa-yaa*

**bank** *benki beyn-kee*

**bathroom** *bafuni baa-foo-nee*

**battery** *betri bey-tree*

**beautiful** *ya kupendeza yaa koo-peyn-dey-zaa*

**bed** *kitanda kee-taan-daa*

**beer** *bia bee-aa*

**bee** *nyuki nyoo-kee*

**before** *kabla kaa-blaa*

**bicycle** *baisikeli baa-ee-see-key-lee*

**big** *kubwa koob-waa*

**blanket** *blanketi bla-an-key-tee*

**blood group** *aina ya damu aa-ee-naa yaa daa-moo*

**bottle** *chupa choo-paa*

**bottle opener** *kifungua chupa kee-foon-goo-aa choo-paa*

**boy** *mvulana m-voo-laa-naa*

**brakes (car)** *breki brey-kee*

**breakfast** *chai ya asubuhi chaa-ee yaa aa-soo-boo-hee*

### C

**café** *mgahawa m-gaa-haa-waa*

**cancel** *-futa -foo-taa*

**can opener** *opena ya kopo oh-pey-naa yaa koh-poh*

**cash** *n fedha fey-dhaa*

**cell phone** *simu ya mkononi see-moo yaa m-koh-noh-nee*

**centre** *n katikati kaa-tee-kaa-tee*

**cheap** *rahisi raa-hee-see*

**check (bill)** *bili bee-lee*

**check-in** *n mapokezi maa-poh-key-zee*

**chest** *kufua koo-foo-aa*

**child** *mtoto m-toh-toh*

**cigarette** *sigara see-gaa-raa*

**clean** *a safi saa-fee*

**closed** *ya kufungwa yaa koo-foon-gwaa*

**cold** *a baridi baa-ree-dee*

**condom** *kondom kohn-dohm*

**constipation** *uyabisi wa tumbo*

*oo-yaa-bee-see waa toom-boh*

**contact lenses** *lenzi mboni leyn-zee m-boh-nee*

**cough** *n kikohazi kee-koh-hoh-zee*

**currency exchange** *kubadilisha hela*

*koo-baa-dee-lee-shaa hey-laa*

**customs (immigration)** *forodha foh-roh-dhaa*

### D

**dairy products** *mazao ya maziwa*

*maa-zaa-oh yaa maa-zee-waa*

**dangerous** *hatari haa-taa-ree*

**day** *siku see-koo*

**diaper** *nepi ney-pee*

**diarrhoea** *kuhara koo-haa-raa*

**dinner** *chakula cha jioni chaa-koo-laa chaa jee-oh-nee*

**dirty** *chafu chaa-foo*

**disabled** *wasiojiweza waa-see-oh-jee-wey-zaa*

**drink** *n kinywaji kee-nywaa-jee*

**drug (illicit)** *madawa (ya kulevya)*

*maa-daa-waa (yaa koo-ley-vyaa)*

### A

## E

ear *sikio* see-kee-oh  
 east *mashariki* maa-shaa-ree-kee  
 economy *class daraja la tatu* daa-raa-jaa laa *taa-too*  
 elevator *lifti* leef-tee  
 email *barua pepe* baa-roo-aa *pey-pey*  
 English (language) *Kiingereza* kee-een-gey-*rey-zaa*  
 exit *n kutoka* koo-toh-kaa  
 expensive *ghali* gaa-lee  
 eye *jicho* jee-choh

## F

fast *ya kasi* yaa *kaa-see*  
 fever *homa* hoh-maa  
 finger *kidole* kee-doh-ley  
 first class *daraja la kwanza* daa-raa-jaa laa *kwaan-zaa*  
 fish *n samaki* saa-maa-kee  
 food *chakula* chaa-koo-laa  
 foot *mguu* m-goo  
 fork *uma* oo-maa  
 free (of charge) *bure* boo-rey  
 fruit *tunda* toon-daa  
 funny *ya kuchekesha* yaa koo-chey-*key-shaa*

## G

game park *hifadhi ya wanyama*  
 hee-faa-dhee yaa waa-nyaa-maa  
 gift *zawadi* zaa-waa-dee  
 girl *msichana* m-see-*chaa-naa*  
 glass (drinking) *glesi* gley-see  
 glasses *miwani* mee-waa-nee  
 good *nzuri* n-zoo-ree  
 gram *gramu* graa-moo  
 guide *n kiongozi* kee-ohn-goh-zee

## H

hand *mkono* m-koh-noh  
 happy *mwenye furaha* mwey-nyey foo-raa-haa  
 have -*wa na* -waa naa  
 he yeye yey-yey  
 head *kichwa* keech-waa  
 headache *maumivu ya kichwa*  
 maa-oo-mee-voo yaa keech-waa  
 heart *moyo* moh-yoh

heart condition *ugonjwa wa moyo*  
 oo-gohn-jwaa waa moh-yoh  
 heat *n joto* joh-toh  
 here *hapa* haa-paa  
 high *juu* joo  
 highway *barabara* baa-raa-baa-raa  
 homosexual *msenge* m-seyn-gey  
 hot *joto* joh-toh  
 hungry *njaa* n-jaa

## I

I *mimi* mee-mee  
 identification (card) *kitambulisho* e-taam-boo-lee-shoh  
 ill *mgonjwa* m-gohn-jwaa  
 important *muhimu* moo-hee-moo  
 internet *intaneti* een-taa-ney-tee  
 interpreter *mkalimani* m-kaa-lee-maa-nee

## K

key *ufunguo* oo-foon-goo-oh  
 kilogram *kilo* kee-loh  
 kitchen *jiko* jee-koh  
 knife *kisu* kee-soo

## L

laundry (place) *udobi* oo-doh-bee  
 lawyer *mwanasheria* mwaa-naa-shey-ree-aa  
 leg *mguu* m-goo  
 lesbian *msagaji* m-saa-gaa-jee  
 less *chache* chaa-chey  
 letter (mail) *barua* baa-rao-aa  
 like *v -penda* -peyn-daa  
 love *v -penda* -peyn-daa  
 lunch *chakula cha mchana* chaa-koo-laa chaa m-*chaa-naa*

## M

man *mwanaumume* mwaa-naa-moo-mey  
 matches *vibiriti* vee-bee-ree-tee  
 meat *nyama* nyaa-maa  
 medicine *dawa* daa-waa  
 message *ujumbe* oo-joom-bey  
 mobile phone *simu ya mkononi*  
 see-moo yaa m-koh-noh-nee  
 month *mwezi* mwey-zee  
 morning *asubuhi* aa-soo-boo-hee

motorcycle *pikipiki* pee-kee-pee-kee  
 mouth *mdomo* m-doh-moh  
 movie *filamu* fee-laa-moo  
 MSG *msg* eym-ey-gee  
 museum *makumbusho* maa-koom-boo-shoh  
 music *muziki* moo-zee-kee

## N

name *n jina* jee-naa  
 napkin *kitambaa cha mkono*  
 kee-taam-baa chaa m-koh-noh  
 nappy *nepi* ney-pee  
 national park *hifadhi ya wanyama*  
 hee-faa-dhee yaa waa-nyaa-maa  
 nausea *kichefuchefu* kee-chey-foo-chey-foo  
 neck *shingo* sheen-goh  
 new *mpya* m-pyaa  
 news *habari* haa-baa-ree  
 newspaper *gazeti* gaa-zey-tee  
 night *usiku* oo-see-koo  
 nightclub *klabu ya usiku* klaa-boo yaa oo-see-koo  
 noisy *yenye kelele* yey-nyey key-ley-ley  
 nonsmoking *hakuna sigara* haa-koo-naa see-gaa-raa  
 north *kaskazini* kaas-kaa-zee-nee  
 nose *pua* poo-aa  
 now *sasa* saa-saa  
 number *namba* naam-baa  
 nut *kokwa* kohk-waa

## O

oil (engine) *mafuta* maa-foo-taa  
 OK *sawa tu* saa-waa too  
 old *ya zamani* yaa zaa-maa-nee  
 open *a wazi* waa-zee  
 outside *nje* n-jey

## P

package *furushi* foo-roo-shee  
 pain *maumivu* maa-oo-mee-voo  
 paper *karatasi* kaa-raa-taa-see  
 park (car) *v -egesha* -ey-gey-shaa  
 passport *pasipoti* paa-see-poh-tee  
 pay *-lipa* -lee-paa  
 pen *kalamu* kaa-laa-moo  
 petrol *mafuta* maa-foo-taa  
 pharmacy *duka la dawa* doo-kaa laa daa-waa

plate *sahani* saa-haa-nee  
 postcard *postikadi* poh-stee-kaa-dee  
 post office *posta* poh-staa  
 pregnant *mjamzito* m-jaa-m-zee-toh

## R

rain *n mvua* m-voo-aa  
 razor *wembe* weym-bey  
 registered mail *barua ya rejista*  
 baa-roo-aa yaa rey-jee-staa  
 rent *v -kodi* -koh-dee  
 repair *v -tengeneza* -teyn-gey-ney-zaa  
 reservation *buking* boo-keeng  
 restaurant *mgahawa* m-gaa-haa-waa  
 return *v -rudi* -roo-dee  
 road *barabara* baa-raa-baa-raa  
 room *chumba* choom-baa

## S

sad *masikitiko* maa-see-kee-tee-koh  
 safe *a salama* saa-laa-maa  
 sanitary napkin *sodo* soh-doh  
 seafood *vyakula kutoka baharini*  
 vyaa-koo-laa koo-toh-kaa baa-haa-ree-nee  
 seat *kiti* kee-tee  
 send *-peleka* -pey-ley-kaa  
 sex *mapenzi* maa-peyn-zee  
 shampoo *shampuu* shaam-poo  
 share (a dorm, etc) *-gawana* -gaa-waa-naa  
 shaving cream *sabuni ya kunyolea*  
 saa-boo-nee yaa koo-nyoh-ley-aa  
 she yeye yey-yey  
 sheet (bed) *shuka* shoo-kaa  
 shirt *shati* shaa-tee  
 shoes *viatu* vee-aa-too  
 shop *n duka* doo-kaa  
 shower *n bafuni* baa-foo-nee  
 skin *ngazi* n-goh-zee  
 skirt *skati* skaa-tee  
 sleep *v -sinzia* -seen-zee-aa  
 small *-dogo* -doh-goh  
 smoke (cigarettes) *v -vuta* -voo-taa  
 soap *sabuni* saa-boo-nee  
 some *kadhaa* kaa-dhaa  
 soon *sasa hivi* saa-saa hee-vee  
 sore throat *koo lenye maumivu*  
 koh ley-nyey maa-oo-mee-voo

© Lonely Planet Publications

**south** *kusini* koo-see-nee  
**souvenir shop** *duka la kumbukumbu*  
*doo-kaa laa koom-boo-koom-boo*  
**speak** *-sema* -sey-maa  
**spoon** *kijiko* kee-jee-koh  
**stamp** *v stempu* steym-poo  
**station (train)** *stesheni* stey-shey-nee  
**stomach** *tumbo* toom-boh  
**stop** *v -simama* -see-maa-maa  
**stop (bus)** *n kituo* kee-too-oh  
**street** *nija* n-jee-aa  
**student** *mwanafunzi* mwaa-naa-foon-zee  
**sunscreens** *dawa la kukinga jua*  
*daa-waa laa koo-keen-gaa joo-aa*  
**swim** *v -ogelea* -oh-gey-ley-aa

**T**

**tampon** *sodo* soh-doh  
**teeth** *meno* mey-noh  
**telephone** *n simu* see-moo  
**television** *televisheni* tey-ley-vee-shey-nee  
**temperature (weather)** *halijoto* haa-lee-joh-toh  
**tent** *hema* hey-maa  
**that (one)** *hiyo* hee-yoh  
**they** *wao* waa-oh  
**(to be) thirsty** *(-sikia)* *kiu* (-see-kee-aa) kee-oo  
**this (one)** *hii* hee  
**throat** *koo* koh  
**ticket** *tiketi/tikiti* tee-key-tee/tee-kee-tee  
**time** *saa* saa  
**tired** *ya kuchoka* yaa koo-choh-kaa  
**tissues** *karatasi za shashi* kaa-raa-taa-see zaa shaa-shee  
**today** *leo* ley-oh  
**toilet** *choo* choh  
**tonight** *usiku* huu oo-see-koo hoo  
**toothache** *maumivu* ya jino  
*maa-oo-mee-voo yaa jee-noh*  
**toothbrush** *mswaki* m-swaa-kee  
**toothpaste** *dawa la meno* daa-waa laa mey-noh  
**torch (flashlight)** *tochi* toh-chee  
**tourist office** *ofisi ya watalii* o-fee-see yaa waa-taa-lee  
**towel** *taulo* taa-oo-loh  
**translate** *-tafsiri* -taaf-see-ree  
**travel agency** *uwakala wa safari*  
*oo-waa-kaa-laa waa saa-faa-ree*  
**travellers** *cheque hundi* ya msafiri  
*hoon-dee yaa m-saa-fee-ree*

**trousers** *suruali* soo-roo-aa-lee  
**twin beds** *vitanda viwili* vee-taan-daa vee-wee-lee  
**tyre** *tairi* taa-ee-ree

## U

**underwear** *chupi* choo-pee  
**urgent** *muhimu sana* moo-hee-moo saa-naa

## V

**vacant** *tupu* too-poo  
**vegetable** *a mboga* m-boh-gaa  
**vegetarian** *a mlaji wa mboga za majani tu*  
*m-laa-jee waa m-boh-gaa zaa maa-jaa-nee too*  
**visa** *viza/visa* vee-zaa/vee-saa

## W

**waiter** *mhudumu* m-hoo-doo-moo  
**walk** *v -tembea* -teym-bey-aa  
**warm** *a ya joto* yaa joh-toh  
**wash (something)** *-osha* -oh-shaa  
**watch** *n saa* saa  
**water** *maji* maa-jee  
**we** *sisi* see-see  
**weekend** *wikendi* wee-keyn-dee  
**west** *magharibi* maa-ghaa-ree-bee  
**wheelchair** *kiti cha magurudumu*  
*kee-tee chaa maa-goo-roo-doo-moo*  
**when** *wakati* waa-kaa-tee  
**where** *wapi* waa-pee  
**who** *nani* naa-nee  
**why** *kwa nini* kwaa-nee-nee  
**window** *dirisha* dee-ree-shaa  
**wine** *mvinyo* m-vee-nyoh  
**with** *na* naa  
**without** *bila* bee-laa  
**woman** *mwanamke* mwaan-aam-key  
**write** *-andika* -aan-dee-kaa

## Y

**you** *sg wewe* wey-wey  
**you** *pl nyinyi* nyee-nyee

Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this © chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of 'saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content

# Wolof



| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                         | Consonants |                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | English sound           | Symbol     | English sound                           |
| a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | act                     | b          | bed                                     |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | father                  | ch         | cheat                                   |
| ai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | aisle                   | d          | dog                                     |
| aw                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | law                     | f          | fun                                     |
| ay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | say                     | g          | go                                      |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | bet                     | h          | hat                                     |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | see                     | j          | jar                                     |
| ey                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | as in 'bet', but longer | k          | kit                                     |
| i                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | hit                     | kh         | as the 'ch' in the Scottish <i>loch</i> |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | pot                     | l          | lot                                     |
| oh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | cold                    | m          | man                                     |
| oo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | zoo                     | n          | not                                     |
| ow                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | now                     | ng         | ring                                    |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | put                     | ny         | canyon                                  |
| uh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | ago                     | p          | pet                                     |
| <p>In this chapter, the Wolof pronunciation is given in dark brown after each phrase.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot, and the syllable stressed in each word is italicised.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p><i>Mangi.</i>     <i>maan-gee</i></p> |                         | r          | run (trilled)                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                         | s          | sun                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                         | t          | top                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                         | w          | win                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                         | y          | yes                                     |

## introduction

Dig this, man: there's an intriguing, though controversial, theory that Wolof-speaking West Africans introduced words like 'hip', 'dig' and 'jive' to American English while they were enslaved in North America in the 17th century. The origin of the name 'Wolof' (*wolof wo-lof*) itself is hotly debated, too, but perhaps the most likely suggestion is that it comes from the name of the area called 'Lof'. The Lebu people, to whom Wolof is commonly linked, were one of a number of different ethnic groups who joined together and founded the Jolof Empire in Lof at the end of the 14th century. Wolof is a member of the West Atlantic group of the Niger-Congo language family, and is the lingua franca of the northwestern African nations of Senegal and Gambia, where it's spoken by about 80 per cent of their inhabitants (eight million people) as a first or second language. It's also spoken on a smaller scale in the neighbouring countries of Mauritania, Mali and Guinea.

wolof (native language)  wolof (generally understood)



## language difficulties

|                       |                              |                                 |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Do you speak English? | <i>Ndax dégg nga angale?</i> | ndakh deg nguh <i>an-ga-ley</i> |
| Do you understand?    | <i>Dégg nga?</i>             | deg nguh                        |
| I understand.         | <i>Dégg naa.</i>             | deg naa                         |
| I don't understand.   | <i>Dégguma.</i>              | <i>deg-goo-ma</i>               |

|                       |                         |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Could you please ...? | <i>Ndax mën nga ...</i> | ndakh muhn nga ...      |
| repeat that           | <i>su la neexee?</i>    | soo luh <i>ney-khey</i> |
| speak more slowly     | <i>ko waxaat</i>        | koh <i>wa-khaat</i>     |
| write it down         | <i>wax ndànk</i>        | wakh ndank              |
|                       | <i>ko bind</i>          | koh bind                |

## time, dates & numbers

|                     |                                                            |                                                                                                |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| What time is it?    | <i>Ban waxtu moo jot?</i>                                  | ban <i>wakh-too</i> moh jot                                                                    |
| It's one o'clock.   | <i>Benn waxtu moo jot.</i>                                 | ben <i>wakh-too</i> moh jot                                                                    |
| It's (two) o'clock. | <i>(Ñaari) waxtu moo jot.</i>                              | ( <i>nyaa-ree</i> ) <i>wakh-too</i> moh jot                                                    |
| Quarter past (one). | <i>(Benn) waxtu teggalna fukki miniit ak juróom.</i>       | (ben) <i>wakh-too teg-gal-na fuk-kee mi-neet</i> ak <i>joo-rohm</i>                            |
| Half past (one).    | <i>(Benn) waxtu ak xaaj.</i>                               | (ben) <i>wakh-too</i> ak <i>khaaj</i>                                                          |
| Quarter to (eight). | <i>(Juróom ñetti) waxtu des na fukki miniit ak juróom.</i> | ( <i>joo-rohm nyet-tee</i> ) <i>wakh-too</i> des nuh <i>fuk-kee mi-neet</i> ak <i>joo-rohm</i> |
| At what time ...?   | <i>Ban waxtu ...?</i>                                      | ban <i>wakh-too</i> ...                                                                        |
| It's (15 December). | <i>Tey la (fukkeeli fan ak juróom ci weeru desaambar).</i> | tay luh ( <i>fuk-key-lee fan</i> ak <i>joo-rohm chee wey-roo dey-saam-bar</i> )                |

|           |                |                   |
|-----------|----------------|-------------------|
| yesterday | <i>démb</i>    | <i>dem-buh</i>    |
| today     | <i>tey</i>     | tay               |
| tomorrow  | <i>suba</i>    | <i>soo-ba</i>     |
| Monday    | <i>altine</i>  | <i>al-ti-ney</i>  |
| Tuesday   | <i>talaata</i> | <i>ta-laa-ta</i>  |
| Wednesday | <i>àllarba</i> | <i>al-lar-ba</i>  |
| Thursday  | <i>alxames</i> | <i>al-kha-mes</i> |
| Friday    | <i>àjjuma</i>  | <i>aj-ju-ma</i>   |
| Saturday  | <i>gaawu</i>   | <i>gaa-woo</i>    |
| Sunday    | <i>dibээр</i>  | <i>dee-beyr</i>   |

### numbers

|    |                            |                              |      |                          |                        |
|----|----------------------------|------------------------------|------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 0  | <i>tus</i>                 | toos                         | 18   | <i>fukk ak</i>           | fuk ak                 |
| 1  | <i>benn</i>                | ben                          |      | <i>juróom ñett</i>       | <i>joo-rohm nyet</i>   |
| 2  | <i>ñaar</i>                | nyaar                        | 19   | <i>fukk ak</i>           | fuk ak                 |
| 3  | <i>ñett</i>                | nyet                         |      | <i>juróom ñeent</i>      | <i>joo-rohm nyeynt</i> |
| 4  | <i>ñeent</i>               | nyeynt                       | 20   | <i>ñaar fukk</i>         | nyaar fuk              |
| 5  | <i>juróom</i>              | <i>joo-rohm</i>              | 21   | <i>ñaar fukk ak benn</i> | nyaar fuk ak ben       |
| 6  | <i>juróom benn</i>         | <i>joo-rohm ben</i>          | 22   | <i>ñaar fukk ak ñaar</i> | nyaar fuk ak nyaar     |
| 7  | <i>juróom ñaar</i>         | <i>joo-rohm nyaar</i>        | 30   | <i>fan weer</i>          | fan weyr               |
| 8  | <i>juróom ñett</i>         | <i>joo-rohm nyet</i>         | 40   | <i>ñeent fukk</i>        | nyeynt fuk             |
| 9  | <i>juróom ñeent</i>        | <i>joo-rohm nyeynt</i>       | 50   | <i>juróom fukk</i>       | <i>joo-rohm fuk</i>    |
| 10 | <i>fukk</i>                | fuk                          | 60   | <i>juróom benn</i>       | <i>joo-rohm ben</i>    |
| 11 | <i>fukk ak benn</i>        | fuk ak ben                   |      | <i>fukk</i>              | fuk                    |
| 12 | <i>fukk ak ñaar</i>        | fuk ak nyaar                 | 70   | <i>juróom ñaar</i>       | <i>joo-rohm nyaar</i>  |
| 13 | <i>fukk ak ñett</i>        | fuk ak nyet                  |      | <i>fukk</i>              | fuk                    |
| 14 | <i>fukk ak ñeent</i>       | fuk ak nyeynt                | 80   | <i>juróom ñett</i>       | <i>joo-rohm nyet</i>   |
| 15 | <i>fukk ak juróom</i>      | fuk ak <i>joo-rohm</i>       |      | <i>fukk</i>              | fuk                    |
| 16 | <i>fukk ak juróom benn</i> | fuk ak <i>joo-rohm ben</i>   | 90   | <i>juróom ñent</i>       | <i>joo-rohm nyent</i>  |
| 17 | <i>fukk ak juróom ñaar</i> | fuk ak <i>joo-rohm nyaar</i> | 90   | <i>fukk</i>              | fuk                    |
|    |                            |                              | 100  | <i>téemээр</i>           | <i>tey-meyr</i>        |
|    |                            |                              | 1000 | <i>junni</i>             | <i>jun-nee</i>         |

## border crossing

|                                    |                                       |                                               |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| I'm here ...                       | <i>Mangi fii ...</i>                  | <i>maan-gee fee ...</i>                       |
| in transit                         | <i>ci transit</i>                     | <i>chee tran-seet</i>                         |
| on business                        | <i>ndax afeer</i>                     | <i>ndakh a-feyr</i>                           |
| on holiday                         | <i>ci vacances</i>                    | <i>chee wa-kaans</i>                          |
| I'm here for ...                   | <i>Mangi fii ba ...</i>               | <i>maan-gee fee buh ...</i>                   |
| (10) days                          | <i>(fukki) fan</i>                    | <i>(fuk-kee) fan</i>                          |
| (three) weeks                      | <i>(ñetti) ay bés</i>                 | <i>(nyet-tee) ai bes</i>                      |
| (two) months                       | <i>(ñaari) weer</i>                   | <i>(nyaa-ree) weyr</i>                        |
| I'm going to (Dakar).              | <i>Maangi dem (Ndakaaru).</i>         | <i>maan-gee dem (nda-kaa-roo)</i>             |
| I'm staying at the (Ganalé Hotel). | <i>Maangi dal ci (oteelu Ganale).</i> | <i>maan-gee dal chee (oh-tey-lu ga-na-le)</i> |

## tickets

|                                                |                                                   |                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| One ... ticket<br>(to Tambacounda),<br>please. | Benn ... tike (ba<br>Tambakunda) bu<br>la neexee. | ben ... ti-ke (ba<br>tam-ba-kun-da) boo<br>la ney-khey |
| one-way<br>return                              | benn yoon<br>dem ak dikk                          | ben yawn<br>dem ak dik                                 |
| I'd like to ... my<br>ticket, please.          | Dama bëgga ... sama<br>tike, bu la neexee.        | da-ma buhg-ga ... sa-ma<br>ti-ke boo la ney-khey       |
| cancel                                         | far                                               | far                                                    |
| change                                         | soppi                                             | sop-pee                                                |
| collect                                        | jél                                               | jel                                                    |
| I'd like a ... seat,<br>please.                | Dama bëgga palaas<br>fuñu ... bu la neexee.       | da-ma buhg-ga pa-laas<br>foo-nyoo ... boo la ney-khey  |
| nonsmoking                                     | dul tóxe                                          | dul toh-khe                                            |
| smoking                                        | mëna tóx                                          | muh-na tokh                                            |
| Is there a toilet/air conditioning?            | Ndax am na wanag/kilimaatisër?                    | ndakh am na wa-nak/ki-li-maa-ti-suhr                   |
| How long does the trip take?                   | Ñaata waxtu la tukki bi di jél?                   | nyaa-ta wakh-too la tuk-kee bee dee jel                |
| Is it a direct route?                          | Ndax amul taxaaw?                                 | ndakh a-mul ta-khow                                    |



## transport

|                                                  |                                                        |                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Where does flight (Air France 07) arrive/depart? | Fan la volu (Air France juróom ñaar)<br>di eggsi/deme? | fan la vo-loo (er fa-raans joo-rohm nyaar)<br>dee eg-see/de-mey |
| How long will it be delayed?                     | Ñaata waxtu lañu xaar<br>balaa muy dem?                | nyaa-ta wakh-tu la-nyoo khaar<br>ba-laa mu-ee dem               |

|                                      |                                    |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Is this the ... to<br>(Foundiougne)? | Ndax bii ... mooy<br>dem (Funjuñ)? | ndakh bee ... mohy<br>dem (fun-juny) |
| boat                                 | gaal                               | gaal                                 |
| bus                                  | kaar                               | kaar                                 |
| plane                                | awiyon                             | a-wee-yong                           |
| train                                | saxaar                             | sa-khaar                             |

### How much is it to ...?

Paasu fii ba ... ñaata la?

paa-soo fee ba ... nyaa-ta la

### Please take me to (this address).

Yóbbu ma ci (adres bii).

yob-boo ma chee (ad-res bee)

### I'd like to hire a car/4WD (with air conditioning).

Begg naa luwe oto/kat-kat  
(bu am kilimaatisër).

buhg naa lu-we o-to/kat-kat  
(boo am ki-li-maa-tee-suhr)

### How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

Ñaata lay jar suma ko bëggee  
luwe (ñetti) fan/ay bés?

nyaa-ta lai jar su-ma koh buhg-gey  
lu-we (nyet-tee) fan/ai bes

## directions

|                               |                                          |                                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Where's the<br>(nearest) ...? | ... (bi gëna jege fii),<br>fan la feete? | ... (bee guh-na je-gey fee)<br>fan la fey-te |
| internet café                 | Siberkafe                                | see-ber-ka-fey                               |
| market                        | Marse                                    | mar-sey                                      |

### Is this the road to (Banjul)?

Ndax yoon bii yoonu (Banjul) la?

ndakh yawn bee yaw-nu (ban-jul) la

### Can you show me (on the map)?

Ndax mën nga ma  
ko won (ci kart bi)?

ndakh muhn nga ma  
koh won (chee kart bee)

### What's the address?

Lan mooy adres bi?

lan mohy ad-res bee

### Is it far?

Ndax sore na?

ndakh so-re na

### How do I get there?

Naka laa fay yegge?

na-ka laa fai yeg-ge

### Turn left/right.

Jaddal ci sa càmmoñ/ndeyjoor.

jad-dal chee sa cham-mony/nday-johr

|                 |                        |                           |
|-----------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| It's ...        | Mungi ...              | mun-gee ...               |
| behind ...      | <i>ci ginnaaw ...</i>  | <i>chee gin-naaw ...</i>  |
| in front of ... | <i>ci kanamu ...</i>   | <i>chee ka-na-moo ...</i> |
| near (to ...)   | <i>jégena ak ...</i>   | <i>je-ge-na ak ...</i>    |
| next to ...     | <i>ci wetu ...</i>     | <i>chee we-tu ...</i>     |
| on the corner   | <i>ci angal bi</i>     | <i>chee an-gal bee</i>    |
| opposite ...    | <i>jàkkaarlook ...</i> | <i>jaak-kaar-lohk ...</i> |
| straight ahead  | <i>ci sa kanam</i>     | <i>chee sa ka-nam</i>     |
| there           | <i>fële</i>            | <i>fuh-le</i>             |

## accommodation

|                |                            |                             |
|----------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Where's a ...? | <i>Fan la ... nekk?</i>    | fan la ... nek              |
| camping ground | <i>kampamaan bi</i>        | <i>kam-pa-maan bee</i>      |
| guesthouse     | <i>auberge bi</i>          | <i>oh-beyrs bee</i>         |
| hotel          | <i>oteel</i>               | <i>oh-teyl</i>              |
| youth hostel   | <i>auberge de jeunesse</i> | <i>oh-beyrs duh juh-nes</i> |

### Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

|                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Ndax mën nga ma digal</i> | ndakh muhn nga ma dig-uhl |
| <i>fu yomb/baax?</i>         | foo yomb/baakh            |

### I'd like to book a room, please.

|                              |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Bëgg naa jël ab néeg,</i> | buhg naa jël ab neyg |
| <i>su la neexee.</i>         | soo la ney-khey      |

### I have a reservation.

|                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Am naa reserwaasiyon ba pare.</i> | am naa rey-ser-waa-see-yon ba pa-re |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|

|             |                        |                    |
|-------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| Do you have | <i>Am ngeen</i>        | am ngeyn           |
| a ... room? | <i>néeg ...?</i>       | neyg ...           |
| single      | <i>pur kenn</i>        | pur ken            |
| double      | <i>pur ñaari nit</i>   | pur nyaa-ree nit   |
| twin        | <i>bu am ñaari lal</i> | bu am nyaa-ree lal |

### How much is it per night?

|                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Benn bés, ñaata lay jar?</i> | ben bes nyaa-ta lai jar |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|

### How much is it per person?

|                                |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Ku nekk, ñaata lay fey?</i> | ku nek nyaa-ta lai fay |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|

### I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Dinaa fii nekk (ñaari) fan.</i> | dee-naa fee nek (nyaa-ree) fan |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|

### What time is check-out?

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Ban waxtu laa wara</i> | ban wakh-too laa wa-ra |
| <i>delloo caabi bi?</i>   | del-loh chaa-bee bee   |

### Am I allowed to camp here?

|                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Ndax mën naa kampe fii?</i> | ndakh muhn naa kam-pey fee |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|



## banking & communications

Note that prices in Senegal are calculated in lots of five CFA francs – so *téeméer* *tey-meyr* means '100', but in the context of money it translates as 500 CFA francs.

|                     |                             |                                |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I'd like to ...     | <i>Bëgg naa ...</i>         | buhg naa ...                   |
| arrange a transfer  | <i>jállale xalis</i>        | <i>jaal-la-le khaa-lis</i>     |
| cash a cheque       | <i>aankese sek bi</i>       | <i>an-ke-sey sek bee</i>       |
| change a travellers | <i>aankese</i>              | <i>an-ke-sey</i>               |
| cheque              | <i>traveler bi</i>          | <i>tra-ve-ler bee</i>          |
| change money        | <i>saanse xalis</i>         | <i>saan-sey khaa-lis</i>       |
| withdraw money      | <i>génne xalis</i>          | <i>gen-ney khaa-lis</i>        |
| I want to ...       | <i>Bëgg naa ...</i>         | buhg naa ...                   |
| buy a phonecard     | <i>jënd kart telefoniik</i> | <i>jend kart te-le-fo-neek</i> |
| call (the US)       | <i>woote ci (Ameriik)</i>   | <i>woh-te chee (a-me-reek)</i> |
| reverse the charges | <i>moom mu fey</i>          | <i>mohm moo fay</i>            |
| use a printer       | <i>jëfandikoo</i>           | <i>juh-fan-di-koh</i>          |
|                     | <i>amprimaan bi</i>         | <i>am-pree-maan bee</i>        |
| use the internet    | <i>jëfandikoo</i>           | <i>juh-fan-di-koh</i>          |
|                     | <i>anternet bi</i>          | <i>an-ter-net bee</i>          |

### How much is it per hour?

|                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Benn waxtu, ñaata lay jar?</i> | ben wakh-too nyaa-ta lai jar |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|

### How much does a (three-minute) call cost?

|                                               |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Wooteek (ñetti miniit), ñaata lay jar?</i> | woh-teyk (nyet-tee mi-neet) nyaa-ta lai jar |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

### (1000 CFA francs) per minute/hour.

|                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Waxtu/Miniit bu nekk,</i> | wakh-too/mi-neet bu nek |
| <i>(ñaari téeméer) la.</i>   | (nyaa-ree tey-meyr) la  |

## tours

|                                                                                   |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When's the ...?<br>next day trip                                                  | ... <i>kañ la?</i><br><i>Beneen</i><br><i>exkursiyon bi</i>                                          | kany la ...<br><i>ben-eyn</i><br><i>ek-skur-si-yon bee</i>                                                    |
| next tour                                                                         | <i>Beneen wisiit bi</i>                                                                              | <i>ben-eyn wi-seet bee</i>                                                                                    |
| Is ... included?<br>accommodation<br>the admission<br>charge<br>food<br>transport | <i>Ndax ... dafa ci bokk?</i><br><i>oteel bi</i><br><i>antere</i><br><br><i>lekk</i><br><i>tukki</i> | <i>ndakh ... da-fa chee bok</i><br><i>oh-teyl bee</i><br><i>an-te-rey</i><br><br><i>lek</i><br><i>tuk-kee</i> |
| How long is the tour?<br><i>Wisiit bi ñaata waxtu lay jël?</i>                    |                                                                                                      | <i>wi-seet bee nyaa-ta wakh-too lai jël</i>                                                                   |
| What time should we be back?<br><i>Ban waxtu lañu wara ñibbsi?</i>                |                                                                                                      | <i>ban wakh-too la-nyoo wa-ra nyib-see</i>                                                                    |

## shopping

|                                                                           |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| I'm looking for ...<br>... <i>laay wut.</i>                               | ... <i>lai wut</i>                              |
| I need film for this camera.<br><i>Pelikiil laa soxla pur aparee bii.</i> | <i>pe-lee-keel laa sokh-la pur a-pa-rey bee</i> |
| Can I listen to this?<br><i>Ndax mën naa dégglu lii?</i>                  | <i>ndakh muhn naa deg-loo lee</i>               |
| Can I have my ... repaired?<br><i>Ndax mën nga ma jagalal sama ...?</i>   | <i>ndakh muhn nga ma ja-ga-lal sa-ma ...</i>    |
| When will it be ready?<br><i>Kañ lay pare?</i>                            | <i>kany lai pa-re</i>                           |
| How much is it?<br><i>Ñaata lay jar?</i>                                  | <i>nyaa-ta lai jar</i>                          |
| Can you write down the price?<br><i>Ndax mën nga bind piri bi?</i>        | <i>ndakh muhn nga bind pee-ree bee</i>          |
| What's your lowest price?<br><i>Lan mooy sa derñe piri?</i>               | <i>lan mohy sa der-nye pi-ri</i>                |

|                                                                                                     |                                                                                                 |                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>I'll give you (500) CFA francs.</b><br><i>(Téémээр) laa mën.</i>                                 | <i>(tey-meyr) laa muhn</i>                                                                      |                                                                                                             |
| <b>There's a mistake in the bill.</b><br><i>Dangeen juum ci adisiyon bi.</i>                        | <i>dan-geyn joom chi a-di-si-yon bee</i>                                                        |                                                                                                             |
| <b>It's faulty.</b><br><i>Baaxul.</i>                                                               | <i>baa-khul</i>                                                                                 |                                                                                                             |
| <b>I'd like a receipt, please.</b><br><i>Bindal ma resi bu la neexee.</i>                           | <i>bin-duhl ma re-si boo la ney-khey</i>                                                        |                                                                                                             |
| <b>I'd like a refund.</b><br><i>Begg naa nga delloo ma sama xalis.</i>                              | <i>buhg naa nga del-loh ma sa-ma khaa-lis</i>                                                   |                                                                                                             |
| <b>Do you accept ...?</b><br><b>credit cards</b><br><b>debit cards</b><br><b>travellers cheques</b> | <i>Dingeen nangu ...?</i><br><i>kart keredi</i><br><i>kart bankeer</i><br><i>traveleer</i>      | <i>din-geyn nan-goo ...</i><br><i>kart ke-re-dee</i><br><i>kart ban-keyr</i><br><i>tra-ve-leer</i>          |
| <b>Could you ...?</b><br><b>burn a CD from</b><br><b>my memory card</b><br><b>develop this film</b> | <i>Ndax mën ngeen ...?</i><br><i>sottil ma foto</i><br><i>yi ci CD</i><br><i>sottil foto yi</i> | <i>ndakh muhn ngeyn ...</i><br><i>sot-til ma fo-to</i><br><i>yee chee se-de</i><br><i>sot-til fo-to yee</i> |



## making conversation

|                   |                                   |                                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Hello.            | <i>Salaam aleekum.</i>            | <i>sa-laam a-ley-kum</i>           |
| Good night.       | <i>Fanaanleen jàmm.</i>           | <i>fa-naan-leyn jam</i>            |
| Goodbye.          | <i>Mangi dem.</i>                 | <i>maan-gee dem</i>                |
| Mr                | <i>Góor gi</i>                    | <i>gohr gee</i>                    |
| Mrs               | <i>Soxna si</i>                   | <i>sokh-na see</i>                 |
| Miss (young girl) | <i>Janq bi</i>                    | <i>jank bee</i>                    |
| How are you?      | <i>Na nga def?</i>                | <i>na nga def</i>                  |
| Fine, and you?    | <i>Mangi fi rekk, na nga def?</i> | <i>maan-gee fee rek na nga def</i> |
| What's your name? | <i>Noo tudd?</i>                  | <i>noh tud</i>                     |
| My name's ...     | <i>... laa tudd.</i>              | <i>... laa tud</i>                 |

|                             |                               |                          |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| This is my ...              | <i>Kii, sama ... la.</i>      | kee sa-ma ... la         |
| boyfriend                   | <i>far</i>                    | far                      |
| brother (older)             | <i>mag</i>                    | mak                      |
| brother (younger)           | <i>rakk</i>                   | rak                      |
| daughter                    | <i>doom bu jigéen</i>         | dohm boo ji-geyn         |
| father                      | <i>baay</i>                   | ba-ai                    |
| friend                      | <i>xarit</i>                  | kha-rit                  |
| girlfriend                  | <i>coro</i>                   | cho-ro                   |
| husband                     | <i>jëkkër</i>                 | juhk-kuhr                |
| mother                      | <i>yaay</i>                   | yaa-i                    |
| sister (older)              | <i>mag bu jigéen</i>          | mak boo ji-geyn          |
| sister (younger)            | <i>rakk bu jigéen</i>         | rak boo ji-geyn          |
| son                         | <i>doom bu góor</i>           | dohm boo gohr            |
| wife                        | <i>jabar</i>                  | ja-bar                   |
| Here's my ...               | <i>Sama ... angi.</i>         | sa-ma ... an-gee         |
| What's your ...?            | <i>Lan mooy sa ...?</i>       | lan mohy sa ...          |
| address                     | <i>adres</i>                  | ad-res                   |
| email address               | <i>imel</i>                   | ee-mel                   |
| phone number                | <i>nimero telefon</i>         | ni-me-ro te-le-phon      |
| Where are you from?         | <i>Fan nga joge?</i>          | fan nga jo-ge            |
| I'm from ...                | <i>... laa joge.</i>          | ... laa jo-ge            |
| Australia                   | <i>Ostrali</i>                | os-tra-lee               |
| New Zealand                 | <i>Nuwel Selaand</i>          | nu-wel se-laand          |
| the UK                      | <i>Anglateer</i>              | an-gla-teyr              |
| the USA                     | <i>Ameriik</i>                | a-me-reek                |
| I'm married. <sup>m</sup>   | <i>Am naa Jëkkër.</i>         | am naa juh-kuhr          |
| I'm married. <sup>f</sup>   | <i>Am naa jabar.</i>          | am naa ja-bar            |
| I'm not married.            | <i>Séyaguma.</i>              | say-a-gu-ma              |
| Can I take a photo of you?  | <i>Ndax mën naa la foto?</i>  | ndakh muhn naa la fo-to  |
| Can I take a photo of this? | <i>Ndax mën naa foto lii?</i> | ndakh muhn naa fo-to lee |

## eating out

|                          |                             |                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Can you recommend a ...? | <i>Mën nga ma digal ...</i> | muhn nga ma dig-uhl ... |
| bar                      | <i>baar</i>                 | baar                    |
| dish                     | <i>benn palaat</i>          | ben pa-la-at            |
| place to eat             | <i>benn restoraan</i>       | ben res-to-raan         |

|                                       |                                              |                                             |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| I'd like ..., please.                 | <i>Dama bëgg ...</i>                         | da-ma buhg ...                              |
| the bill                              | <i>adisiyon</i>                              | a-di-si-yon                                 |
| the menu                              | <i>kart bi</i>                               | kart bee                                    |
| a table for (two)                     | <i>taabalu (ñaari) nit</i>                   | taa-ba-lu (nyaa-ree) nit                    |
| that dish                             | <i>palaat bale</i>                           | pa-la-at ba-le                              |
| Do you have vegetarian food?          | <i>Ndax am ngeen palaat yu wejetariyan?</i>  | ndakh am ngeyn pa-la-at yoo we-je-ta-ri-yan |
| Could you prepare a meal without ...? | <i>Ndax men nga togg ñam bu andul ak ...</i> | ndakh muhn nga tog nyam boo an-dul ak ...   |
| eggs                                  | <i>nen</i>                                   | nen                                         |
| meat stock                            | <i>soos yàpp</i>                             | sohs yaap                                   |
| (cup of) coffee ...                   | <i>(kaasu) kafe ...</i>                      | (kaa-su) ka-fe ...                          |
| (cup of) Senegalese tea ...           | <i>(kaasu) àttaaya ...</i>                   | (kaa-su) at-tai-ya ...                      |
| (cup of) regular tea ...              | <i>(kaasu) lipton ...</i>                    | (kaa-su) lip-ton ...                        |
| with milk                             | <i>ak meew</i>                               | ak meyw                                     |
| without sugar                         | <i>bu amul suukar</i>                        | boo a-mul soo-kuhr                          |
| (boiled) water                        | <i>ndox mu (ñu baxal ba pare)</i>            | ndokh moo (nyoo ba-khal ba pa-re)           |

## emergencies

|                                          |                       |                                        |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Help!                                    | <i>Wóoy!</i>          | wohy                                   |
| Call ...!                                | <i>Wooyal ma ...!</i> | woh-yal ma ...                         |
| an ambulance                             | <i>ambilaans bi</i>   | am-bi-laans bee                        |
| a doctor                                 | <i>doktoor</i>        | dok-tohr                               |
| the police                               | <i>alkaati</i>        | al-kaa-tee                             |
| Could you help me, please?               |                       |                                        |
| <i>Mën nga ma dimmali, bu la neexee?</i> |                       | muhn nga ma dim-ma-lee boo la ney-khey |
| I'm lost.                                |                       |                                        |
| <i>Dama réer.</i>                        |                       | da-ma reyr                             |
| Where are the toilets?                   |                       |                                        |
| <i>Ana wanag wi?</i>                     |                       | a-na wa-nak wee                        |
| I have insurance.                        |                       |                                        |
| <i>Am naa asiraans.</i>                  |                       | am naa a-si-raans                      |

|                                         |                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I've ...                                | <i>Dañu ...</i>                   | <i>da-nyoo ...</i>            |
| been assaulted                          | <i>dal sama kow</i>               | <i>dal sa-ma koh</i>          |
| had my pockets picked                   | <i>ma tafu</i>                    | <i>ma ta-foo</i>              |
| been raped                              | <i>ma yakkataan</i>               | <i>ma yak-ka-taan</i>         |
| been robbed                             | <i>ma sàcc</i>                    | <i>ma sach</i>                |
| I've lost my ...                        | <i>Sama ... daf ma réer.</i>      | <i>sa-ma ... daf ma reyr</i>  |
| My ... was/were stolen.                 | <i>Dañu sàcc sama ...</i>         | <i>da-nyoo sach sa-ma ...</i> |
| bags                                    | <i>sak yi</i>                     | <i>sak yee</i>                |
| credit card                             | <i>kart keredi</i>                | <i>kart ke-re-dee</i>         |
| handbag                                 | <i>sak bi</i>                     | <i>sak bee</i>                |
| jewellery                               | <i>takkukaay</i>                  | <i>tak-koo-kaiy</i>           |
| money                                   | <i>xaalis</i>                     | <i>khaa-lis</i>               |
| passport                                | <i>paspoor</i>                    | <i>pas-pohr</i>               |
| travellers cheques                      | <i>traveler</i>                   | <i>tra-ve-leyr</i>            |
| wallet                                  | <i>kalpe</i>                      | <i>kal-pe</i>                 |
| I want to contact my consulate/embassy. |                                   |                               |
| <i>Bëgg naa yéganteek sama</i>          | <i>buhg naa ye-gan-teyk sa-ma</i> |                               |
| <i>konsulaa/ambasaad.</i>               | <i>kon-su-laa/am-ba-saad</i>      |                               |

## medical needs

|                          |                                            |                                               |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Where's the nearest ...? | <i>... bi gëna jege fii, fan la feete?</i> | <i>... bee guh-na je-ge fee fan la fey-te</i> |
| dentist                  | <i>Daantist</i>                            | <i>daan-teest</i>                             |
| doctor                   | <i>Doktoor</i>                             | <i>dok-tohr</i>                               |
| hospital                 | <i>Opitaal</i>                             | <i>o-pi-taal</i>                              |
| pharmacist               | <i>Farmasyeng</i>                          | <i>far-mas-yeng</i>                           |

### I need a doctor (who speaks English).

|                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Dama soxla doktoor</i> | <i>da-ma sokh-la dok-tohr</i> |
| <i>(bu dégg angale).</i>  | <i>(boo deg an-ga-le)</i>     |

### Could I see a female doctor?

|                                            |                                    |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Ndax mën naa gis doktoor bu jigéen?</i> | <i>ndakh muhn naa gis dok-tohr</i> |
|                                            | <i>boo ji-geyn</i>                 |

### It hurts here.

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Fii lay metti.</i> | <i>fee ley met-tee</i> |
|-----------------------|------------------------|

### I'm allergic to (penicillin).

|                                       |                                               |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Dama am alersi ci (penisilin).</i> | <i>da-ma am a-ler-see chee (pe-ni-si-lin)</i> |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|

## english–wolof dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as **n** (noun), **a** (adjective), **v** (verb), **sg** (singular) and **pl** (plural) where necessary.

## A

**accommodation** *dal dal*  
**adaptor** *adaptër a-dap-tuhr*  
**airport** *ayropoor ai-roh-pawr*  
**alcohol** *sàngara saan-ga-ra*  
**all** *lépp/yépp sg/pl lip/yip*  
**all (people)** *niépp nyip*  
**allergy** *alersi a-ler-see*  
**and** *ak ak*  
**ankle** *wag waak*  
**antibiotics** *antibiyotik an-tee-bee-yoh-teek*  
**anti-inflammatories** *antianflamatwaar*  
*an-tee-an-fla-mat-waar*  
**arm** *loxo lo-kho*  
**aspirin** *aspiirin as-pee-reen*  
**asthma** *asma as-ma*  
**ATM** *masiinu xaalis ma-see-noo khaa-lis*

## B

**baby** *bebe be-be*  
**back (body)** *diggu-gannaaw dig-goo-gan-now*  
**backpack** *sakado sa-ka-doh*  
**bad** *bon bon*  
**baggage claim** *teerukaayu bagaas*  
*tey-roo-kai-yoo ba-gaas*  
**bank** *bank baank*  
**bathroom** *wanag wa-nak*  
**battery** *piil peel*  
**beautiful** *rafet ra-fet*  
**bed** *lal lal*  
**beer** *beer beyr*  
**bees** *yamb yamb*  
**before** *balaa ba-laa*  
**bicycle** *velo ve-loh*  
**big** *réy ray*  
**blanket** *mbàjj mbaaj*  
**blood group** *xeetu deret khey-too de-ret*  
**bottle** *butéel boo-teyl*  
**bottle opener** *ubbikaayu butéel ub-bee-kai-yoo boo-teyl*  
**boy** *xale bu goor kha-le boo gohr*  
**brakes (car)** *fere fe-re*  
**breakfast** *ndekki ndek-kee*  
**bronchitis** *bronsiit bron-seet*

## C

**café** *kafé ka-fay*  
**cancel** *bayyi baiy-yee*  
**can opener** *ubbikaayu pot ub-bee-kai-yoo pot*  
**cash** *n espes es-pes*  
**cell phone** *portaabal por-taa-bal*  
**centre** *n biir beer*  
**cheap** *yomb yomb*  
**check (bill)** *adisiyon a-di-see-yon*  
**check-in** *n jël caabi juhl chaa-bee*  
**chest** *dënn duhn*  
**child** *xale kha-le*  
**cigarette** *sigaret see-ga-ret*  
**city** *dëkk duhk*  
**clean** *a set set*  
**closed** *téj tij*  
**codeine** *kodeyin koh-de-yeen*  
**cold** *a sedd sed*  
**collect call** *PCV pe-se-ve*  
**condom** *preservatif prey-seyr-va-teef*  
**constipation** *seere sey-re*  
**contact lenses** *lanti lan-tee*  
**cough** *n ségët suh-kuht*  
**currency exchange** *dëwiis duh-wees*  
**customs (immigration)** *duwaan doo-waan*

## D

**dairy products** *lu jóge ci meew loo joh-ge chee meyw*  
**dangerous** *dansërë daa-suh-ruh*  
**date (time)** *dat dat*  
**day** *bës buhs*  
**diaper** *ngemb ngemb*  
**diarrhoea** *biir buy daw beer boo-ee dow*  
**dinner** *reer reyr*  
**dirty** *tilim ti-lim*  
**disabled (person)** *andikape an-dee-ka-pey*  
**double bed** *lalu ñaari nit la-loo nyaa-ree nit*  
**drink** *n buwaason boo-waa-son*  
**drivers licence** *permi kondiir per-mee kon-deer*  
**drug (illicit)** *dorog do-rög*

## E

ear *nopp* nop  
 east *penku* pen-koo  
 economy class *kalaas bu yomb ka-laas* boo yomb  
 elevator *asansëër a-san-suuhr*  
 email *n imel ee-mel*  
 English (language) *angale an-ga-ley*  
 exchange rate *kuru weccee koo-roo we-chey*  
 exit *n bunt* bunt  
 expensive *jafe ja-fe*  
 eye *bët* buht

## F

fast *gaaw* gow  
 fever *yaram wuy tàng ya-ram woo-ee* taang  
 finger *baaraam baa-raam*  
 first class *përëmiyeer kalas puh-ruh-mee-yeyr ka-las*  
 fish *n jën juhn*  
 food *lekk* lek  
 foot *tank* taank  
 fork *furset fur-set*  
 free (of charge) *amul fey a-mul* fay  
 fruit *furwi fur-wee*  
 funny *reetaanlu rey-taan-loo*

## G

game park *reserv* rey-serv  
 gift *kado ka-do*  
 girl *xale bu jigéen kha-le* boo *ji-geyn*  
 glass (drinking) *kaas kaas*  
 glasses *linet li-net*  
 good *baax* baakh  
 gram *garam ga-ram*  
 guide *n njiit* njeet

## H

hand *loxo lo-kho*  
 happy *kotaan kon-taan*  
 have *am* am  
 he *moom* mohm  
 head *bopp* bop  
 headache *bopp buy metti bop boo-ee met-tee*  
 heart *xol khol*  
 heart condition *feeburu xol fey-ba-roo khol*  
 heat *n tàngaay taan-gaai*  
 here *fii* fee  
 high *kawe ka-we*  
 highway *otoruut ot-to-root*

homosexual *n&a góor-jigéen gohr-ji-geyn*  
 hot *tàng* taang  
 hungry *xiif* kheef

## I

I *man* maan  
 identification (card) *dantite dan-tee-te*  
 ill *wopp* wop  
 important *am solo am so-lo*  
 Internet *anternet an-ter-net*  
 interpreter *lapto lap-to*

## J

job *ligéey li-gay*

## K

key *caabi chaa-bee*  
 kilogram *kilo kee-lo*  
 kitchen *waan waany*  
 knife *paaka paa-ka*

## L

laundry (place) *fóotukaay foh-too-kaai*  
 lawyer *awokaa a-woh-kaa*  
 left-luggage office *konseñ kon-seeny*  
 leg *tank* taank  
 lesbian *n&a lesbiyen les-bee-yen*  
 letter (mail) *bataaxal ba-taa-khal*  
 like *v bëgg* buhg  
 love *v nob* nob  
 lunch *añ* any

## M

man *góor* gohr  
 matches *almet al-met*  
 meat *yàpp* yaap  
 medicine *garab ga-rab*  
 message *yóbbante yohb-ban-te*  
 mobile phone *portaabal por-taa-bal*  
 month *weer* weyr  
 morning *suba soo-ba*  
 motorcycle *moto mo-to*  
 mouth *gémmin gem-meeny*  
 movie *film* film  
 museum *mise mee-se*  
 music *misik mee-seek*

## N

name (first) *tur* tur  
 name (surname) *n sant* sant  
 napkin *serwiyet ser-wee-yet*  
 nappy *ngemb* ngemb  
 national park *park nasyonaal*  
 park *nas-yo-naal*  
 nausea *xel mu teey khel moo tey*  
 neck *baat* baat  
 new *bees* beys  
 news *xabaar kha-baar*  
 newspaper *surnaal sur-naal*  
 night *guddi gud-dee*  
 nightclub *bwat bwat*  
 noisy *bare coow ba-re* choh  
 nonsmoking *fu kenn dul táx*  
 foo *ken dul tohkh*  
 north *běj-gànnar*  
 buh *j-gaan-naar*  
 nose *bakkan bak-kan*  
 now *léegi ley-gee*  
 number *nimero* nee-me-ro  
 nuts (peanuts) *gerte ger-te*

## O

oil (engine) *iwil ee-weel*  
 OK *baax na* baakh na  
 old *màgget maag-get*  
 open *a ubbi ub-bee*  
 outside *ci biti chee bee-tee*

## P

package *pakat pa-ket*  
 pain *mettit met-teet*  
 palace *pale* pa-le  
 paper *kéyit kuh-yit*  
 park (car) *v gaare gaa-re*  
 passport *paaspoor paas-pawr*  
 pay *v fey* fay  
 pen *bindukaay bin-doo-kai*  
 petrol *esaas e-saas*  
 pharmacy *farmasi far-ma-see*  
 plate *palaat pa-la-at*  
 postcard *kart postaal*  
 kart *poh-staal*  
 post office *post* post  
 pregnant *ëmb* uhmb

## Q

quiet *teey* teey

## R

rain *n taw* tow  
 razor *raasuwaar raa-su-waar*  
 registered mail *leetar rekomande lee-tar re-ko-man-de*  
 rent *v luwe loo-we*  
 repair *v defar de-far*  
 reservation *reserwaasiyon rey-ser-waa-see-yon*  
 restaurant *restoraan res-to-raan*  
 return *v dellu del-loo*  
 road *yoan* yawn  
 room *néeg* nayg

## S

sad *trist* treest  
 safe *a wóor* woohr  
 sanitary napkin *fridom free-dom*  
 seat *toogu taw-gu*  
 send (someone) *yónni yon-nee*  
 send (something) *yónnee yon-ney*  
 (to have) sex *tëdd ak* tuhd ak  
 shampoo *sampowe sam-po-we*  
 share (a dorm) *bokk (néeg) bok* (neyyg)  
 shaving cream *krem pur watu krem pur wa-too*  
 she *moom* mohm  
 sheet (bed) *darab da-rap*  
 shirt *simis si-mis*  
 shoes *dáll* daal  
 shop *n bitik bee-teek*  
 shower (place) *n sanguwaay san-goo-waai*  
 skin *der* der  
 skirt *siip* seep  
 sleep *v nelaw ne-low*  
 small *tuuti too-tee*  
 smoke (cigarettes) *v táx* tohkh  
 soap *saabu saa-boo*  
 some (a little) *tuuti too-tee*  
 soon *léegi ley-gee*  
 sore throat *baat bu metti baat boo met-tee*  
 south *běj-saalum buh-saa-loom*  
 souvenir shop *bitiku suweniir bee-tee-koo soo-we-neer*  
 speak *wax wakh*  
 speak (a language) *dégg deg*  
 spoon *kuddu kood-doo*  
 stamp *tambar tam-bar*  
 station (train) *gaar* gaar  
 stomach *biir* beer

© Lonely Planet Publications

**stop** *v taxaw ta-khow*  
**stop (bus)** *n are kaar a-re kaar*  
**street** *mbedd mbed*  
**student** *jàngkat jaang-kat*  
**sunscreen** *krem soleer krem so-leyr*  
**swim** *v féey faay*

## T

**tampons** *tampong tam-pong*  
**teeth** *bēñ buhny*  
**telephone** *n telefon te-le-fon*  
**television** *telewisyon te-le-wis-yon*  
**temperature (weather)** *tamperatir tam-pe-ra-teer*  
**tent** *xayma khai-ma*  
**that (one)** *bee bey*  
**that (one over there)** *bēle buh-le*  
**they** *ñoom nyohm*  
**thirsty** *mar mar*  
**this (one)** *bii bee*  
**throat** *put put*  
**ticket (admission)** *tike ti-ke*  
**ticket (transport)** *biye bee-ye*  
**time (for something)** *jot jot*  
**time (o'clock)** *waxtu wakh-too*  
**tired** *sonn son*  
**tissues** *muswaar mus-waar*  
**today** *tey tay*  
**toilet** *wanag wa-nak*  
**tonight** *tey ci guddi tay chee gud-dee*  
**toothache** *bēñ buy metti buhny boo-ee met-tee*  
**toothbrush** *borosada bo-ro-sa-da*  
**toothpaste** *kolgat kol-gat*  
**torch (flashlight)** *lampu tors lam-poo tors*  
**tourist office** *sandika dinisiativ*  
*san-dee-ka dee-nee-see-ya-teev*  
**towel** *serwiyet ser-wee-yet*  
**translate** *tekki tek-kee*  
**travel agency** *asansu wayaas a-saan-su wo-yaas*  
**travellers cheque** *traveleer tra-ve-leyr*  
**trousers** *tubéy too-bay*  
**twin beds** *lal lal*  
**tyre** *pēñ puh-nuh*

## U

**underwear (underpants)** *silip si-lip*  
**urgent** *jamp jump*

## V

**vegetable** *n lejum le-jum*  
**vegetarian** *a nit ku dul lekk yàpp*  
*nit koo dul lek yaap*  
**visa** *visa vee-sa*

## W

**waiter** *servēr seyr-vuhr*  
**walk** *v dox dokh*  
**wallet** *kalpe kal-pe*  
**warm** *a tàng taang*  
**wash (something)** *raxas ra-khas*  
**watch** *n montar mon-tar*  
**water** *n ndox ndokh*  
**we** *ñun nyun*  
**weekend** *wikend wee-kend*  
**west** *sowu soh-woo*  
**wheelchair** *puus-puus*  
*poos-poos*  
**when** *kañ kany*  
**where** *fan fan*  
**who** *kan kan*  
**why** *lutax loo-takh*  
**window** *palanteer pa-lan-teyr*  
**wine** *biññ beeny*  
**with** *ak ak*  
**without** *bu amul boo a-mul*  
**woman** *jigéen ji-geyn*  
**write** *bind bind*

## Y

**you** *sg yow yohw*  
**you** *pl yeen yeyn*

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# Xhosa



# pronunciation

| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |               | Consonants |                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | English sound | Symbol     | English sound                   |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | father        | b          | as in rib-punch                 |
| aw                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | law           | b'         | strong b with air sucked in     |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | bet           | ch'        | as in 'let-show', but spat out' |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | see           | d          | as in 'hard-times'              |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | put           | dl         | like a voiced hl                |
| <p>In this chapter, the Xhosa pronunciation is given in teal after each phrase.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot, and the syllable stressed in each word is italicised.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p><i>Enkosi.</i>      <i>e-nk'aw-see</i></p> <p>Xhosa's glottalised consonants, simplified as b', ch', k', p', t' and ts' in our pronunciation guide, are made by tightening and releasing the space between the vocal cords when you pronounce the sound, a bit like combining it with the sound in the middle of the word 'uh-oh'. The sound b' has an extra twist – instead of breathing out to make the sound, you breathe in.</p> <p>For information on Xhosa's distinctive click sounds, see the box on page 184.</p> <p>The term 'voiced' used in relation to the dl sound means that it's produced with the vocal cords vibrating.</p> |               | f          | fun                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | g          | as in 'big-kick'                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | h          | hat                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | hl         | as in the Welsh 'llewellyn'     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | j          | jar                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | k          | kit                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | k'         | strong k                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | l          | lot                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | m          | man                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | n          | not                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | ng         | finger                          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | ny         | canyon                          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | p          | pet                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | p'         | poping p                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | r          | run (rolled)                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | s          | sun                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | sh         | shot                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | t          | top                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | t'         | spitting t                      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | ts'        | as in 'lets', but spat out      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | v          | very                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | w          | win                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | y          | yes                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |               | z          | zero                            |

# XHOSA

## isixhosa

## introduction

Learn some Xhosa (*Funda isiXhosa fu-ndaa ee-see-kh'aw-saa*) words and not only will you be able to communicate with the Xhosa people in their own language, but you'll have something in common with one of Africa's greatest heroes. Nelson Mandela is arguably the world's most famous Xhosa speaker – incidentally, his Xhosa name is the somewhat prophetic *Rolihlahla* raw-lee-hlaa-hlaa (troublemaker). Xhosa is the most widely distributed African language in South Africa (although most of its speakers live in the southeastern Cape Province) and one of the country's official languages. About 18 per cent of South Africans, or six and a half million people, speak Xhosa. It belongs to the Nguni subfamily of the Bantu languages, along with Zulu, Swati and Ndebele. The Bantu-speaking groups migrated south over the centuries along the coast of East Africa and through Central Africa. In southern Africa, they encountered Khoisan-speaking people and borrowed elements of their language – in particular, the 'click' sounds, a distinctive feature of Xhosa and other South African languages.



## language difficulties

|                       |                              |                                 |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Do you speak English? | <i>Uyasithetha isingesi?</i> | u-yaa-see-te-taa ee-see-nge-see |
| Do you understand?    | <i>Uyaqonda?</i>             | u-yaa-kjaw-ndaa                 |
| I (don't) understand. | <i>(Andi)qondi.</i>          | (aa-ndee-)kjaw-ndee             |
| Could you please ...? | <i>Unakho ukunceda ...?</i>  | u-naa-kaw u-k'u-nle-daa ...     |
| repeat that           | <i>khawuphinde</i>           | kaa-wu-pee-nde                  |
| speak more            | <i>thetha ngoku</i>          | te-taa ngaw-k'u                 |
| slowly                | <i>cothisisa</i>             | klaw-tee-see-saa                |
| write it down         | <i>yibhale phantsi</i>       | yee-baa-le paa-nts'ee           |

### click sounds

Xhosa has a series of click sounds: some clicks are against the front teeth (like a 'tsk' sound), some are against the roof of the mouth at the front (like a 'tock' sound) and some are against the side teeth (like the chirrup you make to get a horse to start walking).

| front teeth | roof of the mouth | side teeth      | description                    |
|-------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| k!          | k <sub>ɪ</sub>    | k <sub>ɪ</sub>  | voiceless                      |
| kh!         | kh <sub>ɪ</sub>   | kh <sub>ɪ</sub> | aspirated (with a puff of air) |
| g!          | g <sub>ɪ</sub>    | g <sub>ɪ</sub>  | voiced                         |
| n!          | n <sub>ɪ</sub>    | n <sub>ɪ</sub>  | nasalized voiceless            |
| gn!         | gn <sub>ɪ</sub>   | gn <sub>ɪ</sub> | nasalised voiced               |

## time, dates & numbers

|                     |                               |                                      |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| What time is it?    | <i>Ngubani ixesha?</i>        | ngu-b'aa-nee ee-k/e-shaa             |
| It's one o'clock.   | <i>Nguwani.</i>               | ngu-waa-nee                          |
| It's (two) o'clock. | <i>Ngu(thu).</i>              | ngu-(tu)                             |
| Quarter past (one). | <i>Yikota pasti (wani).</i>   | yee-k'aw-t'aa p'aa-st'ee (waa-nee)   |
| Half past (one).    | <i>Yihaf pasti (wani).</i>    | yee-haaf p'aa-st'ee (waa-nee)        |
| Quarter to (eight). | <i>Yikota thu(eyiti).</i>     | yee-k'aw-t'aa tu-(e-yee-t'ee)        |
| At what time ...?   | <i>Ngobani ixesha ...?</i>    | ngaw-b'aa-nee ee-k/e-shaa ...        |
| At ...              | <i>Ngo ...</i>                | ngaw ...                             |
| It's (15 December). | <i>Yi(fiftini kaDisemba).</i> | yee-(feef-t'ee-nee k'aa-dee-se-mbaa) |

|           |                    |                  |
|-----------|--------------------|------------------|
| yesterday | <i>izolo</i>       | ee-zaw-law       |
| today     | <i>namhlanje</i>   | naam-hlaa-nje    |
| tomorrow  | <i>ngomso</i>      | ngaw-msaw        |
| Monday    | <i>mvulo</i>       | mvu-law          |
| Tuesday   | <i>lwesibini</i>   | lwe-see-b'ee-nee |
| Wednesday | <i>lwesithathu</i> | lwe-see-taa-tu   |
| Thursday  | <i>lwesine</i>     | lwe-see-ne       |
| Friday    | <i>lwesihlanu</i>  | lwe-see-hlaa-nu  |
| Saturday  | <i>mgqibelo</i>    | m-gjee-b'e-law   |
| Sunday    | <i>cawa</i>        | k!aa-waa         |

### numbers

In Xhosa, numbers borrowed from English are commonly used and will be understood. They're also given in this chapter, rather than the more complex Xhosa forms. Numbers one to 10 are given below.

|   |               |                   |    |               |                    |
|---|---------------|-------------------|----|---------------|--------------------|
| 1 | <i>wani</i>   | <i>waa-nee</i>    | 6  | <i>siksi</i>  | <i>seek'-see</i>   |
| 2 | <i>thu</i>    | <i>tu</i>         | 7  | <i>seveni</i> | <i>se-ve-nee</i>   |
| 3 | <i>thri</i>   | <i>tree</i>       | 8  | <i>eyithi</i> | <i>e-yee-tee</i>   |
| 4 | <i>fo</i>     | <i>faw</i>        | 9  | <i>nayini</i> | <i>naa-yee-nee</i> |
| 5 | <i>fayifu</i> | <i>faa-yee-fu</i> | 10 | <i>teni</i>   | <i>t'e-nee</i>     |

## border crossing

|                                   |                                           |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| I'm here ...                      | <i>Ndilapha ...</i>                       | ndee-laa-paa ...                                 |
| in transit                        | <i>ngothonutho</i>                        | ngaw-tu-taw                                      |
| on business                       | <i>shishina</i>                           | shee-shee-naa                                    |
| on holiday                        | <i>eholideyini</i>                        | e-haw-lee-de-yee-nee                             |
| I'm here for ...                  | <i>Ndilapha ka ...</i>                    | ndee-laa-paa k'aa ...                            |
| (10) days                         | <i>(teni) imini</i>                       | (t'e-nee) ee-mee-nee                             |
| (three) weeks                     | <i>(thri) iveki</i>                       | (tree) ee-ve-k'ee                                |
| (two) months                      | <i>(thu) inyanga</i>                      | (tu) ee-nyaa-ngaa                                |
| I'm going to (Cintsa).            | <i>Ndiya kwidolophu (eCintsa).</i>        | ndee-yaa k'wee-daw-law-pu (e-lee-nts'aa)         |
| I'm staying at the (Buccaneer's). | <i>Ndihlala kwihotele (eBuccaneer's).</i> | ndee-hlaa-laa k'wee-haw-t'e-le (e-b'u-k!aa-ners) |

## tickets

|                                            |                                                             |                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A ... ticket<br>(to Mdantsane),<br>please. | <i>Linye ... itikiti<br/>(eliya eMdantsane),<br/>nceda.</i> | lee-nye ... ee-t'ee-k'ee-t'ee<br>(e-lee-yaa e-mdaa-nts'aa-ne)<br>n!e-daa                                                              |
| one-way                                    | <i>ndlelanye</i>                                            | <i>ndle-laa-nye</i>                                                                                                                   |
| return                                     | <i>buyela</i>                                               | <i>b'u-ye-laa</i>                                                                                                                     |
| I'd like to ... my<br>ticket, please.      | <i>Ndingathanda uku ...<br/>itikiti lam,<br/>ndiyacela.</i> | ndee-ngaa-taa-ndaa u-k'u ...<br>ee-t'ee-k'ee-t'ee laam<br>ndee-yaa-!e-laa<br><i>khaw-k'ee-saa<br/>ch'ee-ntshaa<br/>jaw-k'e-le-laa</i> |
| cancel                                     | <i>rhoxisa</i>                                              |                                                                                                                                       |
| change                                     | <i>tshintsha</i>                                            |                                                                                                                                       |
| collect                                    | <i>qokelela</i>                                             |                                                                                                                                       |
| I'd like a ...<br>seat, please.            | <i>Ndingathanda ...<br/>esihlalweni,<br/>ndiyacela.</i>     | ndee-ngaa-taa-ndaa ...<br>e-see-hlaa-lwe-nee<br>ndee-yaa-!e-laa                                                                       |
| nonsmoking                                 | <i>ukutshaya</i>                                            | <i>u-k'u-ch'aa-yaa</i>                                                                                                                |
| smoking                                    | <i>ukungatshayi</i>                                         | <i>u-k'u-ngaa-ch'aa-yee</i>                                                                                                           |

### Is there a toilet/air conditioning?

*Ikhona ithoyilethi/umoya  
ogudileyo?* ee-kaw-naa ee-taw-yee-le-tee/u-maw-yaa  
aw-gu-dee-le-yaw

### How long does the trip take?

*Luthatha kangakanani  
uhambo?* lu-taa-taa k'aa-ngaa-k'aa-naa-nee  
u-haa-mb'aw

### Is it a direct route?

*Yindlela ethe tse?* yee-ndle-laa e-te ts'e

## transport

### Where does flight (SAA59) arrive/depart?

*Iflayithi (SAA fifiti nayini)  
ifika/ihamba phi?* ee-flaa-yee-tee (s-aa-aa feef-t'ee naa-yee-nee)  
ee-fee-k'aa/ee-haa-mb'aa pee

### How long will it be delayed?

*Izakulibazisa  
kangakanani?* ee-zaa-k'u-lee-b'aa-zee-saa  
k'aa-ngaa-k'aa-naa-nee

### Is this the ... to (Port Elizabeth)?

boat  
bus  
plane  
train

*Yile ... eya  
(eBhayi)?*

*iphenyane  
ibhasi  
inqwelomoya  
uloliwe*

*yee-le ... e-yaa  
(e-baa-yee)?*

*ee-pe-nyaa-ne  
ee-baa-see  
ee-njwe-law-maw-yaa  
u-law-lee-we*

### How much is it to ...?

*Kuxabisa njani u ...?*

*ku-k/aa-b'ee-saa njaa-nee u ...*

### Please take me to (this address).

*Ndicela undise (kule dilesi).*

*ndee-k!e-laa u-ndee-se (k'u-le dee-le-see)*

### I'd like to hire a car/4WD (with air conditioning).

*Ndifuna ukuhayarisha  
imoto/4WD  
(ibe nomoya ogudileyo).*

*ndee-fu-naa u-k'u-haa-yaa-ree-shaa  
ee-maw-t'aw/ee-faw-weel-draa-yee-vu  
(ee-b'e naw-maw-yaa aw-gu-dee-le-yaw)*

### How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

*Ixabisa kangakanani  
iintsuku (eziyithri)/iiveki?*

*ee-k/aa-b'ee-saa k'aa-ngaa-k'aa-naa-nee  
ee-nts'u-k'u (e-zee-yee-tree)/ee-ve-k'ee*

## directions

### Where's the (nearest) ...?

internet café

*lphi e(kufutshane) ...?*

*ee-pee e-(k'u-fu-ch'aa-ne) ...*

*ikhefi  
yeintanethi  
imakhethi*

*ee-ke-fee  
ye-ee-nt'aa-ne-tee  
ee-maa-ke-tee*

market

### Is this the road to (Grahamstown)?

*Ingaba lendlela iya (eRhini)?*

*ee-ngaa-b'aa le-ndle-laa ee-yaa (e-khee-nee)*

### Can you show me (on the map)?

*Ungandibonisa (kwimaphu)?*

*ungaa-ndee-b'aw-nee-saa (k'wee-maa-pu)*

### What's the address?

*Ithini idilesi?*

*ee-tee-nee ee-dee-le-see*

### How far is it?

*Kukude kangakanani?*

*k'u-k'u-de k'aa-ngaa-k'aa-naa-nee*

### How do I get there?

*Ndifika njani apho?*

*ndee-fee-k'aa njaa-nee aa-paw*

### Turn left/right.

*Jika ekhohlo/ekunene.*

*jee-k'aa e-kaw-hlaw/e-k'u-ne-ne*

| It's ...        | I ...                   | ee ...                          |
|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| behind ...      | <i>emva ...</i>         | <i>e-mvaa ...</i>               |
| in front of ... | <i>ngaphambi ko ...</i> | <i>ngaa-paa-mb'ee k'aw ...</i>  |
| near (to ...)   | <i>kufutshane ...</i>   | <i>k'u-fu-ch'aa-ne ...</i>      |
| next to ...     | <i>landelayo ...</i>    | <i>laa-nde-laa-yaw ...</i>      |
| on the corner   | <i>ekoneni</i>          | <i>e-kaw-ne-nee</i>             |
| opposite ...    | <i>chaseneyo ...</i>    | <i>kh!aa-se-ne-yaw ...</i>      |
| straight ahead  | <i>nkqo-ngaphambili</i> | <i>nkjaw-ngaa-paa-mb'ee-lee</i> |
| there           | <i>apho</i>             | <i>aa-paw</i>                   |

## accommodation

| Where's a ...? | <i>lphi i ...?</i>        | <i>ee-pee ee ...</i>               |
|----------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| camping        | <i>ibala</i>              | <i>ee-b'aa-laa</i>                 |
| ground         | <i>lokukhempisha</i>      | <i>law-k'u-ke-mp'ee-shaa</i>       |
| guesthouse     | <i>indlu yamandwendwe</i> | <i>ee-ndlu yaa-maa-ndwe-ndwe</i>   |
| hotel          | <i>ihotele</i>            | <i>ee-haw-t'e-le</i>               |
| youth hostel   | <i>ihotele yolutsha</i>   | <i>ee-haw-st'e-le yaw-lu-ch'aa</i> |

### Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

|                          |                                     |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Ungancoma naphina</i> | <i>u-ngaa-nk!aw-maa naa-pee-naa</i> |
| <i>tshipu/kakuhle?</i>   | <i>ch'ee-p'u/k'aa-k'u-hle</i>       |

### I'd like to book a room, please.

|                                 |                                              |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ndingathanda ukubhukisha</i> | <i>ndee-ngaa-taa-ndaa u-k'u-bu-k'ee-shaa</i> |
| <i>igumbi, ndiyacela.</i>       | <i>ee-gu-mb'ee ndee-yaa-k!e-laa</i>          |

### I have a reservation.

|                            |                                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Ndinamalungiselelo.</i> | <i>ndee-naa-maa-lu-ngee-se-le-law</i> |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|

| Do you have | <i>Unalo</i>       | <i>u-naa-law</i>       |
|-------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| a ... room? | <i>igumbi ...?</i> | <i>ee-gu-mb'ee ...</i> |
| single      | <i>kanye</i>       | <i>k'aa-nye</i>        |
| double      | <i>kabini</i>      | <i>k'aa-b'ee-nee</i>   |
| twin        | <i>wele</i>        | <i>we-le</i>           |

### How much is it per night/person?

|                                |                                             |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Yimalini ubusuku/umntu?</i> | <i>yee-maa-lee-nee u-b'u-su-k'u/um-nt'u</i> |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

### I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

|                              |                                          |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ndingathanda ukuhlala</i> | <i>ndee-ngaa-taa-ndaa u-k'u-hlaa-laa</i> |
| <i>ubusuku ka(bini).</i>     | <i>u-b'u-su-k'u k'aa-(b'ee-nee)</i>      |

### What time is check-out?

|                                |                                          |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Lithini ixesha</i>          | <i>lee-tee-nee ee-k!e-shaa</i>           |
| <i>lokuphonononga phandle?</i> | <i>law-k'u-paw-naw-naw-ngaa paa-ndle</i> |

### Am I allowed to camp here?

|                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Ndivumelekile</i>      | <i>ndee-vu-me-le-k'ee-le</i>      |
| <i>ukukhempisha apha?</i> | <i>u-k'u-ke-mp'ee-shaa aa-paa</i> |

## banking & communications

| I'd like to ...     | <i>Ndingathanda ...</i>  | <i>ndee-ngaa-taa-ndaa ...</i>     |
|---------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| arrange a transfer  | <i>cwangcisela</i>       | <i>klwaa-ng!ee-se-laa</i>         |
|                     | <i>utshintsho</i>        | <i>u-ch'ee-nch'aw</i>             |
| cash a cheque       | <i>itsheki yemali</i>    | <i>ee-ch'e-k'ee ye-maa-lee</i>    |
| change a travellers | <i>tshintsha itsheki</i> | <i>ch'ee-nch'aa ee-ch'ee-k'ee</i> |
| cheque              | <i>yabahambi</i>         | <i>yaa-b'aa-haa-mb'ee</i>         |
| change money        | <i>tshintsha imali</i>   | <i>ch'ee-nch'aa ee-maa-lee</i>    |
| withdraw money      | <i>tsala imali</i>       | <i>ts'aa-laa ee-maa-lee</i>       |
| I want to ...       | <i>Ndifuna uku ...</i>   | <i>ndee-fu-naa u-k'u ...</i>      |
| buy a phonecard     | <i>thenga ikhadi</i>     | <i>te-ngaa ee-kaa-dee</i>         |
|                     | <i>lokufowuna</i>        | <i>law-k'u-faw-wu-naa</i>         |
| call (Singapore)    | <i>fowuna e</i>          | <i>faw-wu-naa e</i>               |
|                     | <i>(Singapore)</i>       | <i>(see-ngaa-p'aw-re)</i>         |
| reverse the         | <i>buyisela i</i>        | <i>b'u-yee-se-laa ee</i>          |
| charges             | <i>intlawulo</i>         | <i>ee-ntl'aa-wu-law</i>           |
| use a printer       | <i>sebenzisa</i>         | <i>se-b'e-nzee-saa</i>            |
|                     | <i>iprinta</i>           | <i>ee-pree-nt'aa</i>              |
| use the internet    | <i>sebenzisa i</i>       | <i>se-b'e-nzee-saa ee</i>         |
|                     | <i>intanethi</i>         | <i>ee-nt'aa-ne-tee</i>            |

### How much is it per hour?

|                            |                                              |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ingaxabisa</i>          | <i>ee-ngaa-k!aa-b'ee-saa</i>                 |
| <i>kanganani ngeawari?</i> | <i>k'aa-ngaa-k'aa-naa-nee nge-aa-waa-ree</i> |

### How much does a (three-minute) call cost?

|                           |                                             |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ingaba ixabisa</i>     | <i>ee-ngaa-b'aa ee-k!aa-b'ee-saa</i>        |
| <i>kanganani (imizuzu</i> | <i>k'aa-ngaa-k'aa-naa-nee (ee-mee-zu-zu</i> |
| <i>eyithri) yocingo?</i>  | <i>e-yee-tree) yaw-k!ee-ngaw</i>            |

### (One rand) per minute/hour.

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>(Wani randi)</i>    | <i>(waa-nee raa-ndee)</i>      |
| <i>umzuzu/ngewari.</i> | <i>um-zu-zu/nge-aa-waa-ree</i> |

## tours

|                              |                                          |                                                             |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| When's the next ...?         | <i>Yeyiphi landelayo ...?</i>            | ye-yee-pee<br>laa-nde-laa-yaw ...                           |
| day trip                     | <i>usuku lohamba</i>                     | u-su-k'u law-haa-mb'aa                                      |
| tour                         | <i>ukhenketho</i>                        | u-ke-nk'e-taw                                               |
| Is ... included?             | <i>I ... idityanisiwe?</i>               | ee ... dee-ty'aa-nee-see-we                                 |
| accommodation                | <i>indawo yokuhlala</i>                  | ee-ndaa-waw<br>yaw-k'u-hlaa-laa                             |
| the admission charge         | <i>ixabiso elibizwayo</i>                | ee-k'aa-b'ee-saw<br>e-lee-b'ee-zwaa-yaw                     |
| food                         | <i>intlawulo</i>                         | ee-ntlaa-wu-law                                             |
| transport                    | <i>ukutya isithuthi</i>                  | u-k'u-ty'aa<br>ee-see-tu-tee                                |
| How long is the tour?        | <i>Lude kangakanani ukhenketho?</i>      | lu-de k'aa-ngaa-k'aa-naa-nee u-ke-nk'e-taw                  |
| What time should we be back? | <i>Ngubani ixesha esinokubuya ngalo?</i> | ngu-b'aa-nee ee-k'le-shaa<br>e-see-naw-k'u-b'u-yaa ngaa-law |

## shopping

|                               |                                   |                                            |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| I'm looking for ...           | <i>Ndifuna ...</i>                | ndee-fu-naa ...                            |
| I need film for this camera.  | <i>Ndifuna ifilimu yekhamera.</i> | ndee-fu-naa ee-fee-lee-mu ye-kaa-me-raa    |
| Can I listen to this?         | <i>Ndingamamela le?</i>           | ndee-ngaa-maa-me-laa le                    |
| Can I have my ... repaired?   | <i>Ndiyafuna ilungisiwe ...?</i>  | ndee-yaa-fu-naa ee-lu-ngee-swe ...         |
| When will it be ready?        | <i>Izakulunga nini?</i>           | ee-zaa-k'u-lu-ngaa nee-nee                 |
| How much is it?               | <i>Yimalini?</i>                  | yee-maa-li-nee                             |
| Can you write down the price? | <i>Ungabhala phantsi ixabiso?</i> | u-ngaa-baa-laa paa-nts'ee ee-k'aa-b'ee-saw |

### What's your lowest price?

*Lithini ixabiso elingezantsi?* lee-tee-nee ee-k'aa-b'ee-saw e-lee-nge-zaa-nts'ee

### I'll give you (five) rand.

*Ndzakunika (ifayifu) randi.* ndee-zaa-k'u-nee-k'aa (ee-faa-yee-fu) raa-ndee

### There's a mistake in the bill.

*Ikhona impazamo kwibhili.* ee-kaw-naa ee-mp'aa-zaa-maw k'wee-bee-lee

### It's faulty.

*lyaphazama.* ee-ya-paa-zaa-maa

### I'd like a receipt/refund, please.

*Ndingathanda irisiti/irifandi, ndiyacela.* ndee-ngaa-taa-ndaa ee-ree-see-t'ee/  
ee-ree-faa-ndee ndee-yaa-k'le-laa

### Do you accept ...?

|              |                          |                                    |
|--------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| credit cards | <i>Uyayamkela ...?</i>   | u-yaa-yaam-k'e-laa ...             |
| debit cards  | <i>ikhredithi khadi</i>  | ee-kre-dee-tee kaa-dee             |
| travellers   | <i>idebhithi khadi</i>   | ee-de-bee-tee kaa-dee              |
| cheques      | <i>itsheki zabahambi</i> | ee-ch'e-k'ee<br>zaa-b'aa-haa-mb'ee |

### Could you ...?

|                               |                             |                                  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| burn a CD from my memory card | <i>Ungakwazi uku ...?</i>   | u-ngaa-k'waa-zee u-k'u ...       |
|                               | <i>tshisa isidi</i>         | ch'ee-saa ee-see-dee             |
|                               | <i>kweyam imemori khadi</i> | k'we-yam ee-me-maw-ree<br>ka-dee |
| develop this film             | <i>phucula le ifilimu</i>   | pu-k'u-laa le ee-fee-lee-mu      |

## making conversation

|                   |                                 |                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Hello.            | <i>Molo.</i>                    | maw-law                               |
| Good night.       | <i>Ubusuku benzolo.</i>         | u-b'u-su-k'u b'e-nzaw-law             |
| Goodbye.          | <i>Usale ngoxolo.</i>           | u-saa-le ngaw-k'aw-law                |
| Mr                | <i>Mhlekezi</i>                 | mhle-k'aa-zee                         |
| Mrs               | <i>Nkosazana</i>                | nk'aw-saa-zaa-naa                     |
| Ms/Miss           | <i>Nenekazi</i>                 | ne-ne-k'aa-zee                        |
| How are you?      | <i>Kunjani?</i>                 | k'u-njaa-nee                          |
| Fine, and you?    | <i>Ndiyaphila, unjani wena?</i> | ndee-yaa-pee-laa<br>u-njaa-nee we-naa |
| What's your name? | <i>Ngubani igama lakho?</i>     | ngu-b'aa-nee<br>ee-gaa-maa laa-kaw    |
| My name's ...     | <i>Igama lam ngu ...</i>        | ee-gaa-maa laam ngu ...               |

|                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I'm pleased to meet you.                                                                                                           | <i>Ndiyavuya ukukwazi.</i>                                                                                                                               | ndee-yaa-vu-ya<br>u-k'u-k'waa-zee                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| This is my ...<br>boyfriend<br>brother<br>daughter<br>father<br>friend<br>girlfriend<br>husband<br>mother<br>sister<br>son<br>wife | <i>Yeyam le ...<br/>inkwenkwe<br/>mntakwethu<br/>intombazana<br/>utata<br/>umhlobo<br/>intokazi<br/>umyeni<br/>umama<br/>udade<br/>unyana<br/>umfazi</i> | <i>ye-yaam le ...<br/>ee-nk'we-nk'we<br/>mnt'aa-k'we-tu<br/>ee-nt'aw-mb'aa-zaa-naa<br/>u-t'aa-t'aa<br/>um-hlaw-b'aw<br/>ee-nt'aw-k'aa-zee<br/>u-mye-nee<br/>u-maa-maa<br/>u-daa-de<br/>u-nyaa-naa<br/>um-faa-zee</i> |
| Here's my ...<br>What's your ...?<br>(email) address<br>phone number                                                               | <i>Nantsi i ...<br/>Ithini i ...?<br/>idilesi (yeimeyli)<br/>inombolo<br/>yefowni</i>                                                                    | <i>naa-nts'ee ee ...<br/>ee-tee-nee ee ...<br/>ee-dee-le-see (ye-ee-mey-lee)<br/>ee-naw-mb'aw-law<br/>ye-faw-wu-nee</i>                                                                                              |
| Where are you from?                                                                                                                | <i>Ungowaphi?</i>                                                                                                                                        | u-ngaw-waa-pee                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| I'm from ...<br>Australia<br>Canada<br>New Zealand<br>the UK<br>the USA                                                            | <i>Ndingowase ...<br/>Ostreliya<br/>Khanada<br/>eNyuzilendi<br/>eUK<br/>eUSA</i>                                                                         | <i>ndee-ngaw-waa-se ...<br/>aw-stre-lee-yaa<br/>kaa-naa-daa<br/>e-nyu-zee-le-ndee<br/>e-uk'<br/>e-u-saa</i>                                                                                                          |
| I'm (not) married.<br>Can I take a photo<br>(of you)?                                                                              | <i>(Andi)tshatanga.<br/>Ndingayithatha<br/>ifoto (yakho)?</i>                                                                                            | <i>(aa-ndee-)ch'aa-t'aa-ngaa<br/>ndee-ngaa-yee-taa-taa<br/>ee-faw-t'aw (yaa-kaw)</i>                                                                                                                                 |

## eating out

|                                                         |                                                                               |                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Can you recommend a ...?<br>bar<br>dish<br>place to eat | <i>Ugakwazi<br/>ukukhuthaza ...?<br/>ibhari<br/>isitya<br/>indawo yokutya</i> | <i>u-ngaa-k'waa-zee<br/>u-k'u-ku-taa-zaa ...<br/>ee-baa-ree<br/>ee-see-ty'aa<br/>ee-ndaa-waw yaw-k'u-ty'aa</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                         |                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like ..., please.<br>the bill<br><br>the menu<br>a table for (two)<br><br>that dish | <i>Ndiyafuna ...<br/>inkcukacha<br/>ngamaxabiso<br/>isazisi<br/>itafile<br/>(yababini)<br/>esasitya</i> | <i>ndee-yaa-fu-naa ...<br/>ee-nk!u-k'aa!haa<br/>ngaa-maa-k'aa-b'ee-saw<br/>e-saa-zee-see<br/>ee-t'aa-fee-le<br/>(yaa-b'aa-b'ee-nee)<br/>e-saa-see-ty'aa</i> |
| Do you have<br>vegetarian food?                                                         | <i>Unakho ukutya kwe<br/>vejitheriyeni?</i>                                                             | <i>u-naa-kaw u-k'u-ty'aa k'we<br/>ve-jee-te-ree-ye-nee</i>                                                                                                  |
| Could you prepare<br>a meal without ...?<br>eggs<br>meat stock                          | <i>Ungalungiselela<br/>isidlo ngaphandle ...?<br/>amaqanda<br/>umhluzi</i>                              | <i>u-ngaa-lu-ngee-se-le-laa<br/>ee-see-dlaw ngaa-paa-ndle ...<br/>aa-maa-k'jaa-ndaa<br/>um-hlu-zee</i>                                                      |
| (cup of) coffee ...<br>(cup of) tea ...<br>with milk<br>without sugar                   | <i>(ikopi) yekofu ...<br/>(ikopi) yeti ...<br/>nobisi<br/>ngaphandle<br/>kweswekile</i>                 | <i>(ee-k'aw-p'ee) ye-k'aw-fu ...<br/>(ee-kaw-p'ee) ye-t'ee ...<br/>naw-b'ee-see<br/>ngaa-paa-ndle<br/>k'we-swe-k'ee-le</i>                                  |
| (boiled) water                                                                          | <i>amanzi (ashushu)</i>                                                                                 | <i>aa-maa-nzee (aa-shu-shu)</i>                                                                                                                             |

## emergencies

|                                                     |                                                           |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Help!<br>I'm lost.                                  | <i>Uncedo!<br/>Ndilahlekile.</i>                          | <i>u-n!e-daw<br/>ndee-laa-hle-k'ee-le</i>                                         |
| Call ...!<br>an ambulance<br>a doctor<br>the police | <i>Biza ...!<br/>iambulensi<br/>ugqirha<br/>amapolisa</i> | <i>b'ee-zaa ...<br/>ee-aa-mb'u-le-nsee<br/>u-gjee-khaa<br/>aa-maa-paw-lee-saa</i> |
| Could you help me, please?                          | <i>Ungandanceda, ndiyakucela?</i>                         | <i>u-ngaa-ndee-nkle-daa ndee-yaa-k'u-k!e-laa</i>                                  |
| Where are the toilets?                              | <i>Ziphi itoyilethi?</i>                                  | <i>zee-pee ee-taw-yee-le-tee</i>                                                  |
| I want to report an offence.                        | <i>Ndifuna ukuchaza iofensi.</i>                          | <i>ndee-fu-naa uk'u-kh!aa-zaa ee-aw-fe-nsee</i>                                   |
| I have insurance.                                   | <i>Ndine inshorensi.</i>                                  | <i>ndee-ne ee-nshaw-re-nsee</i>                                                   |

## I want to contact my consulate/embassy.

*Ndifuna ukhontaktha umzi/* ndee-fu-naa u-kaw-nt'aa-k'taa um-zee/  
*kamazakuzaku.* kaa-maa-zaa-k'u-zaa-k'u

|                         |                          |                           |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| I've been assaulted.    | <i>Ndibethiwe.</i>       | ndee-be-tee-we            |
| I've been raped.        | <i>Ndidlwengulwe.</i>    | ndee-dlwe-ngu-lwe         |
| I've been robbed.       | <i>Ndirojiwe.</i>        | ndee-law-jee-we           |
| I've lost my ...        | <i>Ndilahlekelwe ...</i> | ndee-laa-hle-k'e-lwe ...  |
| My ... was/were stolen. | <i>Eyam ... ibiwe.</i>   | e-yam ... ee-b'ee-we      |
| bags                    | <i>ibhegi</i>            | ee-be-gee                 |
| credit card             | <i>ikhadi lekhrediti</i> | ee-kaa-dee le-kre-dee-tee |
| handbag                 | <i>ibhegi yesandla</i>   | ee-be-gee ye-saa-ndlaa    |
| jewellery               | <i>ijuwelari</i>         | ee-ju-we-laa-ree          |
| money                   | <i>imali</i>             | ee-maa-lee                |
| passport                | <i>ipaspoti</i>          | ee-paas-paw-t'ee          |
| travellers cheques      | <i>iitsheki</i>          | ee-ch'e-k'ee              |
|                         | <i>zabahambi</i>         | zaa-b'aa-haa-mb'ee        |
| wallet                  | <i>iwolethi</i>          | ee-waw-le-tee             |

## medical needs

|                          |                                |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Where's the nearest ...? | <i>Yeyiphi kufutshane ...?</i> | ye-yee-pee k'u-fu-ch'aa-ne ... |
| dentist                  | <i>ugqirha wamazinyo</i>       | u-gjee-khaa waa-maa-zee-nyaw   |
| doctor                   | <i>ugqirha</i>                 | u-gjee-khaa                    |
| hospital                 | <i>isibhedlele</i>             | ee-see-be-dle-le               |
| pharmacist               | <i>ifamasi</i>                 | ee-faa-maa-see                 |

## I need a doctor (who speaks English).

*Ndifuna ugqirha* ndee-fu-naa u-gjee-khaa  
*(othetha isingesi).* (aw-te-taa ee-see-nge-see)

## Could I see a female doctor?

*Ndinakho ukubona ugqirha* ndee-naa-kaw u-k'u-b'aw-naa u-gjee-khaa  
*obhinqileyo?* aw-bee-njee-le-yaw

## It hurts here.

*Kubuhlungu apha.* k'u-b'u-hlu-ngu aa-paa

## I'm allergic to (penicillin).

*Andidibani ne (penisilini).* aa-ndee-dee-b'aa-nee ne (p'e-nee-see-lee-nee)

## english–xhosa dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as **n** (noun), **a** (adjective), **v** (verb), **sg** (singular), **pl** (plural), **inf** (informal) and **pol** (polite) where necessary.

## A

**accommodation** *indawo yokuhlala*  
 ee-ndaa-waw yaw-k'u-hlaa-laa  
**adaptor** *iadaptha* ee-aa-daa-ptaa  
**after** *emva* e-mvaa  
**airport** *isitishi senqwelomoya*  
 ee-see-t'ee-shee se-nlwe-law-maw-yaa  
**alcohol** *utywala* u-tywaa-laa  
**all** *onke* aw-nk'e  
**and** *na* naa  
**ankle** *iqatha* ee-jaa-taa  
**antibiotics** *iyeza lokubulala intsholongwane*  
 ee-ye-zaa law-k'u-b'u-laa-laa  
 ee-nch'aw-law-ngwaa-ne  
**anti-inflammatories** *amayeza okukrala*  
 aa-maa-ye-zaa aw-k'u-kraa-laa  
**arm** *ingalo* ee-ngaa-law  
**aspirin** *iyeza lokudambisa intlungu nefiva*  
 ee-ye-zaa law-k'u-daa-mb'ee-saa ee-ntlu-ngu  
 ne-fee-vaa  
**asthma** *umbefu* u-mb'e-fu  
**ATM** *umatshini wokugcina imali*  
 u-maa-ch'ee-nee waw-k'u-glee-naa ee-maa-lee

## B

**baby** *usana* u-saa-naa  
**back (body)** *emva* e-mvaa  
**backpack** *ingxowa oyithwala ngomqolo*  
 ee-ngk'aw-waa aw-ye-t'waa-laa ngaw-mjaw-law  
**bad** *khohlakeleyo* kaw-hlaa-k'e-le-yaw  
**bank** *ibhanki* ee-baa-nk'ee  
**bathroom** *igumbi lokuhlamba*  
 ee-gu-mb'ee law-k'u-hlaa-mb'aa  
**battery** *ibhetri* ee-bee-tree  
**beautiful** *hle* hle  
**bed** *ibhedi* ee-bee-dee  
**beer** *ibhiya* ee-bee-yaa  
**bees** *iinyosi* ee-nyaw-see  
**before** *ngaphambili* ngaa-paa-mb'ee-lee  
**bicycle** *ibhayisikili* ee-baa-ye-see-k'ee-lee  
**big** *khulu* ku-lu  
**blanket** *ingubo* ee-ngu-b'aw  
**blood group** *udidil lwegazi* u-dee-dee lwe-gaa-zee  
**bottle** *ibhotile* ee-baw-t'ee-le

**bottle opener** *isivuli bhotile* ee-see-vu-lee baw-t'ee-le  
**boy** *inkwenkwe* ee-nkwe-nkwe  
**brakes (car)** *ibreki zemoto* ee-bre-k'ee ze-maw-t'aw  
**breakfast** *isidlo sakusasa* ee-see-dlaw saa-k'u-saa-saa  
**bronchitis** *isifo semibhobho yemiphunga*  
 ee-see-faw se-mee-baw-baw ye-mee-pu-ngaa

## C

**café** *ikhefi* ee-ke-fee  
**cancel** *rhoxisa* khaw-k'ee-saa  
**can opener** *isivuli kani* ee-see-vu-lee k'aa-nee  
**cash** *imali* ee-maa-lee  
**cell phone** *iselifowuni* ee-se-lee-faw-wu-nee  
**centre** *umbindi* u-mb'ee-ndee  
**cheap** *tshipu* ch'ee-pu  
**check (bill)** *ibhili* ee-bee-lee  
**check-in** *ikhawuntara yokuzazisa*  
 ee-kaa-wu-nt'aa-raa yaw-k'u-zaa-zee-saa  
**chest** *isifuba* ee-see-fu-baa  
**child** *umntwana* um-nt'waa-naa  
**cigarette** *isigarethi* ee-see-gaa-re-tee  
**city** *isixeko* ee-see-k'e-kaw  
**clean** *coca* klaw-klaa  
**closed** *waliwe* vaa-lee-we  
**codeine** *ikhawudhini* ee-kaw-wu-dhee-nee  
**cold** *banda* b'aa-ndaa  
**collect call** *irivesikholi* ee-ree-ve-see-kaw-lee  
**condom** *ikhondom* ee-kaw-ndawm  
**constipation** *ukuqhina kwesisu*  
 u-k'u-jhee-naa k'we-see-su  
**cough** *ukhohlakhohlo* u-kaw-hlaw-kaw-hlaw  
**customs (immigration)** *indawo yongenelelo*  
 ee-ndaa-waw yaw-nge-ne-le-law

## D

**dairy products** *imveliso yasederi*  
 ee-mve-lee-saw yaa-se-de-ree  
**dangerous** *ingozi* ee-ngaw-zee  
**date (time)** *ideyithi* ee-de-ye-tee  
**day** *usuku* u-su-k'u  
**diaper** *isishuba* ee-see-shu-b'aa  
**diarrhoea** *urhudo* u-ru-daw  
**dinner** *isidlo sangokuhlwa*  
 ee-see-dlaw saa-ngaw-k'u-hlwaa

**dirty** *mdaka mdaa-k'aa*  
**disabled** *olimazekileyo* aw-lee-maa-ze-k'ee-le-yaw  
**double bed** *ibhedi eyenzelwe abantu ababini*  
 ee-be-dee e-ye-nze-lwe a-b'a-nt'u a-b'a-b'ee-nee  
**drink** *isiselo* ee-see-se-law  
**drivers licence** *isazisi sokughuba*  
 ee-saa-zee-see saw-k'u-jhu-b'aa  
**drug** *(illicit)* *isiyobisi* ee-see-yaw-b'ee-see

## E

**ear** *indlebe* ee-ndle-b'e  
**east** *mpumalanga* mp'u-maa-laa-ngaa  
**elevator** *iiveyitha* ee-e-lee-ve-yee-taa  
**email** *i-imeyili* ee-ee-me-yee-lee  
**English (language)** *ulwimi lwesingesi*  
 u-lwee-mee lwe-see-nge-see  
**exchange rate** *utshintsho mali* u-ch'ee-nch'aw maa-lee  
**exit** *indawo yokuphuma*  
 ee-ndaa-waw yaw-k'u-pu-maa  
**expensive** *duru* du-ru  
**eye** *imehlo* ee-me-hlaw

## F

**fast** *khawuleza* ka-wu-le-zaa  
**fever** *ifiva* ee-fee-vaa  
**finger** *umnwe* um-nwe  
**first-aid kit** *ikiti yoncedo lokuqala*  
 ee-k'ee-t'ee yaw-nkle-daw law-k'u-kjaa-laa  
**first class** *iklasi yokuqala* ee-k'laa-see yaw-k'u-kjaa-laa  
**fish** *intlantsi* ee-ntlaa-nts'ee  
**food** *ukutya* u-k'u-ty'aa  
**foot** *unyawo* u-nyaa-waw  
**fork** *ifolokhwe* ee-faw-law-kwe  
**free (of charge)** *simahla* see-maa-hlaa  
**fruit** *isigqhamo* ee-see-kjaa-maw  
**funny** *hleakisayo* hle-k'ee-saa-yaw

## G

**game park** *indawo yokugcina izilwanyana*  
 ee-ndaa-waw yaw-k'u-glee-naa  
 ee-zee-lwaa-nyaa-naa  
**gift** *isipho* ee-see-paw  
**girl** *intombi* ee-nt'aw-mb'ee  
**glass (drinking)** *iglas* ee-glaa-see  
**glasses** *izipeki* ee-zee-p'e-k'ee  
**gluten** *ncangathi* n'laa-ngaa-tee  
**good** *lungileyo* lu-ngee-le-yaw  
**gram** *umlinganis* wobunzima  
 um-lee-ngaa-nee-saw waw-b'u-nzee-maa  
**guide** *inkokheli* ee-nk'aw-ke-lee

## H

**hand** *isandla* ee-saa-ndlaa  
**happy** *vuya* vu-yaa  
**have** *ukuba na* u-k'u-baa naa  
**he** u-(followed by name) u-  
**head** *intloko* ee-ntlaw-k'aw  
**headache** *intloko ebuhlungu*  
 ee-ntlaw-k'aw e-bu-hlu-ngu  
**heart** *intliziyo* ee-ntlee-zee-yaw  
**heart condition** *isifo sentliziyo*  
 ee-see-faw se-ntlee-zee-yaw  
**heat** *ubushushu* u-b'u-shu-shu  
**here** *apha* aa-paa  
**high** *phezulu* pee-zu-lu  
**highway** *indlela enkulu* ee-ndle-laa e-nk'u-lu  
**hot** *shushu* shu-shu  
**hungry** *lambile* laa-mb'ee-le

## I

**I** ee  
**identification (card)** *ikhadi yelD* ee-kaa-dee ye-eed  
**ill** *gula* gu-laa  
**important** *baluleka* b'aa-lu-le-k'aa  
**internet** *intanethi* ee-nt'aa-ne-tee  
**interpreter** *itoliki* ee-t'aw-lee-k'ee

## J

**job** *umsebenzi* um-se-b'e-nzee

## K

**key** *isitshixo* ee-see-tsee-|aw  
**kilogram** *ikhilogramu* ee-kee-law-graa-mu  
**kitchen** *ikhitshi* ee-kee-ch'ee  
**knife** *imela* ee-me-laa

## L

**laundry (place)** *indawo yokuhlamba impahla*  
 ee-ndaa-waw yaw-k'u-hlaa-mb'aa ee-mp'aa-hlaa  
**lawyer** *iqhwetha* ee-kh'we-taa  
**leg** *umlenze* um-le-nze  
**less** *nganeno* ngaa-ne-naw  
**letter (mail)** *ileta* ee-le-t'aa  
**like** *thanda* taa-ndaa  
**love** *uthando* u-taa-ndaw  
**lunch** *isidlo sasemini* ee-see-dlaw saa-se-mee-nee

## M

**man** *indoda* ee-ndaw-daa  
**matches** *imatshisi* ee-maa-ch'ee-see  
**meat** *inyama* ee-nyaa-maa  
**medicine** *ijeza* ee-ye-zaa  
**message** *umyalezo* um-yaa-le-zaw  
**mobile phone** *ifowuni onokuhambanayo*  
 ee-faw-wu-nee aw-naw-k'u-haa-mb'aa-naa-yaw  
**month** *inyanga* ee-nyaa-ngaa  
**morning** *kusasa* k'u-saa-saa  
**motorcycle** *isithuthuthu* ee-see-tu-tu-tu  
**mouth** *umlomo* um-law-maw  
**MSG** *img* ee-m-s-g  
**museum** *imuziyam* ee-mu-zee-yam  
**music** *umculo* um-lu-law

## N

**name** *igama* ee-gaa-maa  
**napkin** *iseviyeti* ee-se-vee-ye-t'ee  
**nappy** *isishuba* ee-see-shu-b'aa  
**nausea** *ubucaphucaphu* u-bu-laa-pu-laa-pu  
**neck** *intamo* ee-nt'aa-maw  
**new** *ntsha* nch'aa  
**news** *indaba* ee-ndaa-b'aa  
**newspaper** *iphephandaba* ee-pe-paa-ndaa-b'aa  
**night** *ubusuku* u-b'u-su-k'u  
**noisy** *ngxolayo* ng'law-laa-yaw  
**nonsmoking** *akutshaywa* aa-k'u-ch'aa-ywaa  
**north** *entla* e-ntlaa  
**nose** *impumlo* ee-mp'u-mlaw  
**now** *ngoku* ngaw-k'u  
**number** *inani* ee-naa-nee  
**nuts** *amaqhele* aa-maa-khje-le

## O

**oil (engine)** *ioyile* ee-aw-yee-le  
**old** *ndala* ndaa-laa  
**open** *vulekileyo* vu-le-k'ee-le-yaw  
**outside** *ngaphandle* ngaa-paa-ndle

## P

**package** *impahla* ee-mp'aa-hlaa  
**pain** *intlungu* ee-ntlu-ngu  
**palace** *ibhotwe* ee-baw-t'we  
**paper** *iphepha* ee-pe-paa  
**park (car)** *pakisha* p'aa-k'ee-shaa  
**passport** *ipasipoti* ee-p'aa-see-paw-t'ee  
**pay** *umvuzo* u-mvu-zaw

**pen** *usiba* u-see-b'aa  
**petrol** *ipetroli* ee-p'e-traw-lee  
**pharmacy** *ifamasi* ee-faa-maa-see  
**plate** *ipleyiti* ee-ple-yee-t'ee  
**postcard** *iposikhadi* ee-p'aw-see-kaa-dee  
**post office** *iposi ofisi* ee-p'aw-see aw-fee-see  
**pregnant** *khulelweyo* ku-le-lwe-yaw

## R

**rain** *imvula* ee-mvu-laa  
**razor** *ireyiza* ee-re-yee-zaa  
**registered mail** *iposi ebhaliswayo*  
 ee-p'aw-see e-baa-lee-swaa-yaw  
**rent** *irente* ee-re-nt'e  
**repair** *lungisa* lu-ngee-saa  
**reservation** *isiginelo* ee-see-glee-ne-law  
**restaurant** *iresty* ee-re-sty'u  
**return** *buyela* b'u-ye-laa  
**road** *indlela* ee-ndle-laa  
**room** *igumbi* ee-gu-mb'ee

## S

**sad** *lusizi* lu-see-zee  
**safe** *gcinakeleyo* glee-naa-k'e-le-yaw  
**sanitary napkin** *iphedi* ee-pe-dee  
**seafood** *ukutya kwaselwandle*  
 u-k'u-ty'aa k'waa-se-lwaa-ndle  
**seat** *isihlalo* ee-see-hlaa-law  
**send** *thumela* tu-me-laa  
**sex** *isini* ee-see-nee  
**shampoo** *ishampu* ee-shaa-mp'u  
**share (a dorm, etc)** *ukwabelana ngegumbi*  
 uk'waa-b'e-laa-naa nge-gu-mb'ee  
**shaving cream** *ikhrimu yokusheva*  
 ee-kree-mu yaw-k'u-she-vaa  
**she** *uno* (followed by name) un-aw  
**sheet (bed)** *isithi* ee-shee-t'ee  
**shirt** *ihempe* ee-he-mp'e  
**shoes** *izihlangu* ee-zee-hlaa-ngu  
**shop** *ivenkile* ee-ve-nk'ee-le  
**shower** *ishawari* ee-shaa-waa-ree  
**skin** *ulusu* u-lu-su  
**skirt** *isiketi* ee-see-k'e-t'ee  
**sleep** *lala* laa-laa  
**small** *ncinci* n'lee-n'lee  
**smoke (cigarettes)** *tshaya* tshaa-yaa  
**soap** *isepha* ee-se-paa  
**some** *inxenye* ee-n'e-nye  
**soon** *kamsinya* k'aa-msee-nyaa  
**sore throat** *umqala obuhlungu*  
 um-kjaa-laa aw-b'u-hlu-ngu

© Lonely Planet Publications

**south mzantsi mzaa-nts'ee**  
**souvenir shop ivenkile ethengisa izikhumbuzo**  
 ee-ve-nk'ee-le e-te-ngee-saa e-zee-ku-mb'u-zaw  
**speak thetha te-taa**  
**spoon icephe ee-kle-pe**  
**stamp n isitampu ee-see-t'aa-mp'u**  
**stand-by ticket itikiti lokulinda**  
 ee-t'ee-k'ee-t'ee law-k'u-lee-ndaa  
**station (train) isitishi ee-see-t'ee-shee**  
**stomach isisu ee-see-su**  
**stop v ima ee-maa**  
**stop (bus) n indawo yokumisa**  
 ee-ndaa-waw yaw-k'u-mee-saa  
**street isitalato ee-see-t'aa-laa-t'aw**  
**student umfundi u-mfunde**  
**sunscreen ikhrimu yokukhusela ilanga**  
 ee-kree-mu yaw-k'u-ku-se-laa ee-laa-ngaa  
**swim v ukuqubha u-k'u-ku-baa**

## T

**tampons iithamponi ee-taa-mp'aw-nee**  
**teeth amazinyo aa-maa-zee-nyaw**  
**telephone n ifowuni ee-faw-wu-nee**  
**television umabonakude u-maa-b'aw-naa-k'u-de**  
**temperature (weather) iqondo lobushushu**  
 ee-kjaw-ndaw law-b'u-shu-shu  
**tent intente ee-nt'e-nt'e**  
**that (one) leya (inye) le-yaa (e-nyee)**  
**they bona b'aw-naa**  
**thirsty nxaniwe n'aa-nee-we**  
**this (one) le (kanye) le (k'aa-nye)**  
**throat umqala um-kjaa-laa**  
**ticket itikiti ee-t'ee-k'ee-t'ee**  
**time ixesha ee-k'je-shaa**  
**tired diniwe dee-nee-we**  
**tissues ithishu ee-tee-shu**  
**today namhlanje naam-hlaa-nje**  
**toilet ithoyilethi ee-taw-yee-le-tee**  
**tonight ngokuhlwa ngaw-k'u-hlwaa**  
**toothache izinyo elibuhlungu**  
 ee-zee-nyaw e-lee-b'u-hlu-ngu  
**toothbrush ibrashi yokuxukuxa amazinyo**  
 ee-b'raa-shee yaw-k'u-k'u-k'u-k'aa aa-maa-zee-nyaw  
**toothpaste intlama yamazinyo**  
 ee-ntlaa-maa yaa-maa-zee-nyaw  
**torch (flashlight) itotshi ee-t'aw-ch'ee**  
**tourist office iofisi yabacandi-zwe**  
 ee-aw-fee-see yaa-b'aa-k'laa-ndee-zwe  
**towel itawuli ee-t'aa-wu-lee**  
**translate guqula gu-k'u-laa**

**travel agency umlungiseleli hambo**  
 um-lu-ngee-se-le-lee haa-mb'aw  
**travellers cheque itsheki yababambi**  
 ee-ch'e-k'ee yaa-b'aa-haa-mb'ee  
**trousers iibhulukhwe ee-bu-lu-kwe**  
**twin beds iibhedi ezimbini ezifanayo**  
 ee-be-dee e-zee-mb'ee-nee e-zee-faa-naa-yaw  
**tyre ithayara ee-taa-yaa-raa**

## U

**underwear isinxibo sangaphantsi**  
 ee-see-n'ee-b'aw saa-ngaa-paa-nts'ee  
**urgent ngxamiseka ng'aa-mee-se-k'aa**

## V

**vacant ngenanto nge-naa-nt'aw**  
**vegetable n umfuno um-fu-naw**  
**vegetarian a utya izihluma u-ty'aa ee-zee-hlu-maa**  
**visa iviza ee-vee-zaa**

## W

**waiter iweyita ee-we-yee-t'aa**  
**walk v hamba haa-mb'aa**  
**wallet isipaji ee-see-p'aa-jee**  
**warm a fudumeleyo fu-du-me-le-yaw**  
**wash (something) vasa vaa-saa**  
**watch n iwotshi ee-waw-ch'ee**  
**water amanzi aa-maa-nzee**  
**we thina tee-naa**  
**weekend impelaveki ee-mp'e-laa-ve-k'ee**  
**west ntshona nch'aw-naa**  
**wheelchair isitulo esinamavili**  
 ee-see-t'u-law e-see-naa-maa-vee-lee  
**when nini nee-nee**  
**where phi pee**  
**who bani b'aa-nee**  
**why kutheni k'u-te-nee**  
**window ifestile ee-fe-st'ee-le**  
**wine iwayini ee-waa-yee-nee**  
**with na naa**  
**without ngaphandle ngaa-paa-ndle**  
**woman umfazi um-faa-zee**  
**write bhala baa-laa**

## Y

**you sg inf/pol wena/nawe we-naa/naa-we**  
**you pl inf/pol nina/thina nee-naa/tee-naa**

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# Yoruba



# pronunciation

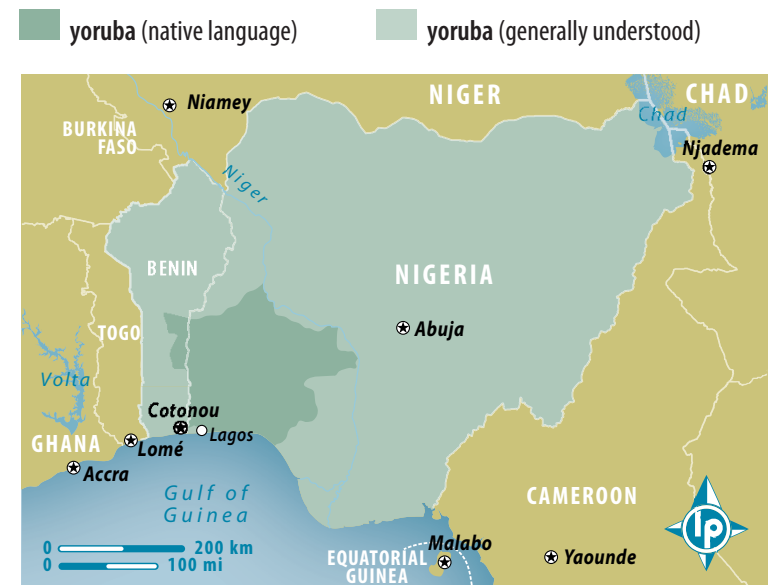
| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                        | Consonants |               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|---------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | English sound          | Symbol     | English sound |
| a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | act                    | b          | bed           |
| ang                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | as in 'act', but nasal | d          | dog           |
| ay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | say                    | f          | fun           |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | bet                    | g          | go            |
| eng                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | as in 'bet', but nasal | gb         | rugby         |
| i                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | hit                    | h          | hat           |
| ing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | as in 'hit', but nasal | j          | jar           |
| o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | pot                    | k          | kit           |
| oh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | cold                   | kp         | backpack      |
| ong                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | as in 'pot', but nasal | l          | lot           |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | put                    | m          | man           |
| ung                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | as in 'put', but nasal | n          | not           |
| <p>The Yoruba pronunciation is given in light green after each phrase.</p> <p>Each syllable is separated by a dot.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>Ọsẹ. oh-shay</p> <p>Yoruba's nasal vowels, indicated with ng after the vowel symbol, are pronounced as if you're trying to force the sound out of your nose.</p> <p>There are a range of accent marks above and below vowels. You won't need to worry about using these, if you follow the pronunciation guides you'll be understood.</p> |                        | r          | run           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        | s          | sun           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        | sh         | shot          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        | t          | top           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        | w          | win           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        | y          | yes           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        |            |               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        |            |               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        |            |               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        |            |               |

# YORUBA

yorùbá

## introduction

There's a Yoruba proverb, *Ohun tí o bá gbín ni wàà ká o-hung tí o ba gbíng ni wa-a ka*, which means 'Whatever you sow, you will reap' – and any efforts to speak to locals in Yoruba will be greatly appreciated. Yoruba (*Yorùbá* yoh-ru-ba), a language from the Niger-Congo family, is spoken by around 25 million people in West Africa. The Yoruba nation consists of a number of tribes which trace their origins to a leader called Oduduwa, the founder of the city Ile-Ife in what is now southwestern Nigeria, where Yoruba is primarily spoken. There are also Yoruba speakers in the Benin Republic and eastern Togo, and a variety of the language is spoken in Sierra Leone. Yoruba was one of the first West African languages to have a written grammar and a dictionary in the 1840s. It's also one of the first African languages with a novel published in it, and is the mother tongue of Nobel-prize-winning writer Wole Soyinka.



## language difficulties

Do you speak English?

*Ṣé o n sọ gèṣi?*

shay o n so ge-e-si

Do you understand?

*Ṣé ó yé o?*

shay oh yay o

I (don't) understand.

*Ẹmi (kò) gbó.*

ay-mi (koh) gbo

Could you please ...?

*Jòwó ṣé o lè ...?*

jo-wo shay oh lay ...

repeat that

*tun sọ*

tung so

speak more slowly

*rọra sọrò*

ro-ra so-ro

write it down

*kọ o sílẹ̀*

ko o si-le

## time, dates & numbers

What time is it?

*Kí ni aago sọ?*

ki ni a-a-goh so

It's one o'clock.

*Aago kan ni.*

a-a-goh kang ni

It's (two) o'clock.

*Aago (méjì) ni.*

a-a-goh (may-ji) ni

Quarter past (one).

*Aago (kan) kojá ìsẹ́jú*

a-a-goh (kang) ko-ja i-she-ju

*mẹ̀dédógún.*

me-e-doh-gung

Half past (one).

*Aago (kan) àbò.*

a-a-goh (kang) a-bo

Quarter to (eight).

*Aago (méjọ) ku ìsẹ́jú*

a-a-goh (me-jo) ku i-she-ju

*mẹ̀dédógún.*

me-e-doh-gung

At what time ...?

*Nígba wo ...?*

ni-gba woh ...

At ...

*Ní ...?*

ni ...

It's (15 December).

*Ní (ojọ̀ kẹ̀dédógún*

ni (o-jo ke-e-doh-gung

*osù òṣémbà).*

oh-shu di-se-m-ba)

yesterday

*áná*

a-na

today

*òní*

oh-ni

tomorrow

*òla*

o-la

Monday

*ojọ̀ ajé*

o-jo a-jay

Tuesday

*ojọ̀ isẹ́gun*

o-jo i-she-gung

Wednesday

*ojóru*

o-jo-ru

Thursday

*ojóbò*

o-jo-bo

Friday

*ojọ̀ ẹ̀tì*

o-jo e-ti

Saturday

*ojọ̀ abámẹ̀ta*

o-jo a-ba-me-ta

Sunday

*ojọ̀ àìkú*

o-jo a-i-ku

## numbers

|    |                |           |      |                      |                      |
|----|----------------|-----------|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 0  | <i>òdo</i>     | o-do      | 16   | <i>ẹ̀rindínlógún</i> | e-ring-ding-loh-gung |
| 1  | <i>òkan</i>    | o-kang    | 17   | <i>ẹ̀tadínlógún</i>  | e-ta-ding-loh-gung   |
| 2  | <i>èjì</i>     | ay-ji     | 18   | <i>ẹ̀jìdínlógún</i>  | ay-ji-ding-loh-gung  |
| 3  | <i>ẹ̀ta</i>    | e-ta      | 19   | <i>òkàndínlógún</i>  | o-kang-ding-loh-gung |
| 4  | <i>ẹ̀rin</i>   | e-ring    | 20   | <i>ogún</i>          | oh-gung              |
| 5  | <i>àrun</i>    | a-rung    | 21   | <i>òkànlélógún</i>   | o-kang-lay-loh-gung  |
| 6  | <i>ẹ̀fà</i>    | e-fa      | 22   | <i>ẹ̀jìlélógún</i>   | ay-ji-lay-loh-gung   |
| 7  | <i>ẹ̀je</i>    | ay-jay    | 30   | <i>ogbòn</i>         | o-gbong              |
| 8  | <i>ẹ̀jo</i>    | e-jo      | 40   | <i>ogóji</i>         | oh-goh-ji            |
| 9  | <i>ẹ̀san</i>   | e-sang    | 50   | <i>àádọ̀ta</i>       | a-a-do-ta            |
| 10 | <i>ẹ̀wá</i>    | e-wa      | 60   | <i>ogóta</i>         | o-go-ta              |
| 11 | <i>òkànlà</i>  | o-kang-la | 70   | <i>àádọ̀rin</i>      | a-a-do-ring          |
| 12 | <i>ẹ̀jìlá</i>  | ay-ji-la  | 80   | <i>ogórin</i>        | o-go-ring            |
| 13 | <i>ẹ̀tálá</i>  | e-ta-la   | 90   | <i>àádọ̀rún</i>      | a-a-do-rung          |
| 14 | <i>ẹ̀rínlá</i> | e-ring-la | 100  | <i>ogórùn-ún</i>     | o-go-rung-ung        |
| 15 | <i>ẹ̀dógún</i> | e-do-gung | 1000 | <i>egbèrúng</i>      | e-gbe-rung           |



## border crossing

I'm here ...

*Mo wà níbí ...*

moh wa ni-bi ...

in transit

*lẹnu ìrìn-àjò*

le-nu i-ring-a-joh

on business

*fún isẹ̀*

fung i-she

on holiday

*fún isimi*

fung i-si-mi

I'm here for ...

*Mo wà níbí fún ...*

moh wa ni-bi fung ...

(10) days

*ojọ̀ (mẹ́wàá)*

o-jo (me-wa-a)

(three) weeks

*òsẹ̀ (mẹ́ta)*

o-se (me-ta)

(two) months

*osù (mẹ́jì)*

oh-shu (may-ji)

I'm going to (Ọ̀yọ́).

*Mò ná lọ sí (Ọ̀yọ́).*

moh n lo si (o-yo)

I'm staying at the (Premier Hotel).

*Mò ní gbé ní (Ilẹ̀ Itura Pírẹ̀míà).*

moh n gbay ni (i-lay i-tu-ra kpi-re-mi-a)

## tickets

|                                             |                                           |                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| A ... ticket<br>(to Ibàdàn), please.        | Ìwé iwólé ...<br>lò (sí Ibàdàn).          | i-way i-wo-lay ...<br>lò (sí i-ba-dang)              |
| one-way                                     | àlò nìkan                                 | a-lo ni-kang                                         |
| return                                      | àtálò-àtàbò                               | a-ta-lo-a-ta-bo                                      |
| I'd like to ... my<br>ticket, please.       | Jòwó mà á fé láti ...<br>ìwé iwólé mi.    | jo-wo ma a fe la-ti ...<br>i-way i-wo-le mi          |
| cancel                                      | fagilé                                    | fa-gi-lay                                            |
| change                                      | pààrò                                     | kpa-a-ro                                             |
| collect                                     | gba                                       | gba                                                  |
| Is there a ...?                             | Şé ... wa?                                | shay ... wa                                          |
| air conditioning                            | èrọ amúlétutù                             | e-ro a-mu-lay-tu-tu                                  |
| toilet                                      | ilé igbònsẹ                               | i-le i-gbong-se                                      |
| I'd like a smoking/nonsmoking seat, please. | Jòwó, mà á fé ijókòó<br>amusigá/mámusigá. | jo-wo ma a fe i-joh-koh-oh<br>a-mu-si-ga/ma-mu-si-ga |
| How long does the trip take?                | Báwo ni ìrìnàjò yìí ẹ jìnnà sí?           | ba-woh ni i-ring-a-joh yi-i shay jing-na si          |
| Is it a direct route?                       | Şé tààràtá ni?                            | shay ta-a-ra-ta ni                                   |

## transport

|                                                       |                                                         |                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Where does the (Virgin Nigeria) flight arrive/depart? | Ibo ni bàdlù (fajini ti Nàijíríà)<br>yóò ti gbéra/kúrò? | i-boh ni ba-a-lu (fa-ji-ni ti na-i-ji-ri-a)<br>yoh-oh ti gbay-ra/ku-roh |
| How long will it be delayed?                          | Fún àkókò wo ni ìdádúró bàdlù?                          | fung a-koh-koh woh ni i-da-du-roh ba-a-lu                               |
| Is this the ...<br>to (Ekó)?                          | Şé èyí ni ...<br>sí (Ekó)?                              | shay ay-yi ni ...<br>si (ay-ko)                                         |
| boat                                                  | okò ojú-omi                                             | o-ko oh-ju-oh-mi                                                        |
| bus                                                   | bòdòsì                                                  | bo-o-si                                                                 |
| plane                                                 | bàdlù                                                   | ba-a-lu                                                                 |
| train                                                 | okò ojú-irin                                            | o-ko oh-ju-i-ring                                                       |

### How much is it to ...?

Èlò ni dé ...? ay-loh ni day ...

### Please take me to (this address).

Jòwó gbé mi lọ sí (àdirésí yíi). jo-wo gbay mi lo si (a-di-re-si yi-i)

### I'd like to hire a car (with air conditioning).

Mà á fé gba okò tí ó  
(ni èrọ amúlétutù). ma a fe gba o-ko ti oh  
(ni e-ro a-mu-lay-tu-tu)

### How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

Èlò ni fún ọjọ/ọsẹ (mẹta)? ay-loh ni fung o-jo/o-se (me-ta)

## directions

|                               |                                  |                                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Where's the<br>(nearest) ...? | Ibo ni ...<br>(tí ó sún mọ wà)?  | i-boh ni ...<br>(ti oh sung-mo wa)         |
| internet café                 | bùkà ìtākùn àgbáyé               | bu-ka i-ta-kung a-gba-yay                  |
| market                        | ojà                              | o-ja                                       |
| Is this the road to (Ọyó)?    | Şe Ọnà (Ọyó) niyí?               | shay o-na (o-yo) ni-yi                     |
| Can you show me (on the map)? | Şé o lè fi hàn mí (lórí àwòrán)? | shay oh lay fi hang mi (loh-ri a-woh-rang) |
| What's the address?           | Kí ni àdirésí?                   | ki ni a-di-re-si                           |
| How far is it?                | Báwo ni ó ẹ jìnnà sí?            | ba-woh ni oh shay jing-na si               |
| How do I get there?           | Báwo ni mà á ẹ dé ibẹ?           | ba-woh ni ma a shay day i-be               |
| Turn left/right.              | Yà sọsì/sótùn-ún.                | ya soh-si/so-tung-ung                      |
| It's ...                      | Ó wà ...                         | oh wa ...                                  |
| behind ...                    | lẹ-yìn ...                       | le-ying ...                                |
| in front of ...               | níwájú ...                       | ni-wa-ju ...                               |
| near (to ...)                 | légbẹẹ ...                       | le-gbe-e ...                               |
| next to ...                   | légbẹẹ ...                       | le-gbe-e ...                               |
| on the corner                 | légbẹẹ ...                       | le-gbe-e ...                               |
| opposite ...                  | níwájú ...                       | ni-wa-ju ...                               |
| straight ahead                | lòkánkán                         | lo-kang-kang                               |
| there                         | níbẹ                             | ni-be                                      |

## accommodation

|                |                         |                    |
|----------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Where's a ...? | <i>Níbo ni ... wà?</i>  | ni-boh ni ... wa   |
| camping ground | <i>ilẹ̀ ipàgọ̀</i>      | i-le i-kpa-go      |
| guesthouse     | <i>ilẹ̀ itura</i>       | i-lay i-tu-ra      |
| hotel          | <i>ilẹ̀ itura</i>       | i-lay i-tu-ra      |
| youth hostel   | <i>ilẹ̀ itura ọ̀dọ̀</i> | i-lay i-tu-ra o-do |

### Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

|                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Se o lè jùwe ibi tí ó tì</i> | shay oh lay ju-way i-bi ti oh ti |
| <i>dínwo/dára?</i>              | ding-woh/da-ra                   |

### I'd like to book a room, please.

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Jòwọ̀ mà á fẹ̀ gba yàrá kan.</i> | jo-wo ma a fe gba ya-ra kang |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|

### I have a reservation.

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Mo ti gba yàrá silẹ̀ tẹ̀lẹ̀.</i> | moh ti gba ya-ra si-le te-le |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|



|                         |                          |                     |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Do you have a ... room? | <i>Se e ní yàrá ...?</i> | shay e ni ya-ra ... |
| single                  | <i>elénikan</i>          | e-le-ni-kang        |
| double                  | <i>eléniméjì</i>         | e-le-ni-may-ji      |
| twin                    | <i>onibejì</i>           | oh-ni-bay-ji        |

|                         |                                        |                             |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| How much is it per ...? | <i>Èlọ̀ ní fún ...?</i>                | ay-loh ni fung ...          |
| night person            | <i>alẹ̀ ojọ̀ kan</i><br><i>enì kan</i> | a-le o-jo kang<br>e-ni kang |

### I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

|                                          |                                      |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Mà á fẹ̀ sun ibi fún ojọ̀ (méjì).</i> | ma a fe sung i-bi fung o-jo (may-ji) |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|

### What time is check-out?

|                                                  |                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ìgbà wo ni kíkẹ̀ rú jáde nínú ilẹ̀ itura?</i> | i-gba woh ni ki-ke ru ja-de ni-nu i-lay i-tu-ra |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|

### Am I allowed to camp here?

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Se àyè wà láti pàgọ̀ sibi?</i> | shay a-yay wa la-ti kpa-go si-bi |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|

## banking & communications

|                            |                         |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| I'd like to ...            | <i>Mà á fẹ̀ ...</i>     | ma a fe ...             |
| arrange a transfer         | <i>fi owó ránsẹ̀</i>    | fi oh-woh rang-she      |
| cash a cheque              | <i>fi sòwédowó</i>      | fi so-way-doh-woh       |
|                            | <i>gba owó</i>          | gba oh-woh              |
| change a travellers cheque | <i>pààrò sòwédowó</i>   | kpa-a-ro so-way-doh-woh |
| change money               | <i>arínrínàjò</i>       | a-ring-ring-a-jo        |
| withdraw money             | <i>pààrò owó</i>        | kpa-a-ro oh-woh         |
|                            | <i>gba owó ní bànkì</i> | gba oh-woh ni bang-ki   |

|                     |                         |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| I want to ...       | <i>Mo fẹ̀ ...</i>       | mo fe ...               |
| buy a phonecard     | <i>ra káàdì ifòdùn</i>  | ra ka-a-di i-foh-oh-nu  |
| call (Singapore)    | <i>pe (Singapore)</i>   | kpay (sing-a-po)        |
| reverse the charges | <i>yí owó padà</i>      | yí oh-woh kpa-da        |
| use a printer       | <i>lo itẹ̀wé</i>        | loh i-te-way            |
| use the internet    | <i>lo itàkùn àgbáyé</i> | loh i-ta-kung a-gba-yay |

### How much is it per hour?

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Èlọ̀ ní fún wákàtí kan?</i> | ay-loh ni fung wa-ka-ti kang |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|

### How much does a (three-minute) call cost?

|                                            |                                             |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Èlọ̀ ní pípè fún (ìsẹ́jú méta) jẹ́?</i> | ay-loh ni kpi-kpay fung (i-she-ju me-ta) je |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

### (100 naira) per minute/hour.

|                                                      |                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>(Ogórùn-ún náirà) fún ìsẹ́jú/<br/>wákàtí kan.</i> | (o-go-rung-ung na-i-ra) fung i-she-ju/<br>wa-ka-ti kan |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|

## tours

|                      |                        |                     |
|----------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| When's the next ...? | <i>Ìgbà wo ni ...?</i> | i-gba woh ni ...    |
| day trip             | <i>ìrìn-ọjó kan</i>    | i-ring-o-jo kang    |
| tour                 | <i>ìrìn-àjò afẹ̀</i>   | i-ring-a-joh a-fe   |
| Is ... included?     | <i>Sé e fi ... si?</i> | shay e fi ... si    |
| accommodation        | <i>ibùgbé</i>          | i-bu-gbay           |
| the admission charge | <i>owó ìgbàwólé</i>    | oh-woh i-gba-wo-lay |
| food                 | <i>óúnjẹ</i>           | oh-ung-je           |
| transport            | <i>ìrìn-àjò</i>        | i-ring-a-joh        |

**How long is the tour?***Báwo ni irin-àjò náà ẹ jìnnà sí?*

ba-woh ni i-ring-a-joh naa shay jing-na si

**What time should we be back?***Ìgbà wo ni ó yẹ kí á padà?*

i-gba woh ni oh ye ki a kpa-da

**shopping****I'm looking for ...***Mò ní wá ...*

moh n wa ...

**I need film for this camera.***Mo fẹ fìlìmù fún ẹrọ ayàwòrán yìí.*

moh fe fi-i-mu fung e-ro a-ya-woh-rang yi-i

**Can I listen to this?***Ẹ mo lè gbọ̀ èyí?*

shay moh lay gbo ay-yi

**Can I have my ... repaired?***Ẹ mo lè tún ... mi ẹ?*

shay moh lay tung ... mi shay

**When will it be ready?***Ìgbà wo ni yóò ẹ tán?*

i-gba woh ni yoh-oh shay tang

**How much is it?***Èlọ̀ ní?*

ay-loh ni

**Can you write down the price?***Ẹ o lè kọ̀ iye owó rẹ̀ sílẹ̀?*

shay oh lay ko i-yay oh-woh re si-le

**What's your lowest price?***Èlọ̀ ní jálẹ̀?*

ay-loh ni ja-le

**I'll give you (800) naira.***Mà á fún ọ ní (egbèrin) náírà.*

ma a fung o ni (e-gbe-ring) na-i-ra

**There's a mistake in the bill.***Àsìṣe wà nínú ìwé owó yìí.*

a-shi-she wa ni-nu i-way oh-woh yi-i

**It's faulty.***Ó ti bàjẹ́.*

o ti ba-je

**I'd like a ..., please.***recept**refund**Ìwọ̀dọ̀ mà á fẹ́ gba ...**risítì**owó padà*

jo-wo ma a fe gba ...

ri-si-i-ti

oh-woh kpa-da

**Do you accept ...?****credit cards****debit cards****travellers****cheques***Ẹ ẹ gba ...?**káàdì moyáwó**káàdì mojegbèsè**ìwé sòwédowó**arin-rin-àjò***shay e gba ...**

ka-a-di moh-ya-woh

ka-a-di moh-je-gbay-say

i-way so-way-doh-woh

a-ring-ring-a-joh

**Could you ...?****burn a CD from my****memory card****develop this film***Ẹ o lè ...?**da rẹ̀kòdù yìí kọ**látì inú fón rán**fọ̀ fìlìmù***shay oh lay ...**

da re-ko-du yi-i ko

la-ti i-nu fong rang

fo fi-i-mu

**making conversation****Hello.***Pèlẹ̀ o.*

kpe-le o

**Good night.***Ó dààrò.*

oh da-a-ro

**Goodbye.***Ó dàbò.*

oh da-bo

**Mr***Ògbéni*

o-gbe-ni

**Mrs***Aya*

a-ya

**Ms/Miss***Omidan*

oh-mi-dang

**How are you?***Ẹ daádáa ní?*

shay da-a-da-a ni

**Fine, and you?***Bẹ̀nì, iwo ní kọ̀?*

be-e-ni i-wo n ko

**What's your name?***Kí ní orúkọ rẹ́?*

ki ni oh-ru-ko re

**My name's ...***Orúkọ mi ní ...*

oh-ru-ko mi ni ...

**I'm pleased to***Inú mi dùn látì*

i-nu mi dung la-ti

**meet you.***pàde rẹ́.*

kpa-day re

**This is my ...***Èyí ní ... mi.*

ay-yi ni ... mi

**boyfriend***òrẹ̀kùnrin*

o-re-kung-ring

**brother***arakunrin*

a-ra-kung-ring

**daughter***omọ̀ mi obinrin*

o-mo mi oh-bing-ring

**father***bàbá*

ba-ba

**friend***òrẹ́*

o-re

**girlfriend***òrẹ̀binrin*

o-re-bing-ring

**husband***okọ*

o-ko

**mother***iyá/mà má*

i-ya/ma-ma

**sister***arabinrin*

a-ra-bing-ring

**son***omọ̀ mi okunrin*

o-mo mi o-kung-ring

**wife***iyawó*

i-ya-woh

|                              |                                 |                               |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Here's my ...                | <i>Eyi ni ...</i>               | a-yi ni ...                   |
| What's your ...?             | <i>Kí ni ... rẹ?</i>            | ki ni ... re                  |
| address                      | <i>àdírésì</i>                  | a-di-re-si                    |
| email address                | <i>àdírésì itàkùn</i>           | a-di-re-si i-ta-kung          |
|                              | <i>àgbayé</i>                   | a-gba-yay                     |
| phone number                 | <i>nọ́mbà fòònù</i>             | no-m-ba foh-oh-nu             |
| Where are you from?          | <i>Ibo ni ilú rẹ?</i>           | i-boh ni i-lu re              |
| I'm from ...                 | <i>Ilú mi ni ...</i>            | i-lu mi ni ...                |
| Australia                    | <i>Osirélìà</i>                 | o-si-ray-li-a                 |
| Canada                       | <i>Kánádà</i>                   | ka-na-da                      |
| New Zealand                  | <i>Niú silandì</i>              | ni-u si-la-n-di               |
| the UK                       | <i>Ilú òyìn bó</i>              | i-lu oh-ying-boh              |
| the USA                      | <i>Améríkà</i>                  | a-me-ri-ka                    |
| I'm (not) married. <b>m</b>  | <i>Mì (ò) tí ì láyá.</i>        | mi (oh) ti i la-ya            |
| I'm (not) married. <b>f</b>  | <i>Mì (ò) tí ì ní okọ.</i>      | mi (oh) ti i ni o-ko          |
| Can I take a photo (of you)? | <i>Ṣé mo lè yà (ó) ní fòtò?</i> | shay moh lay ya (o) ni fo-toh |

## eating out

|                                       |                                            |                                          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Can you recommend a ...?              | <i>Ẹ jẹ o le jùwe ...?</i>                 | n je oh lay u-way ...                    |
| bar                                   | <i>ilẹ́otí</i>                             | i-lay-o-ti                               |
| dish                                  | <i>oúnjẹ</i>                               | oh-un-je                                 |
| place to eat                          | <i>ilẹ́oúnjẹ</i>                           | i-lay-oh-ung-je                          |
| I'd like ..., please.                 | <i>Jòwọ́, mà á fẹ́ ...</i>                 | jo-wo ma a fe ...                        |
| the bill                              | <i>íwé owó</i>                             | i-we oh-woh                              |
| the menu                              | <i>àwọn oúnjẹ tí ó wà</i>                  | a-wong oh-ung-je ti oh wa                |
| a table for (two)                     | <i>ìjokòó fún</i>                          | i-joh-koh-oh fung                        |
|                                       | <i>(eni méjì)</i>                          | (e-ni me-ji)                             |
| that dish                             | <i>oúnjẹ yẹn</i>                           | o-ung-je yeng                            |
| Do you have vegetarian food?          | <i>Ẹ jẹ e ní oúnjẹ alàjẹran?</i>           | n je e ni oh-ung-je a-la-i-je-rang       |
| Could you prepare a meal without ...? | <i>Jòwọ́ ba mi se oúnjẹ lai fi ... si?</i> | jo-wo ba mi shay oh-ung-je lai fi ... si |
| eggs                                  | <i>eyin</i>                                | e-ying                                   |
| meat stock                            | <i>eran</i>                                | e-rang                                   |

|                     |                       |                     |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| (cup of) coffee ... | <i>(ife) kọfí ...</i> | (i-fay) ko-fi ...   |
| (cup of) tea ...    | <i>(ife) tî ...</i>   | (i-fay) ti-i ...    |
| with milk           | <i>pèlú mǐlǐkí</i>    | kpe-lu mi-li-i-ki   |
| without sugar       | <i>lái sí sùgà</i>    | la-i si su-ga       |
| (boiled) water      | <i>omi (gbígbóná)</i> | oh-mi (gbi-gboh-na) |



## emergencies

|                                         |                                                 |                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Help!                                   | <i>Ẹ ràn mí lówó o!</i>                         | e rang mi lo-wo o                                  |
| Call ...!                               | <i>Ẹ pe ...!</i>                                | e kpay ...                                         |
| an ambulance                            | <i>okò gbókùúgbokùú</i>                         | o-ko gboh-ku-u-gboh-ku-u                           |
| a doctor                                | <i>dòkítà</i>                                   | doh-ki-ta                                          |
| the police                              | <i>olópàà</i>                                   | o-lo-kpa-a                                         |
| Could you help me, please?              | <i>Jòwóse o lè ràn mí lówó?</i>                 | jo-wo-shay oh lay rang mi lo-wo                    |
| I'm lost.                               | <i>Mo ti sọ̀nù.</i>                             | moh ti so-nu                                       |
| Where are the toilets?                  | <i>Ibo ni ilẹ̀ igbònsẹ̀ wà?</i>                 | i-boh ni i-lay i-gbong-se wa                       |
| I want to report an offence.            | <i>Mo fẹ́ fi ejọ́ kan sùn.</i>                  | moh fe fi e-jo kang sung                           |
| I have insurance.                       | <i>Mo ní ìwé adójútòfò.</i>                     | moh ni i-way a-do-ju-to-fo                         |
| I want to contact my consulate/embassy. | <i>Mo fẹ́ bá aṣojú ilẹ̀ òkèrè ilú mí sọ̀rò.</i> | mo fe ba a-shoh-ju i-le o-kay-ay-ray i-lu mi so-ro |
| I've been ...                           | <i>Won ti ...</i>                               | wong ti ...                                        |
| assaulted                               | <i>fiyà jẹ mí</i>                               | fi-ya je mi                                        |
| raped                                   | <i>fipá bá mí lò pò</i>                         | fi-kpa ba mi loh kpo                               |
| robbed                                  | <i>jà mí lólè</i>                               | ja mi loh-lay                                      |

|                  |                      |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| I've lost my ... | <i>Mo ju ... nù.</i> | moh ju ... nu        |
| bags             | àpò                  | a-kpoh               |
| credit card      | kààdì moyáwó         | ka-a-di moh-ya-woh   |
| handbag          | àpamówó              | a-kpa-mo-wo          |
| jewellery        | ohun-ọṣọ             | oh-hung-o-sho        |
| money            | owó                  | oh-woh               |
| passport         | ìwé irinnà           | i-way i-ring-na      |
| travellers       | ìwé sòwédowó         | i-way so-way-doh-woh |
| cheques          | arin-rìn-àjò         | a-ring-ring-a-joh    |
| wallet           | pòṣì                 | kpo-o-si             |

My (money) was stolen. (*Owó*) *mi ti sọnu.*

(oh-woh) mi ti so-nu



## medical needs

|                          |                                    |                                 |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Where's the nearest ...? | <i>lbo ni ... tí ó súnmọ̀ ibi?</i> | i-boh ni ... ti oh sung-mo i-bi |
| dentist                  | dókítà eléyin                      | doh-ki-ta ay-lay-ying           |
| doctor                   | dókítà                             | doh-ki-ta                       |
| hospital                 | ilé-ìwòsàn                         | i-lay-i-woh-sang                |
| pharmacist               | apògùn                             | a-kpoh-gung                     |

I need a doctor (who speaks English).

*Mo fẹ́ dókítà (tí ó lè sọ èdè àyínbó).*

moh fe doh-ki-ta (ti oh lay so ay-day oh-ying-boh)

Could I see a female doctor?

*Ṣe mo lè rí dókítà obinrin?*

shay moh lay ri doh-ki-ta oh-bing-ring

It hurts here.

*O rí dùn mí níbí.*

oh n dung mi ni-bi

I'm allergic to (penicillin).

*(Ògùn) yíi ṣe ọwọ̀ òdì sí mí.*

(oh-gung) yi-i shay o-wo oh-di si mi

## english–yoruba dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as **n** (noun), **a** (adjective), **v** (verb), **sg** (singular) and **pl** (plural) where necessary.

### A

**accommodation** *ibùgbé* i-bu-gbay  
**adaptor** *ibádógba* i-ba-do-gba  
**after** *léyin* le-ying  
**airport** *ibùdókò òfurufu* i-bu-doh-ko oh-fu-ru-fu  
**alcohol** *otí* o-ti  
**all** *gbogbo* gboh-gboh  
**allergy** *èhun* e-hung  
**and** *àti* a-ti  
**ankle** *orùn-esè* o-rung-e-se  
**antibiotics** *ògùn-èyà wuuru* oh-gung-e-ya wu-u-ru  
**anti-inflammatories** *ògùn-ara wíwú* oh-gung-a-ra wi-wu  
**arm** *apá* a-kpa  
**aspirin** *asipirínìni* a-si-kpi-ring-ing-ni  
**asthma** *ikò-fée* i-ko-fay-ay  
**ATM** *ẹ̀rọ kààdì agbówójade*  
 e-ro ka-a-di a-gboh-woh-ja-de

### B

**baby** *omo-owó* o-mo-o-wo  
**back (body)** *eyin* e-ying  
**backpack** *apo igbérùsílẹ̀yin* a-kpoh i-gbe-ru-si-le-ying  
**bad** *burú* bu-ru  
**baggage claim** *ibígberù* i-bi-i-gbe-ru  
**bank** *ilẹ̀-ìfowópamọ̀sì* i-lay-i-foh-woh-kpa-mo-si  
**bathroom** *ilẹ̀-ìwẹ̀* i-lay-i-we  
**battery** *bátirì* ba-ti-ri  
**beautiful** *dára* da-ra  
**bed** *ibùsùn* i-bu-sung  
**beer** *bià* bi-a  
**bees** *oyin* oh-ying  
**before** *télètèlè* te-le-te-le  
**bicycle** *kèkè* ke-ke  
**big** *tóbi* toh-bi  
**blanket** *asọ-ibora òtùtù* asho-i-boh-ra oh-tu-tu  
**blood group** *orísi-èjẹ* oh-ri-shi-e-je  
**bottle** *igò* i-goh  
**bottle opener** *Isítì* i-shi-ti  
**boy** *omókùnrin* o-mo-kung-ring  
**brakes (car)** *birèkì-òkò* bi-ray-ay-ki-o-ko  
**breakfast** *oúnje-àdàrò* oh-ung-je-a-a-ro  
**bronchitis** *àisàn inú èdòfórò* a-i-sang i-n-e-do-foh-roh

### C

**café** *búkà* bu-ka  
**cancel** *fagilé* fa-gi-le  
**can opener** *isí-agolo* i-shi-a-goh-loh  
**cash** *n owó* oh-woh  
**cell phone** *telifòonù aláàgbèkà*  
 te-li-foh-oh-nu a-la-a-gbay-ka  
**centre** *n ààrin* a-a-ring  
**cheap** *pò* kpo  
**check (bill)** *ìwé sòwédowó* i-way so-way-doh-wo  
**check-in** *n kérésókò* ke-ru-so-ko  
**chest** *àyà* a-ya  
**child** *òdómódé* o-do-mo-day  
**cigarette** *sigà* si-ga  
**city** *ilú* i-lu  
**clean** *a mó* mo  
**closed** *padé* kpa-day  
**codeine** *kodíni* koh-di-i-ni  
**cold** *a tító* tu-tu  
**condom** *kòndòmù* ko-n-do-o-mo-mu  
**constipation** *inúkkùn* i-nu-ki-kung  
**contact lenses** *igò-ọ̀jú* i-goh-oh-ju  
**cough** *n ikò* i-ko  
**currency exchange** *Iséwó ilẹ̀ òkèrè*  
 i-she-woh i-le oh-kay-ay-ray  
**customs (immigration)** *asòbodé* a-sho-boh-day

### D

**dairy products** *èròjà wàrà* ay-roh-ja wa-ra  
**dangerous** *léwu* lay-wu  
**date (time)** *àkókò* a-koh-koh  
**day** *ọ́jọ* o-jo  
**diaper** *asọ-ìlèèdì* a-sho-i-lay-ay-di  
**diarrhoea** *igbé-gbuuru* i-gbe-gbu-u-ru  
**dinner** *oúnje-alé* oh-ung-je-a-le  
**dirty** *dòtì* do-ti  
**disabled** *abirùn* a-bi-rung  
**double bed** *ibùsùn aláàgbèkà* i-bu-sung a-la-a-gbay-ka  
**drink** *n ohun mimu* oh-hung-mi-mu  
**drivers licence** *ìwé èrì awakò* i-way e-ri a-wa-ko  
**drug (illicit)** *ògùn olóró* o-gung oh-loh-roh

## E

ear *etí* ay-ti  
 east *ilá* oòrùn i-la oh-oh-rung  
 economy class *jìkòò alabòodé*  
 i-joh-koh-oh a-la-bo-o-day  
 elevator *èrò-àkàbà* e-ro-a-ka-ba  
 email *n lètà* orì itàkùn àgbayé  
 le-ta oh-ri i-ta-kung a-gba-yay  
 English (language) *èdè gèésì* ay-day ge-e-si  
 exchange rate *pàsipààrò owó ilẹ̀ òkèèrè*  
 kpa-shi-kpa-a-ro oh-woh i-le oh-kay-ay-ray  
 exit *n ònà àbájáde* o-na a-ba-ja-deh  
 expensive *àwón* o-wong  
 eye *ojú* oh-ju

## F

fast *yá* ya  
 fever *ibà* i-ba  
 finger *ika* ówó i-ka o-wo  
 first-aid kit *àpò ìsègùn wàràwéré*  
 a-kpoh i-she-gung wa-ra-way-ray  
 first class *ipò kīnī* i-kpoh ki-i-ni  
 fish *n eja* e-ja  
 food *ónjẹ* oh-ung-je  
 foot *esẹ* e-se  
 fork *èmúga* e-mu-ga  
 free (of charge) *òfẹ* o-fe  
 fruit *èso* ay-soh  
 funny *panilérinín* kpa-ni-le-ring-ing

## G

game park *ogba-erankò* o-gba-e-rang-koh  
 gift *èbùn* e-bung  
 girl *omòbínrín* o-mo-bing-ring  
 glass (drinking) *ife-imumi* i-fay-i-mu-mi  
 glasses *dígí-ójú* di-gi-oh-ju  
 gluten *gulutīnī* gu-lu-ti-i-ni  
 good *dára* da-ra  
 gram *gírààmù* gi-ra-a-mu  
 guide *n amòna* a-mo-na

## H

hand *owó* o-wo  
 happy *idunnú* i-dung-nu  
 have *ní* ni

he *òun* oh-ung  
 head *orí* oh-ri  
 headache *èfórí* e-fo-ri  
 heart *okàn* o-kang  
 heart condition *ipò okàn* i-kpoh o-kang  
 heat *n oorú* oh-oh-ru  
 here *ibí* i-bi  
 high *gíga* gi-ga  
 highway *òpópónà* oh-kpoh-kpoh-na  
 homosexual *n&a okúnrin asebiabo*  
 o-kung-ring a-shay-bi-a-boh  
 hot *gbóná* gboh-na  
 hungry *ebi* ay-bi

## I

I *èmi* ay-mi  
 identification (card) *kàdì idánimò* ka-a-dì i-da-ni-mo  
 ill *àisàn* a-i-sang  
 important *pàtākì* kpa-ta-ki  
 internet *itákùn àgbáyé* i-ta-kung a-gba-yay  
 interpreter *ògbufò* oh-gbu-fo

## J

job *isẹ* i-she

## K

key *kókóró* ko-ko-ro  
 kilogram *kilò* ki-loh  
 kitchen *ilẹ̀ idánà* i-lay i-da-na  
 knife *òbẹ* o-be

## L

laundry (place) *ibi ifoşo* i-bi i-fo-sho  
 lawyer *agbejorò* a-gbe-jo-roh  
 left-luggage office *ófisi ikérùsì* o-fi-i-si i-ke-ru-si  
 leg *esẹ* e-se  
 lesbian *n&a obínrin asebiako*  
 oh-bing-ring a-shay-bi-a-ko  
 less *dín* ding  
 letter (mail) *lètà* le-ta  
 like *✓ fẹràn* fe-rang  
 lost-property office *ófisi ikérùtònú-sí*  
 o-fi-i-si i-ke-ru-toh-nu-si  
 love *✓ fẹ* fe  
 lunch *ónjẹ* ósán oh-ung-je o-sang

## M

man *okúnrin* o-kung-ring  
 matches *ìsánà* i-sha-na  
 meat *eran* e-rang  
 medicine *ògùn* oh-gung  
 message *isẹ* i-she  
 mobile phone *télifòonù-alààgbeká*  
 te-li-foh-oh-nu-a-la-a-gbay-ka  
 month *osù* oh-shu  
 morning *ààrò* a-a-ro  
 motorcycle *alùkùkù* a-lu-kpu-kpu  
 mouth *enu* e-nu  
 movie *sinimá* si-ni-ma  
 MSG *amòbèdùn* a-mo-be-dung  
 museum *ilẹ̀-ìsẹ̀m̀báyé* i-lay-i-she-m-ba-yay  
 music *orin* oh-ring

## N

name *n orúko* oh-ru-ko  
 napkin *aşo inuwò* a-sho i-nu-wo  
 nappy *aşo ilẹ̀dì omòdè* a-sho i-lay-ay-di o-mo-day  
 national park *gbàgede igbáfé* gba-gay-day i-gba-fe  
 nausea *èèbí* ay-ay-bi  
 neck *orùn* o-rung  
 new *tuntun* tung-tung  
 news *iròyìn* i-roh-ying  
 newspaper *iwé-iròyìn* i-way-i-roh-ying  
 night *alẹ* a-le  
 nightclub *ilẹ̀ igbafé alẹ* i-lay i-gba-fe a-le  
 noisy *pariwo* kpa-ri-woh  
 nonsmoking *màmusigá* ma-mu-si-ga  
 north *àarèwá* a-a-ray-wa  
 nose *imú* i-mu  
 now *nísinsinyi* ni-sing-sing-yi  
 number *nóhà* no-n-ba  
 nuts *nòtí* no-o-ti

## O

oil (engine) *epo* ay-kpoh  
 OK *ódára* oh-da-ra  
 old *gbó* gboh  
 open *a sí* shi  
 outside *íta* i-ta

## P

package *erú* e-ru  
 pain *irora* i-roh-ra

palace *ààfín* òba a-a-fing o-ba  
 paper *iwé* i-way  
 park (car) *✓ yàrá igbókòsì* ya-ra i-gbo-ko-si  
 passport *iwé irinnà* i-we i-ring-na  
 pay *san* sang  
 pen *kálàmù* ka-la-mu  
 petrol *epo betiròlù* ay-kpoh be-ti-roh-oh-lu  
 pharmacy *ilẹ̀ ipòògùn* i-lay kpoh-oh-gung  
 plate *àwò/abó* a-woh/a-bo  
 postcard *páálí ikini* kpa-a-li i-ki-ni  
 post office *ilẹ̀ ifowópamòsì* i-lay i-foh-woh-kpa-mo-si  
 pregnant *ayún* oh-ying

## Q

quiet *dáké* da-ke

## R

rain *n òjò* oh-joh  
 razor *abefélé* a-be-fe-le  
 registered mail *iwé ìhránsẹ̀* i-way i-fi-rang-she  
 rent *✓ yá lò* ya loh  
 repair *✓ tún sẹ* tung shay  
 reservation *gbà sílẹ̀* gba-si-le  
 restaurant *ilẹ̀ itura* i-lay i-tu-ra  
 return *✓ padà* kpa-da  
 road *òna* o-na  
 room *yàrá* ya-ra

## S

sad *banújẹ* ba-nu-je  
 safe *a fi pamò* fi-kpa-mo  
 sanitary napkin *aşo nnkan-osù* a-sho n-n-kang-oh-shu  
 seafood *àwon-ohun-jije-inú-okun*  
 a-wong-oh-hung-ji-je-i-nu-oh-kun  
 seat *ijokòò* i-joh-koh-oh  
 send *fi ránsẹ̀* fi rang-she  
 sex *bá sùn* ba sung  
 shampoo *oşefíforun* o-she-i-fo-rung  
 share (a dorm, etc) *bá pín* ba-kping  
 shaving cream *oşefífarun* o-she-i-fa-rung  
 she *òun* oh-ung  
 sheet (bed) *aşo ibora* a-sho i-boh-ra  
 shirt *sẹ̀tí* she-e-ti  
 shoes *bàtà* ba-ta  
 shop *n sòòbù* sho-o-bu  
 shower *n sàwà* sha-wa  
 skin *awo* a-wo  
 skirt *aşo àwòsòdò obinrin*  
 a-sho a-wo-soh-doh oh-bing-ring  
 sleep *✓ sùn* sung

© Lonely Planet Publications

small *kéré* kay-ray  
 smoke (cigarettes) √ *mu mu*  
 soap *osè* o-she  
 some *diè* di-e  
 soon *lāipé* la-i-kpe  
 sore throat *egbò òfun* ay-gboh-o-fung  
 south *gúsù* gu-su  
 souvenir shop *sòbù itajà* sho-o-bu i-ta-ja  
 speak *sòrò* so-ro  
 spoon *síbi* shi-bi  
 stamp *dòtè* oh-oh-te  
 stand-by ticket *tíkèètí sí-dúròdiè*  
 ti-ke-e-ti si-du-roh-di-e  
 station (train) *ibudoko rélùwèè*  
 i-bu-doh-ko ray-lu-way-ay  
 stomach *lkùn* i-kung  
 stop √ *dúró* du-roh  
 stop (bus) ∩ *ibúdókò* i-bu-doh-ko  
 street *òpópó* oh-kpoh-kpoh  
 student *akékòò* a-ke-ko-o  
 sunscreen *ipara-agbòòrùn* i-kpa-ra-a-gboh-oh-rung  
 swim √ *lúwèè* lu-we-e

## T

tampons *asò nnkan-osù* a-sho n-n-kang-oh-shu  
 teeth *eyin* ay-ying  
 telephone ∩ *telifòdònu* te-li-foh-oh-nu  
 television *amòhùnmàwòrán*  
 a-moh-hung-ma-woh-rang  
 temperature (weather) *ojú ojó* oh-ju o-jo  
 tent *àgó* a-go  
 that (one) *iyen* i-yeng  
 they *àwon* a-wong  
 thirsty *òungbè* oh-ung-gbe  
 this (one) *éyí* ay-yi  
 throat *òfun* o-fung  
 ticket *ìwè iwólé* i-way i-wo-le  
 time *igbà* i-gba  
 tired *rè* re  
 tissues *isù ara* i-shu a-ra  
 today *òní* oh-ni  
 toilet *ilè igbònsè* i-lay i-gbong-se  
 tonight *alé òní* a-le oh-ni  
 toothache *akokoro* a-koh-koh-roh  
 toothbrush *búròsì ifoyin* bu-ro-o-shi i-fo-ying  
 toothpaste *osè ifoyin* o-she i-fo-ying  
 torch (flashlight) *tòsì* to-o-shi  
 tourist office *ofísi arin-rin-àò* o-fi-i-si a-ring-ring-a-joh  
 towel *tàwèlì* ta-we-li

translate *túmò* tu-mo  
 travel agency *asètò arin-rin-àjò*  
 a-she-toh a-ring-ring-a-joh  
 travellers cheque *ìwè sòwédowo arin-rin-àjò*  
 i-we so-way-doh-woh a-ring-ring-a-joh  
 trousers *sòkòtò* shoh-koh-toh  
 twin beds *bèèdì onibèjì* be-e-di oh-ni-bay-ji  
 tyre *táyà* ta-ya

## U

underwear *àwòtélé* a-wo-te-le  
 urgent *kiákíá* ki-a-ki-a

## V

vacant *sí sīlè* shi-si-le  
 vegetable ∩ *èfó* e-fo  
 vegetarian *a aláìjeran* a-la-i-je-rang  
 visa *ìwè àsè ìrinnà* i-we a-she i-ring-na

## W

waiter *agbòtí* a-gbo-ti  
 walk √ *rín* ring  
 wallet *ápò owó* a-kpoh oh-woh  
 warm *a oorú* oh-oh-ru  
 wash (something) *fò* fo  
 watch ∩ *ìsọ* i-sho  
 water *omi* oh-mi  
 we *àwa* a-wa  
 weekend *òpin-òsè* oh-ping-o-se  
 west *iwò oòrùn* i-wo oh-oh-rung  
 wheelchair *kèké abirùn* ke-ke a-bi-rung  
 when *nigbàwo* ni-gba-woh  
 where *níbo* ni-boh  
 who *ta ní ta ní*  
 why *nítórí kí ní* ni-toh-ri ki ni  
 window *ferèsè* fay-ray-say  
 wine *otí lile* o-ti li-lay  
 with *pèlú* kpe-lu  
 without *láisí* la-i-si  
 woman *obinrin* oh-bing-ring  
 write *kọ* ko

## Y

you *sé iwó* i-wo  
 you *pí èyin* e-ying

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

# Zulu



# pronunciation

| Vowels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |               | Consonants |                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------|-------------------------------|
| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | English sound | Symbol     | English sound                 |
| aa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | father        | b          | rib-punch                     |
| aw                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | law           | b'         | strong b with air sucked in   |
| e                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | bet           | ch'        | as in 'let-show' but spat out |
| ee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | see           | d          | as in 'hard-times'            |
| u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | put           | dl         | like a voiced hl              |
| In this chapter, the Zulu pronunciation is given in pink after each phrase.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |               | f          | fun                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | g          | as in 'big-kick'              |
| Each syllable is separated by a dot, and the syllable stressed in each word is italicised.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |               | h          | hat                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | hl         | as in the Welsh 'llewellyn'   |
| For example:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |               | j          | jar                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | k          | kit                           |
| <i>Uxolo.</i> <i>u-k'aw-law</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | k'         | k, but spat out               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | l          | lot                           |
| Note also that Zulu has no word stress in questions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |               | m          | man                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | n          | not                           |
| The term 'voiced' applied to consonant and clicks in this chapter means 'said with the vocal cords vibrating'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |               | ng         | finger                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | ny         | canyon                        |
| Zulu's glottalised consonants, simplified as b', ch', k', p', t' and ts' in our pronunciation guide, are made by tightening and releasing the space between the vocal cords when you pronounce the sound, a bit like combining it with the sound in the middle of the word 'uh-oh'. The sound b' has an extra twist – instead of breathing out to make the sound, you breathe in. |               | p          | pet                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | p'         | poping p                      |
| For information on Zulu's distinctive click sounds, see the box on page 220.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |               | r          | run (rolled)                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | s          | sun                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | sh         | shot                          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | t          | top                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | t'         | spitting t                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | ts'        | as in 'lets', but spat out    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | v          | very                          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | w          | win                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | y          | yes                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |               | z          | zero                          |

## introduction

The name of the Zulu language (*isiZulu* ee-see-zu-lu) comes from the word *izulu* ee-zu-lu – literally 'heaven', or, more poetically, 'the people of heaven'. About 10 million Africans speak Zulu as a first language, with the vast majority (more than 95 per cent) in South Africa. Other speakers are in Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique and Swaziland. Zulu, an Nguni language belonging to the Southern Bantu group, is closely related to other Bantu languages in southern Africa, particularly Xhosa. Zulu-speaking people are descendents of the Nguni people who inhabited coastal regions of southeastern Africa from the 16th century. Some linguists believe that during the 16th and 17th centuries, the Nguni dialects acquired their distinctive 'click' sounds, which still feature in Zulu. Another theory claims that Zulu and Xhosa women borrowed the clicks from neighbouring Khoisan languages to disguise taboo words in their own languages. The Zulu Empire was established in the second quarter of the 19th century, a time in which foreign missionaries were recording and documenting the language and culture of the Zulu people. Several spelling systems were in use by 1860, and a standardised writing system was implemented in 1921.

zulu (native language)

zulu (generally understood)



## language difficulties

|                       |                               |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Do you speak English? | <i>Uyasikhuluma isiNgisi?</i> | u-yaa-see-ku-lu-maa     |
| Do you understand?    | <i>Uyezwa?</i>                | ee-see-ngee-see         |
| I understand.         | <i>Ngiyezwa.</i>              | u-ye-zwaa               |
| I don't understand.   | <i>Angizwa.</i>               | ngee-ye-zwaa            |
|                       |                               | aa-ngee-zwaa            |
| Could you please ...? | <i>Ake ...?</i>               | aa-ge ...               |
| repeat that           | <i>uphinde</i>                | u-pee-nde               |
| speak more            | <i>ukhulume kancane</i>       | u-ku-lu-me gaa-nk!aa-ne |
| slowly                | <i>kakhulu</i>                | gaa-ku-lu               |
| write it down         | <i>uyibhale phansi</i>        | u-yee-baa-le paa-nts'ee |

### click sounds

Zulu has a series of click sounds: some clicks are against the front teeth (like a 'tsk' sound), some are against the roof of the mouth at the front (like a 'tock' sound) and some are against the side teeth (like the chirrup you make to get a horse to start walking).

| front teeth | roof of the mouth | side teeth      | description                    |
|-------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| k!          | k <sub>i</sub>    | k <sub>i</sub>  | voiceless                      |
| kh!         | kh <sub>i</sub>   | kh <sub>i</sub> | aspirated (with a puff of air) |
| g!          | g <sub>i</sub>    | g <sub>i</sub>  | voiced                         |
| n!          | n <sub>i</sub>    | n <sub>i</sub>  | nasalized voiceless            |
| gn!         | gn <sub>i</sub>   | gn <sub>i</sub> | nasalised voiced               |

## time, dates & numbers

|                          |                                         |                                               |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| What time is it?         | <i>Ngubani isikhathi?</i>               | ngu-b'aa-nee ee-see-kaa-tee                   |
| It's one o'clock.        | <i>Nguwani.</i>                         | ngu-waa-nee                                   |
| It's (two) o'clock.      | <i>Ngu(thu).</i>                        | ngu-(thu)                                     |
| It's quarter past (one). | <i>Yingokhotha-phasi (wani).</i>        | yee-ngaw-kaw-taa-paa-see (waa-nee)            |
| Half past (one).         | <i>Ngophasi-(wani).</i>                 | ngaw-paa-see-(waa-nee)                        |
| Quarter to (eight).      | <i>Ngokhotha-thu (eyithi).</i>          | ngaw-kaw-taa-tu (e-yee-tee)                   |
| At what time ...?        | <i>Ngasikhathi bani ...?</i>            | ngaa-see-kaa-tee b'aa-nee ...                 |
| At ...                   | <i>Ngo-...</i>                          | ngaw-...                                      |
| It's (17 December).      | <i>Ngumhla ka- (seventini Disemba).</i> | ngu-m-hlaa gaa- (se-ve-nt'ee-nee dee-se-mbaa) |

yesterday  
today  
tomorrow

*izolo*  
*namhlanje*  
*kusasa*

ee-zaw-law  
naa-m-hlaa-nje  
gu-saa-saa

Monday  
Tuesday  
Wednesday  
Thursday  
Friday  
Saturday  
Sunday

*uMsombuluko*  
*uLwesibili*  
*uLwesithathu*  
*uLwesine*  
*uLwesihlanu*  
*uMgqibelo*  
*iSonto*

u-m-saw-mbu-lu-gaw  
u-lwe-see-b'ee-lee  
u-lwe-see-taa-tu  
u-lwe-see-ne  
u-lwe-see-hlaa-nu  
u-m-gjee-b'e-law  
ee-saw-nt'aw

### numbers

In Zulu, numbers borrowed from English are commonly used and will be understood. They're also given in this chapter, rather than the more complex Zulu forms. See below for numbers one to 10.

|   |                |               |    |                 |               |
|---|----------------|---------------|----|-----------------|---------------|
| 1 | <i>uwani</i>   | u-waa-nee     | 6  | <i>usiksi</i>   | u-see-see     |
| 2 | <i>uthu</i>    | u-tu          | 7  | <i>usevene</i>  | u-se-ve-nee   |
| 3 | <i>uthri</i>   | u-three       | 8  | <i>u-eyithi</i> | u-e-yeet      |
| 4 | <i>ufo</i>     | u-faw         | 9  | <i>unayini</i>  | u-naa-yee-nee |
| 5 | <i>ufayifi</i> | u-faa-yee-fee | 10 | <i>utheni</i>   | u-the-nee     |

## border crossing

|                                                                        |                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I'm here ...<br>in transit<br>on business<br>on holiday                | <i>Ngilapha ...<br/>ngidlula nje<br/>ngebhizinisi<br/>ngeholide</i>                                            | ngée-laa-paa ...<br>ngée-dlu-laa nje<br>nge-bee-zee-nee-see<br>nge-haw-lee-de                                                                 |
| I'm here for ...<br>(10) days<br><br>(three) weeks<br><br>(two) months | <i>Ngizoba lapha ...<br/>amalanga<br/>(ayishumi)<br/>amasonto<br/>(amathathu)<br/>izinyanga<br/>(ezimbili)</i> | ngée-zaw-b'aa laa-paa ...<br>aa-maa-laa-ngaa<br>(a-yee-shu-mee)<br>aa-maa-saw-nt'aw<br>(aa-maa-taa-tu)<br>ee-zee-nyaa-nga<br>(e-zee-mbee-lee) |
| I'm going to (the Drakensberg).<br><i>Ngiya (oKxahlamba).</i>          |                                                                                                                | ngée-yaa (aw-kaa-hlaa-mbaa)                                                                                                                   |
| I'm staying at the (Durban Sun).<br><i>Ngihlala (e-Durban Sun).</i>    |                                                                                                                | ngée-hlaa-laa (e-de-ben saa-nee)                                                                                                              |

## tickets

### A one-way ticket to (Eshowe), please.

*Ngicela ithikithi elilodwa ukuya (eShowe).*      ngee-*k!e*-laa ee-tee-*gee*-tee e-lee-*law*-dwaa u-gu-yaa (e-*shaw*-we)

### A return ticket to (Ulundi), please.

*Ngicela ithikithi elilodwa ukuya nokubuya (oLundi).*      ngee-*k!e*-laa ee-tee-*gee*-tee e-lee-*law*-dwaa u-gu-yaa naw-gu-*b'u*-yaa (aw-*lu*-ndee)

I'd like to ... my  
ticket, please.  
cancel  
change  
collect

*Ngicela uku-...  
ithikithi lami.  
khansela  
shintsha  
landa*      ngee-*k!e*-laa u-gu-...  
ee-tee-*gee*-tee *laa*-mee  
kaa-*nts'e*-laa  
*shee*-nch'aa  
*laa*-ndaa

### Is there a toilet?

*Kukhona ithoyilethi?*      gu-kaw-naa ee-taw-yee-le-tee

### Is there air conditioning?

*Kukhona umoya opholisiwe?*      gu-kaw-naa u-maw-yaa aw-paw-lee-see-we

### How long does the trip take?

*Uhambo luthatha isikhathi esingakanani?*      u-haa-mbaw lu-taa-taa ee-see-kaa-tee e-see-ngaa-gaa-naa-nee

### Is it a direct route?

*Yindlela eqondile?*      yee-ndle-laa e-kjaw-ndee-le

## transport

### Where does flight (BA325) arrive/depart?

*Lifikela/Lisukekela kuphi ibhanoyi u-(BA325)?*      lee-fee-ge-laa /lee-su-ge-ge-laa gu-pee ee-ba-naw-yee u-(bee ey three tu faiv)

### How long will it be delayed?

*Lizomiswa isikhathi esingakanani?*      lee-zaw-mee-swaa ee-see-kaa-tee e-see-ngaa-gaa-naa-nee

### Is this the boat/train to (Cape Town)?

*Yiso isikebhe/isitimela esiya (eKipi)?*      yee-saw ee-see-k'e-be/ee-see-t'ee-me-laa e-see-yaa (e-k'ee-p'ee)

### Is this the bus/plane to (Johannesburg)?

*Yilo ibhasi/ibhanoyi eliya (eGoli)?*      yee-law ee-baa-see/ee-baa-naw-yee e-lee-yaa (e-gaw-lee)

I'd like to hire  
a ... (with  
air conditioning).  
4WD  
car

*Ngicela ukuqasha  
... (enomoya  
opholisiwe).  
i-fo-bhayi-fo  
imoto*

ngee-*k!e*-laa u-gu-*k!aa*-shaa  
... (e-naw-maw-yaa  
aw-paw-lee-see-we)  
ee-*faw*-baa-yee-*faw*  
ee-maw-t'aw

### How much is it for (three) days/weeks?

*Malini amalanga/amasonto (amathathu)?*      maa-lee-nee aa-maa-laa-ngaa/aa-maa-saw-nt'aw (aa-maa-taa-tu)

### How much is it to (Umvoti)?

*Malini ukuya (eMvoti)?*      maa-lee-nee u-gu-yaa (em-vaw-tee)

### Please take me to (this address).

*Ake ungise ku-(lelikheli).*      aa-ge u-ngee-se gu-(le-lee-ke-lee)



## directions

Where's the  
(nearest) ...?

internet café  
market

*Ingakuphi ...  
(eseduzana)?*

*i-Internet café  
imakethe*

ee-ngaa-gu-pee ...  
(e-se-du-zaa-naa)

ee-een-ter-net kaa-fe  
ee-maa-ge-te

### Is this the road to (Hluluwe)?

*Yiyo indlela eya (eHluluwe)?*      yee-yaw ee-ndle-laa e-yaa (e-hlu-hlu-we)

### Can you show me (on the map)?

*Ungangibonisa (kumephu)?*      u-ngaa-ngee-b'aw-nee-saa (gu-me-pu)

### What's the address?

*Lithini ikheli?*      lee-tee-nee ee-ke-lee

### How far is it?

*Kukude kangakanani?*      gu-gu-de gaa-ngaa-gaa-naa-nee

### How do I get there?

*Ngifika kanjani lapho?*      ngee-fee-gaa gaa-njaa-nee laa-paw

### Turn left/right.

*Jikela kwesokunxele/  
kwesokunene.*      jee-ge-laa gwe-saw-gu-*n'le*-le/  
gwe-saw-gu-*ne*-ne

|                 |                         |                                |
|-----------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| It's ...        | Ku-...                  | gu-...                         |
| behind ...      | <i>semva kwa-...</i>    | <i>se-mbvaa gwaa-...</i>       |
| in front of ... | <i>phambi kwa-...</i>   | <i>paa-mbee gwaa-...</i>       |
| near (to ...)   | <i>seduze (na-)...</i>  | <i>se-du-ze (naa-)...</i>      |
| next to ...     | <i>secaleni kwa-...</i> | <i>se-klaa-le-nee gwaa-...</i> |
| on the corner   | <i>sekhoneni</i>        | <i>se-kaw-ne-nee</i>           |
| opposite ...    | <i>bhekene na-...</i>   | <i>be-ge-nee naa-...</i>       |
| straight ahead  | <i>ngaphambili</i>      | <i>ngaa-paa-mbee-lee</i>       |
| there           | <i>laphaya</i>          | <i>laa-paa-yaa</i>             |

## accommodation

|                |                          |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Where's a ...? | Ingakuphi ...?           | ee-ngaa-gu-pee ...                   |
| camping ground | <i>indawo yokukhempa</i> | <i>ee-ndaa-waw yaw-gu-ke-mpaa</i>    |
| guesthouse     | <i>indlu yezivakashi</i> | <i>ee-ndlu ye-zee-vaa-gaa-shee</i>   |
| hotel          | <i>ihhotela</i>          | <i>ee-haw-t'e-laa</i>                |
| youth hostel   | <i>ihostela labasha</i>  | <i>ee-haw-st'e-laa laa-b'aa-shaa</i> |

### Can you recommend somewhere cheap/good?

|                                 |                                              |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ikhona indawo eshibhile/</i> | <i>ee-kaw-naa ee-ndaa-waw e-shee-bee-le/</i> |
| <i>enhle oyaziyo?</i>           | <i>e-ntl'e aw-yaa-zee-yaw</i>                |

### I'd like to book a room, please.

|                               |                                            |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ngingathanda ukubekisa</i> | <i>ngee-ngaa-taa-ndaa u-gu-b'e-gee-saa</i> |
| <i>ikamelo.</i>               | <i>ee-k'aa-me-law</i>                      |

### I have a reservation.

|                           |                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Ngibekelwe indawo.</i> | <i>ngee-b'e-ge-lwe ee-ndaa-waw</i> |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|

|             |                 |                        |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| Do you have | Ninekamelo ...? | nee-ne-k'aa-me-law ... |
| a ... room? |                 |                        |

|        |                        |                                       |
|--------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| single | <i>lomuntu oyedwa</i>  | <i>law-mu-nt'u aw-ye-dwaa</i>         |
| double | <i>labantu ababili</i> | <i>laa-b'aa-nt'u aa-b'aa-b'ee-lee</i> |
| twin   | <i>elinemibhede</i>    | <i>e-lee-ne-mee-be-de</i>             |
|        | <i>emibili</i>         | <i>e-mee-b'ee-lee</i>                 |

### How much is it per ...?

|        |                         |                                     |
|--------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| night  | <i>ubusuku obubodwa</i> | <i>u-b'u-su-gu aw-b'u-b'aw-dwaa</i> |
| person | <i>umuntu oyedwa</i>    | <i>u-mu-nt'u aw-ye-dwaa</i>         |

### I'd like to stay for (two) nights.

|                             |                                         |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Ngingathanda ukulala</i> | <i>ngee-ngaa-taa-ndaa u-gu-laa-laa</i>  |
| <i>izinsuku (ezimbili).</i> | <i>ee-zee-nts'u-gu (e-zee-mbee-lee)</i> |

### What time is check-out?

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Kufanele kuphunywe</i> | <i>gu-faa-ne-le gu-pu-nywe</i>   |
| <i>ngasikhathi bani?</i>  | <i>ngaa-see-kaa-tee b'aa-nee</i> |

### Am I allowed to camp here?

|                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Kuvunyelwa ukumisa</i> | <i>gu-vu-nye-lwa u-gu-mee-saa</i> |
| <i>ikamu lapha?</i>       | <i>ee-k'aa-mu laa-paa</i>         |



## banking & communications

### I'd like to ...

|                     |                        |                               |
|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| arrange a transfer  | <i>Ngicela uku-...</i> | <i>ngee-kl'e-laa u-gu-...</i> |
| cash a cheque       | <i>shintshwa</i>       | <i>shee-nch'waa</i>           |
| change a travellers | <i>phendula isheke</i> | <i>pe-ndu-laa i-she-ge</i>    |
| cheque              | <i>phendula isheke</i> | <i>phe-ndu-laa ee-she-ge</i>  |
| change money        | <i>lesihambi</i>       | <i>le-see-haa-mbee</i>        |
| withdraw money      | <i>shintsha imali</i>  | <i>shee-nch'aa ee-maa-lee</i> |
|                     | <i>kipha imali</i>     | <i>kee-paa ee-maa-lee</i>     |

### I want to ...

|                  |                           |                                        |
|------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| buy a phonecard  | <i>Ngifuna uku-...</i>    | <i>ngee-fu-naa u-gu-...</i>            |
|                  | <i>thenga ikhadi</i>      | <i>te-ngaa ee-kaa-dee</i>              |
|                  | <i>locingo</i>            | <i>law-kl'ee-ngaw</i>                  |
| call (London)    | <i>fowunela</i>           | <i>faw-wu-ne-laa</i>                   |
|                  | <i>ku(Landani)</i>        | <i>gu-(laa-ndaa-nee)</i>               |
| reverse the      | <i>buyisela izindleko</i> | <i>b'u-yee-se-laa ee-zee-ndle-gaw</i>  |
| charges          | <i>emuva</i>              | <i>e-mu-vaa</i>                        |
| use a printer    | <i>sebenzisa iphrinta</i> | <i>se-b'e-ndzee-saa ee-phree-nt'aa</i> |
| use the internet | <i>sebenzisa</i>          | <i>se-b'e-ndzee-saa</i>                |
|                  | <i>i-intanethi</i>        | <i>ee-ee-nt'aa-ne-tee</i>              |

### How much is it per hour?

|                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Malini nge-awa?</i> | <i>maa-lee-nee nge-aa-waa</i> |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|

### How much does a (three-minute) call cost?

|                                 |                                                |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Malini ucingo (lwemizuzu</i> | <i>maa-lee-nee u-kl'ee-ngaw (lwe-mee-zu-zu</i> |
| <i>emithathu)?</i>              | <i>e-mee-taa-tu)</i>                           |

### (One rand) per minute/hour.

|                                   |                                              |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>(Irandi) ngomzuzu/nge-awa.</i> | <i>(ee-raa-ndee) ngaw-m-zu-zu/nge-aa-waa</i> |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|

## tours

|                      |                                |                                  |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| When's the next ...? | <i>Luzokuba nini ...?</i>      | lu-zaw-gu-baa nee-nee ...        |
| day trip             | <i>uhambo lwemini yonke</i>    | u-haa-mbaw lwe-mee-nee yaw-nk'e  |
| tour                 | <i>uhambo</i>                  | u-haa-mbaw                       |
| Is ... included?     | <i>Sekuhlangene imali ...?</i> | se-gu-hlaa-nge-ne ee-maa-lee ... |
| accommodation        | <i>yokuhlala</i>               | yaw-gu-hlaa-laa                  |
| the admission charge | <i>yokungena</i>               | yaw-gu-nge-naa                   |
| food                 | <i>yokudla</i>                 | yaw-gu-dlaa                      |
| transport            | <i>yokuthuthwa</i>             | yaw-gu-tu-twaa                   |

### How long is the tour?

|                                                |                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Uhambo luthatha isikhathi esingakanani?</i> | u-haa-mbaw lu-taa-taa ee-see-kaa-tee e-see-ngaa-gaa-naa-nee |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|

### What time should we be back?

|                                          |                                                   |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kufanele sibuye ngasikhathi bani?</i> | gu-faa-ne-le see-b'u-ye ngaa-see-kaa-tee b'aa-nee |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|

## shopping

### I'm looking for ...

|                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Ngifuna ...</i> | ngee-fu-naa ... |
|--------------------|-----------------|

### I need film for this camera.

|                                       |                                               |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ngidinga ifilimu lale khamera.</i> | ngee-dee-ngaa ee-fee-lee-mu laa-le kaa-me-raa |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|

### Can I listen to this?

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Ngingalalela le na?</i> | ngee-ngaa-laa-le-laa le naa |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|

### Can I have my ... repaired?

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Ngingalungiselwa ... na?</i> | ngee-ngaa-lu-ngee-se-lwaa ... naa |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

### When will it be ready?

|                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Izobe ilungile nini?</i> | ee-zaw-b'e ee-lu-ngee-le nee-nee |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|

### How much is it?

|                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yimalini?</i> | yee-maa-lee-nee |
|------------------|-----------------|

### Can you write down the price?

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Ungangibhalela inani?</i> | u-ngaa-ngee-baa-le-la ee-naa-nee |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|

### What's your lowest price?

|                              |                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Yini intengo ephansi?</i> | yee-nee ee-nt'e-ngaw e-paa-nts'ee |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

### I'll give you (five) rands.

|                                         |                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ngizokunika amarandi (amahlanu).</i> | ngee-zaw-gu-nee-gaa aa-maa-raa-ndee (aa-ma-hlaa-nu) |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

### There's a mistake in the bill.

|                                     |                                             |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Kunesiphosiso esikwenetwini.</i> | gu-ne-see-paw-see-saw e-see-kwe-ne-twee-nee |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

### It's faulty.

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Ayisebenzi kahle.</i> | a-yee-se-b'e-ndzee gaa-hle |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|

### I'd like a receipt, please.

|                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Ngicela irisidi.</i> | ngee-kle-laa ee-ree-see-dee |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|

### I'd like a refund, please.

|                                    |                                              |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ngicela ukubuyiselwa imali.</i> | ngee-kle-laa u-gu-b'u-yee-se-lwaa ee-maa-lee |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|

### Do you accept ...?

|                         |                               |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Nithatha ... na?</i> | nee-taa-taa ... naa           |
| credit cards            | aa-maa-kaa-dee e-khre-dee-tee |
| debit cards             | aa-maa-kaa-dee e-de-b'ee-tee  |
| travellers cheques      | aa-maa-she-ge e-see-haa-mbee  |

### Could you ...?

|                               |                                                                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Unga-... na?</i>           | u-ngaa-... naa                                                     |
| burn a CD from my memory card | waa-taa-taa aa-maa-faa-yee-lee e-kaa-dee-nee laa-mee le-me-maw-ree |
|                               | u-waa-baa-le gu-see-dee                                            |
| develop this film             | ku-lee-saa le-lee fee-lee-mu                                       |

## making conversation

### Hello.

### Hello.

### Good night.

### Goodbye (stay well).

### Goodbye (go well).

### Mr

### Mrs

### Ms/Miss

### Sawubona. sg

### Sanibonani. pl

### Lala/Lalani kahle. sg/pl

### Sala/Salani kahle. sg/pl

### Hamba/Hambani

### kahle. sg/pl

### (u)Mnumzane

### (u)Nkosikazi

### (u)Nkosazana

### saa-wu-b'aw-naa

### saa-nee-b'aw-naa-nee

### laa-laa/laa-laa-nee gaa-hle

### saa-laa/saa-laa-nee gaa-hle

### haa-mbaa/haa-mbaa-nee

### gaa-hle

### (u)-m-nu-m-zaa-ne

### (u)-nk'aw-see-gaa-zee

### (u)-nk'aw-saa-zaa-naa

(the *u* in the Zulu title is omitted when you actually address someone)

|                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| How are you?<br>Fine. And you?<br>What's your<br>name?<br>My name's ...<br>I'm pleased to<br>meet you. | <i>Unjani?/Ninjani? sg/pl</i><br><i>Sikhona. Nawe/Nani? sg/pl</i><br><i>Ngubani igama</i><br><i>lakho?</i><br><i>Igama lami ngu-...</i><br><i>Ngijajabula</i><br><i>ukukwazi/ukunazi. sg/pl</i> | u-njaa-nee/nee-njaa-nee<br>see-kaw-naa naa-we/naa-nee<br>ngu-b'aa-nee ee-gaa-maa<br>laa-kaw<br>ee-gaa-maa laa-mee ngu-...<br>ngee-yaa-jaa-b'u-laa<br>u-gu-gwaa-zee/u-gu-naa-zee |
| This is my ...<br>brother<br>father<br>friend<br>husband<br>mother<br>sister<br>wife                   | <i>Lo ... wami.</i><br><i>ngumfowethu</i><br><i>ngubaba</i><br><i>ngumngane</i><br><i>ngumyeni</i><br><i>ngumama</i><br><i>udadewethu</i><br><i>ngunkosikazi</i>                                | law ... waa-mee<br>ngu-m-faw-we-tu<br>ngu-b'aa-b'aa<br>ngu-m-ngaa-ne<br>ngu-m-ye-nee<br>ngu-maa-maa<br>u-daa-de-we-tu<br>ngu-nk'aw-see-gaa-zee                                  |
| Here's my ...<br>What's your ...?<br>address<br>email address                                          | <i>Nayi ...</i><br><i>Lithini ... lakho?</i><br><i>ikheli</i><br><i>ikheli le-email</i>                                                                                                         | naa-ye ...<br>lee-tee-nee ... laa-kaw<br>ee-ke-lee<br>ee-ke-lee le-e-me-ye-lee                                                                                                  |
| Where are you from?<br>I'm from (Australia).                                                           | <i>Uvelaphi?</i><br><i>Ngivela (e-Ostreliya).</i>                                                                                                                                               | u-ve-laa-pee<br>ngee-ve-laa (e-aw-stre-lee-yaa)                                                                                                                                 |
| I'm married.<br>I'm not married.<br>Can I take a photo<br>(of you)?                                    | <i>Ngishadile.</i><br><i>Angishadanga.</i><br><i>Ngicela uku(ku)-</i><br><i>thatha isithombe.</i>                                                                                               | ngee-shaa-dee-le<br>aa-ngee-shaa-daa-ngaa<br>ngee-k'le-laa u-gu-(gu)-<br>taa-taa ee-see-taw-mbe                                                                                 |

## eating out

|                             |                                                 |                                                  |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Can you<br>recommend a ...? | <i>Ungasitshela</i><br><i>... na?</i>           | u-ngaa-see-ch'e-laa<br>... naa                   |
| bar                         | <i>ngendawo yokuphuza</i><br><i>oyithandayo</i> | nge-ndaa-waw yaw-gu-pu-zaa<br>aw-ye-taa-ndaa-yaw |
| dish                        | <i>ngesidlo</i><br><i>osithandayo</i>           | nge-see-dlaw<br>aw-see-taa-ndaa-yaw              |
| place to eat                | <i>ngendawo yokudla</i><br><i>oyithandayo</i>   | nge-ndaa-waw yaw-gu-dlaa<br>aw-ye-taa-ndaa-yaw   |

|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I'd like ..., please.<br>the bill<br>the menu<br>a table (for two)<br><br>that dish | <i>Ngicela ...</i><br><i>irisidi lokukhokha</i><br><i>imenyu</i><br><i>itafula (yabantu</i><br><i>ababili)</i><br><i>leso sidlo</i> | ngee-k'le-laa ...<br>ee-ree-see-dee law-gu-kaw-kaa<br>ee-me-nyu<br>ee-t'aa-fu-laa (yaa-b'aa-nt'u<br>aa-b'aa-b'ee-lee)<br>le-saw see-dlaw |
| Do you have<br>vegetarian food?                                                     | <i>Ninokudla</i><br><i>kwabangadli nyama?</i>                                                                                       | nee-naw-gu-dlaa<br>gwaa-b'aa-ngaa-dlee nyaa-maa                                                                                          |
| Could you prepare<br>a meal without ...?                                            | <i>Ungakupheka</i><br><i>ukudla ngaphandle</i><br><i>kokusebenzisa ... na?</i>                                                      | u-ngaa-gu-pe-gaa<br>u-gu-dlaa ngaa-paa-ndle<br>gaw-gu-se-b'e-ndzee-saa ... naa                                                           |
| eggs<br>meat stock                                                                  | <i>amaqanda</i><br><i>isobho lenyama</i>                                                                                            | aa-maa-kjaa-ndaa<br>ee-saw-baw le-nyaa-maa                                                                                               |
| (cup of) coffee/tea ...<br>with milk<br>without sugar                               | <i>ikhofi/itye ...</i><br><i>elinobisi</i><br><i>elingenashukela</i>                                                                | ee-kaw-fee/ee-t'ee-ye ...<br>e-lee-naw-b'ee-see<br>e-lee-nge-naa-shu-ge-laa                                                              |
| (boiled) water                                                                      | <i>amanzi</i><br><i>(abilisiweyo)</i>                                                                                               | aa-maa-ndzee<br>(aa-b'ee-lee-see-we-yaw)                                                                                                 |

## emergencies

|                                                     |                                                                                 |                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Call ...!<br>an ambulance<br>a doctor<br>the police | <i>Biza ...!</i><br><i>i-ambulense</i><br><i>udokotela</i><br><i>amaphoyisa</i> | b'ee-zaa ...<br>ee-aa-mbu-le-nts'e<br>u-daw-gaw-t'e-laa<br>aa-maa-paw-ye-see-saa |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Could you help me, please?

*Ake ungisize/ningisize. sg/pl*      aa-ge u-ngee-see-ze/nee-ngee-see-ze

### I'm lost.

*Ngilahlekile.*      ngee-laa-hle-gee-le

### Where are the toilets?

*Ziphi izindlu zangasese?*      zee-pee ee-zee-ndlu zaa-ngaa-se-se

### I want to report an offence.

*Ngifuna ukubika icala.*      ngee-fu-naa u-gu-b'ee-gaa ee-k'laa-laa

### I have insurance.

*Nginomshwayilense.*      ngee-naw-m-shwaa-ye-nt's'e

|                      |                        |                      |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| I've been assaulted. | <i>Ngilinyaziwe.</i>   | ngee-lee-nyaa-zee-we |
| I've been raped.     | <i>Ngidlwenguliwe.</i> | ngee-dlwe-ngu-lee-we |
| I've been robbed.    | <i>Ngigetshengiwe.</i> | ngee-ge-ch'e-ngee-we |

### I've lost my ...

*Ngilahlekelwe yi-...* ngee-laa-hle-ge-lwe yee-...

### My bags were stolen.

*Amapotimende ami ebiwe.* aa-maa-p'aw-tee-me-nde aa-mee e-b'ee-we

### My passport was stolen.

*Iphasiphoti lami lebiwe.* ee-paa-see-paw-tee laa-mee le-b'ee-we

### My wallet was stolen.

*Isikhwama sami semali sebiwe.* ee-see-kwaa-maa saa-mee se-maa-lee se-b'ee-we

### I want to contact my consulate/embassy.

*Ngifuna ukuthintana* ngee-fu-naa u-gu-tee-nt'aa-naa  
*ne-consulate/ne-embassy.* ne-kaw-nsu-laa-tee/ne-e-mbaa-see

## medical needs

|                          |                                     |                                          |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Where's the nearest ...? | <i>Ikuphi indawo ... eseduzane?</i> | ee-gu-pee ee-ndaa-waw ... e-se-du-zaa-ne |
| dentist                  | <i>kadokotela</i>                   | gaa-daw-gaw-te-laa                       |
|                          | <i>wamazinyo</i>                    | waa-maa-zee-nyaw                         |
| doctor                   | <i>kadokotela</i>                   | gaa-daw-gaw-te-laa                       |

### Where's the nearest hospital?

*Sikuphi isibhedlela esiseduzane?* see-gu-pee ee-see-be-dle-laa e-see-se-du-zaa-ne

### Where's the nearest pharmacist?

*Likuphi ikhemisi eliseduzane?* lee-gu-pee ee-ke-mee-see e-lee-se-du-zaa-ne

### I need a doctor (who speaks English).

*Ngidinga udokotela (okwazi ukukhuluma isiNgisi).* ngee-dee-ngaa u-daw-gaw-te-laa (aw-gwaa-zee u-gu-ku-lu-maa ee-see-ngee-see)

### Could I see a female doctor?

*Ngingabona udokotela wesifazane na?* ngee-ngaa-b'aw-naa u-daw-gaw-te-laa we-see-faa-zaa-ne naa

### It hurts here.

*Kubuhlungu lapha.* gu-b'u-hlu-ngu laa-paa

### I'm allergic to (penicillin).

*Angizwani na-(nephenisilini).* aa-ngee-zwaa-nee naa-(ne-pe-nee-see-lee-nee)

## english–zulu dictionary

In this dictionary, words are marked as **n** (noun), **a** (adjective), **v** (verb), **sg** (singular) and **pl** (plural) where necessary. Note that in Zulu the pronouns are prefixes attached to the beginning of a verb, as indicated with hyphens in this dictionary. Zulu adjectives usually come after the noun and the form of the adjective changes according to the class of the noun. Just use the form of the adjective given in this dictionary and remember to have it after the noun – it won't be completely correct grammatically, but you should be understood.

## A

**accommodation** *indawo yokulala*  
 ee-ndaa-waw yaw-gu-laa-laa  
**after** *emva kwa-* e-mbva  
**airport** *isikhumulo samabhanoyi*  
 ee-see-ku-mu-law saa-maa-baa-naw-yee  
**alcohol** *utshwala* u-ch'waa-laa  
**all** *-onke* -aw-nk'e  
**and (joins nouns)** *na-* naa-  
**and (joins sentences)** *futhi* fu-tee  
**ankle** *iqakala* ee-kjaa-gaa-laa  
**arm** *ingalo* ee-ngaa-law  
**aspirin** *i-aspirin* ee-es-pee-ree-nee  
**asthma** *umbefu* u-m-b'e-fu  
**ATM** *i-ATM* ee-e-yee-tee-em

## B

**baby** *usana* u-saa-naa  
**back (body)** *umhlane* u-m-hlaa-ne  
**backpack** *unxazisuka* u-n'aa-zee-su-gaa  
**bad** *-bi* -b'ee  
**baggage claim** *ithikithi yempahla*  
 ee-tee-gee-tee ye-mp'aa-hlaa  
**bank** *ibhange* ee-baa-nge  
**bathroom** *ibhavlumu* ee-baa-vu-lu-mu  
**battery** *ibhetri* ee-be-tree  
**beautiful** *-hle* -hle  
**bed** *umbhede* u-m-be-te  
**beer** *ubhiya* u-bee-ya  
**bees** *izinyosi* ee-zee-nyaw-see  
**before** *phambi kwa-* paa-mbee gwaa-  
**bicycle** *ibhayisikili* ee-baa-yee-see-gee-lee  
**big** *-khulu* -ku-lu  
**blanket** *ingubo* ee-ngu-b'aw  
**blood group** *uhlobo lwegazi* u-hlaw-b'aw lwe-gaa-zee  
**bottle** *ibhodlela* ee-baw-dle-laa  
**bottle opener** *isivulo sebhodlela*  
 ee-see-vu-law se-baw-dle-laa  
**boy** *umfana* u-m-faa-naa  
**brakes (car)** *amabhuleki* aa-maa-bu-le-gee

**breakfast** *ibhulakufesi* ee-bu-laa-gu-fe-see  
**bronchitis** *ukucinana kwesifuba*  
 u-gu-klee-naa gwe-see-fu-b'aa

## C

**café** *ikhofi* ee-ke-fee  
**cancel** *-khansele* -kaa-nts'e-laa  
**can opener** *isivulo sethini* ee-see-vu-law se-tee-nee  
**cash** *n* *ukheshe* u-ke-she  
**cell phone** *isele* ee-se-le  
**centre** *n* *iphakathi* ee-paa-gaa-tee  
**cheap** *-shibhile* -shee-bee-le  
**check (bill)** *irisidi lokukhokha*  
 ee-ree-see-dee law-gu-kaw-kaa  
**check-in** *n* *ukubhalisa* u-gu-baa-lee-saa  
**chest** *isifuba* ee-see-fu-b'aa  
**child** *umntwana* u-m-nt'waa-naa  
**cigarette** *usikilidi* u-see-gee-lee-dee  
**city** *idolobha* ee-daw-law-baa  
**clean** *a* *-hlanzekile* -hlaa-ndze-gee-le  
**closed** *-valiwe* -vaa-lee-we  
**codeine** *i-codeine* ee-kaw-dee-nee  
**cold** *a* *-bandayo* -b'aa-ndaa-yaw  
**collect call** *ucingo olukhokhelwa ngolutholayo*  
 u-klee-ngaw aw-lu-kaw-ke-lwaa ngaw-lu-taw-laa-yaw  
**condom** *ikhondomu* ee-kaw-ndaw-mu  
**constipation** *ukuqunjelwa* u-gu-kju-nje-lwaa  
**contact lenses** *ama-contact lens* aa-maa-kawn-tekt *lens*  
**cough** *n* *umkhuhlane* u-m-ku-hlaa-ne  
**currency exchange** *ukushintshwa kwezimali*  
 u-gu-shee-nch'waa gwe-zee-maa-lee

## D

**dairy products** *imikhiqizo yobisi*  
 ee-mee-kee-gee-zaw yaw-b'ee-see  
**dangerous** *-nengozi* -ne-ngaw-zee  
**date (time)** *usuku* u-su-gu  
**day** *ilanga* ee-laa-ngaa  
**diaper** *inabukeni* ee-naa-b'u-k'e-nee  
**diarrhoea** *uhudo* u-hu-daw  
**dinner** *idina* ee-dee-naa

dirty -ngcolile -nglaw-lee-le  
disabled -nobulima -naw-b' u-lee-maa  
double bed umbhede wedabuli u-m-be-de we-daa-b' u-lee  
drink n isiphuzo ee-see-pu-zaw  
drivers licence ilayisense lokuqhuba  
ee-laa-see-se-nts' e yaw-gu-khu-b' aa  
drugs (illicit) izidakamizwa ee-zee-daa-gaa-mee-zwaa

**E**  
ear indlebe ee-ndle-b'e  
east impumalanga ee-mp' u-maa-laa-ngaa  
economy class iklassi elishibhile  
ee-klaa-see e-lee-shee-bee-le  
elevator (lift) ikheshi ee-ke-shee  
email n i-e-mail ee-ee-me-yee-lee  
English (language) isiNgisi ee-see-ngee-see  
exchange rate izinga loshintsho lwezimali  
ee-zee-ngaa law-shee-nch' aw lwe-zee-maa-lee  
exit n umnyango wokuphuma  
u-m-nyaa-ngaw waw-gu-pu-maa  
expensive -dulile -du-lee-le  
eye iso ee-saw

**F**  
fast ngokusheshisa ngaw-gu-she-shee-saa  
fever imfiva ee-mp' ee-vaa  
finger umunwe u-mu-nwe  
first-aid kit ibhokisi losizo lokuqala  
ee-baw-gee-see law-see-zaw law-gu-kjaa-laa  
first class ufesi u-fe-see  
fish n inhlanzi ee-nt' aa-ndzee  
food ukudla u-gu-dlaa  
foot unyawo u-nyaa-waw  
fork imfologo ee-mp' aw-law-gaw  
free (of charge) mahhala maa-haa-laa  
fruit isithelo ee-see-te-law  
funny -hlekisayo -hle-gee-saa-yaw

**G**  
game park indawo yezilwane zasendle  
ee-ndaa-waw ye-zee-lwaa-ne zaa-se-ndle  
gift isipho ee-see-paw  
girl (older) intombi ee-nt' aw-mbee  
girl (young) intombazana ee-nt' aw-mbaa-zaa-naa  
glass (drinking) ingilazi ee-ngee-laa-zee  
glasses izibuko ee-zee-b' u-gaw  
good -hle -hle  
gram igramu ee-graa-mu  
guide n umphelezeli u-m-pe-le-ze-lee

**H**  
hand isandla ee-saa-ndlaa  
happy -jabule -jaa-b' u-lee  
have -na- -naa-  
he u- u-  
head ikhanda ee-kaa-ndaa  
headache ikhanda ee-kaa-ndaa  
heart inhliziyo ee-ntlee-zee-yaw  
heart condition isifo senhliziyo  
ee-see-faw se-nt' ee-zee-yaw  
heat n ukushisa u-gu-shee-saa  
here lapha laa-paa  
high -phakamileyo -paa-gaa-mee-le-yaw  
highway umgwaqomkhulu u-m-gwaa-kjawa-m-ku-lu  
homosexual n inkonkoni ee-nk' aw-nk' aw-nee  
hot -shisa -shee-saa  
hungry -lambile -laa-mbee-le

**I**  
I ngi- ngee-  
identification (card) i-ID ee-aa-yee-dee  
(be) ill -gula -gu-laa  
important -balulekile -b' aa-lu-le-gee-le  
internet i-intanethi ee-ee-nt' aa-ne-tee  
interpreter ihumusha ee-hu-mu-shaa

**J**  
job umsebenzi u-m-se-b' e-ndzee

**K**  
key isikhiye ee-see-kee-ye  
kilogram ikhilogramu ee-kee-law-graa-mu  
kitchen ikhishi ee-kee-shee  
knife umese u-me-se

**L**  
laundry (place) ilondolo ee-law-ndaw-law  
lawyer ummeli u-m-me-lee  
leg umlenze u-m-le-ndze  
lesbian n inkonkoni yesifazane  
ee-nk' aw-nk' aw-nee ye-see-faa-zaa-ne  
less a -ncane -nklaa-ne  
letter (mail) incwadi ee-nk' lwa-dlee  
like v -thanda -taa-ndaa  
love v -thanda -taa-ndaa  
lunch ilantshi ee-laa-nch' ee

**M**  
man indoda ee-ndaw-daa  
matches umentshi u-me-nch' ee-see  
meat inyama ee-nyaa-maa  
medicine umuthi u-mu-tee  
message umlayezo u-m-laa-ye-zaw  
mobile phone isele ee-se-le  
month inyanga ee-nyaa-ngaa  
morning intsasa ee-nts' aa-saa  
(in the) morning ekuseni e-gu-se-nee  
motorcycle isithuthuthu ee-see-tu-tu-tu  
mouth umlomo u-m-law-maw  
movie ibhayisikobho ee-baa-yee-see-k' aw-baw  
MSG i-MSG ee-em-es-jee  
museum imnyuziyamu ee-m-nyu-zee-yaa-mu  
music umculo u-m-kju-law

**N**  
name igama ee-gaa-maa  
napkin (serviette) iseviyethe ee-se-vee-ye-te  
nappy inabukeni ee-naa-b' u-ge-nee  
national park iphaki elivikelwe lezwe lonke  
ee-paa-gee e-lee-vee-ge-lwe le-zwe law-nk' e  
nausea isicacucasu ee-see-klaa-su-klaa-su  
neck intamo ee-nt' aa-maw  
new -sha -shaa  
news izindaba ee-zee-ndaa-b' aa  
newspaper iphephandaba ee-pe-paa-ndaa-b' aa  
night ubusuku u-b' u-su-gu  
nightclub iklabhu yasebusuku  
ee-klaa-bu yaa-se-b' u-su-gu  
noisy -nomsindo -naw-m-see-ndaw  
nonsmoking lapho kungebhennywe khona  
laa-paw gu-nge-be-nywe kaw-naa  
north inyakatho ee-nyaa-gaa-taw  
nose impumulo ee-mp' u-mu-law  
now manje maa-nje  
number (numeral) inombolo ee-naw-mbaw-law  
number (quantity) inani ee-naa-nee  
nuts amantongomane aa-maa-nt' aw-ngaw-maa-ne

**O**  
oil (engine) uwoyela u-waw-ye-laa  
OK kulungile gu-lu-ngee-le  
old (objects) -dala -daa-laa  
old (people) -khulile -ku-lee-le  
open a -vuliwe -vu-lee-we  
outside ngaphandle ngaa-paa-ndle

**P**  
package iphasela ee-paa-se-laa  
pain ubuhlungu u-b' u-hlu-ngu  
paper iphepha ee-pe-paa  
park (car) v -paka -paa-gaa  
passport iphasiphothi ee-paa-see-paw-tee  
pay -khokha -kaw-kaa  
pen ipeni ee-pe-nee  
petrol uphethilolo u-pe-tee-law-law  
pharmacy ikhemisi ee-ke-mee-see  
plate isitsha ee-see-ch' aa  
postcard iposikhadi ee-p' aw-see-kaa-dee  
post office iposi ee-paw-see  
pregnant -khulelwe -ku-le-lwe

**R**  
rain n imvula ee-mbvu-laa  
razor ireza ee-re-zaa  
registered mail iposi elirejistiwe  
ee-p' aw-see e-lee-re-jee-st' ee-we  
rent v -qashisa -kja-shee-saa  
repair v -lungisa -lu-ngee-saa  
reservation (place) indawo ebhukiwe  
ee-ndaa-waw e-bu-gee-we  
reservation (table) itafula elibhukiwe  
ee-t' aa-fu-laa e-lee-bu-gee-we  
restaurant ikhefi ee-ke-fee  
return (come back) -buya -b' u-yaa  
return (give back) -buyisa -b' u-yee-saa  
road indlela ee-ndle-laa  
room ikamelo ee-k' aa-me-law

**S**  
sad -dabukile -daa-b' u-gee-le  
safe a -ngenangozi -nge-naa-ngaw-zee  
sanitary napkins amaphede aa-maa-pe-te  
seafood ukudla okuvela olwandle  
u-gu-dlaa aw-gu-ve-laa aw-lwaa-ndle  
seat isihlalo ee-see-hlaa-law  
send (someone) -thuma -tu-maa  
send (something) -thumela -tu-me-laa  
sex ukulalana u-gu-laa-laa-naa  
shampoo ishampu ee-shaa-mp' u  
share (a dorm, etc) ukulala sibaningi ekamelweni  
u-gu-laa-laa see-b' aa-nee-ngee e-k' a-me-lwe-nee  
shaving cream umuthi wokushafa  
u-mu-tee waw-gu-she-faa  
she u- u-  
sheet (bed) ishidi ee-shee-dee

shirt *iyembe* ee-ye-mbe  
 shoes *izicathulo* ee-zee-klaa-tu-law  
 shop *n ivenkile* ee-ve-nk'ee-le  
 shower *n ishawa* ee-shaa-waa  
 skin *isikhumba* ee-see-ku-mbaa  
 skirt *isiketi* ee-see-k'e-tee  
 sleep *v -lala -laa-laa*  
 small *-ncane -nklaa-ne*  
 smoke (cigarettes) *v -bhema* -be-maa  
 smoking *a lapho kungabhenywa khona*  
*laa-paw gu-ngaa-be-nywaa kaw-naa*  
 soap *insipho* ee-nts'ee-paw  
 some -nye -nye  
 soon *masinyane* maa-see-nyaa-ne  
 sore throat *umphimbo obuhlungu*  
*u-m-pee-mbaw aw-b'u-hlu-ngu*  
 south *iningizimu* ee-nee-ngee-zee-mu  
 speak *-khuluma* -ku-lu-maa  
 spoon *ukhezo* u-ke-zaw  
 stamp *isitembu* ee-see-t'e-mbu  
 station (train) *isiteshi* ee-see-t'e-shee  
 stomach *isisu* ee-see-su  
 stop *v -ma -maa*  
 stop (bus) *n isitobhi (sebhasi)*  
*ee-see-t'aw-bee (se-baa-see)*  
 street *umgwaqo* u-m-gwaa-kjaw  
 student *umfundi* u-m-fu-ndee  
 sunscreen *i-sunscreen* ee-saan-skree-nee  
 swim *v -bhukuda* -bu-gu-daa

**T**  
 tampons *amathemponi* aa-maa-te-mp'aw-nee  
 teeth *amazinyo* aa-maa-zee-nyaw  
 telephone *n ucingo* u-klee-ngaw  
 television *umabonakude* u-maa-b'aw-naa-gu-de  
 temperature (weather) *izinga lokushisa*  
*ee-zee-ngaa law-gu-shee-saa*  
 tent *itende* ee-t'e-nde  
 that (one near you) *leyo* le-yaw  
 that (one in the distance) *leya* le-yaa  
 they (animals & objects) *zi-* zee-  
 they (people) *ba-* b'aa-  
 thirsty *-omile -aw-mee-le*  
 this (one) *le* le  
 throat *umphimbo* u-m-pee-mbaw  
 ticket *ithikithi* ee-tee-gee-tee  
 time *isikhathi* ee-see-kaa-tee  
 tired *-khathele* -kaa-te-le  
 today *namhlanje* naa-m-hlaa-nje

toilet *indlu yangasese* ee-ndlu yaa-ngaa-se-se  
 tonight *namhlanje ebusuku* naa-m-hlaa-nje e-b'u-su-gu  
 toothbrush *isixubho* ee-see-k'u-baw  
 toothpaste *umuthi wokugeza amazinyo*  
*u-mu-tee waw-gu-ge-zaa aa-maa-zee-nyaw*  
 torch (flashlight) *ithoshi* ee-taw-shee  
 towel *ithawula* ee-taa-wu-laa  
 translate *-humusha* -hu-mu-sha  
 travellers cheque *isheke lezihambi*  
*ee-she-ge le-zee-haa-mbee*  
 trousers *ibhulukwe* ee-bu-lu-gwe  
 tyre *ithaya* ee-taa-yaa  
 vacant *-ngenamuntu* -nge-naa-mu-nt'u  
 vegetable *n umfino* u-m-fee-naw  
 vegetarian *a okungenanyama* aw-gu-nge-na-nyaa-maa  
 visa *iviza* ee-vee-zaa

**W**  
 waiter *uweta* u-we-t'aa  
 walk *v -hamba* ngezinyawo  
*-haa-mbaa nge-zee-nyaa-waw*  
 wallet *isikhwama* ee-see-kwaa-maa  
 warm *a -fudumele* -fu-du-me-le  
 wash (something) *-geza* -ge-zaa  
 watch *n iwashi* ee-waa-shee  
 water *amanzi* aa-maa-ndzee  
 weekend *impelasonto* ee-mp'e-laa-saw-nt'aw  
 west *intshonalanga* ee-nch'aw-naa-laa-ngaa  
 wheelchair *isitulo esinamasondo*  
*ee-see-t'u-law e-see-naa-maa-saw-ndaw*  
 when *nini* nee-nee  
 where *kuphi* gu-pee  
 who *sg ubani* u-b'aa-nee  
 who *pl obani* aw-b'aa-nee  
 why *yini* yee-nee  
 window *ifasitela* ee-faa-see-t'e-laa  
 wine *iwayini* ee-waa-yee-nee  
 with *na-* naa-  
 without (someone) *engekho* e-nge-kaw  
 without (something – eg milk, sugar)  
*-ngena* -nge-naa-  
 woman *inkosikazi* ee-nk'aw-see-gaa-zee  
 write *-bhala* -baa-laa

**Y**  
 you *sg u-* u-  
 you *pl ni-* nee-

© Lonely Planet Publications. To make it easier for you to use, access to this chapter is not digitally restricted. In return, we think it's fair to ask you to use it for personal, non-commercial purposes only. In other words, please don't upload this chapter to a peer-to-peer site, mass email it to everyone you know, or resell it. See the terms and conditions on our site for a longer way of saying the above - 'Do the right thing with our content.'

|                         | Afk    | Amh    | Arb    | Fre    | Hsa    | Mgy      | Por      | Sho           | Swa      | Wol      | Xho      | Yor      | Zul      |
|-------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|---------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| <b>A</b>                |        |        |        |        |        |          |          |               |          |          |          |          |          |
| accommodation           | 16     | 34     | 52     | 68     | 84     | 102      | 118      | 134           | 152      | 170      | 188      | 206      | 224      |
| address                 | 15, 20 | 33, 38 | 51, 56 | 67, 70 | 83, 88 | 101, 106 | 117, 120 | 133, 134, 138 | 151, 156 | 169, 174 | 187, 192 | 205, 210 | 223, 228 |
| addressing people       | 19     | 37     | 55     | 69     | 87     | 105      | 119      | 137           | 155      | 173      | 191      | 209      | 227      |
| finding accommodation   | 16     | 34     | 52     |        | 84     | 102      |          | 134           | 152      | 170      | 188      | 206      | 224      |
| airport                 | 14     | 32     | 50     |        | 82     | 100      |          | 133           | 150      | 168      | 186      | 204      | 222      |
| alcoholic drinks        | 241    |        |        |        |        |          |          |               |          |          |          |          |          |
| allergies               | 22     | 40     | 58     | 72     | 90     | 108      | 122      | 140           | 158      | 176      | 194      | 212      | 230      |
| ambulance               | 21     | 39     | 57     | 71     | 89     | 107      | 121      | 139           | 157      | 175      | 193      | 211      | 229      |
| animals                 | 247    |        |        |        |        |          |          |               |          |          |          |          |          |
| art & architecture      | 236    |        |        |        |        |          |          |               |          |          |          |          |          |
| assault                 | 22     | 40     | 58     | 71     | 90     | 108      | 121      | 140           | 158      | 176      | 194      | 211      | 230      |
| <b>B</b>                |        |        |        |        |        |          |          |               |          |          |          |          |          |
| baggage                 | 22     | 40     | 58     | 72     | 90     | 108      | 122      | 140           | 158      | 176      | 194      | 212      | 230      |
| banking                 | 17     | 35     | 53     | 69     | 85     | 103      | 119      | 135           | 153      | 171      | 189      | 207      | 225      |
| bar                     | 20     | 38     | 57     |        | 88     | 106      |          | 139           | 157      | 174      | 192      | 210      | 228      |
| bargaining              | 18     | 36     | 55     |        | 86     | 104      |          | 137           | 155      | 172      | 191      | 208      | 227      |
| bill (shopping)         | 18     | 37     | 55     |        | 87     | 105      |          | 137           | 155      | 173      | 191      | 208      | 227      |
| bill (restaurant)       | 20     | 39     | 57     | 71     | 89     | 107      | 121      | 139           | 157      | 175      | 193      | 210      | 229      |
| boat                    | 14     | 33     | 51     | 67     | 82     | 100      | 117      |               | 151      | 169      | 187      | 204      | 222      |
| booking (accommodation) | 16     | 34     | 52     | 68     | 84     | 102      | 118      | 134           | 152      | 170      | 188      | 206      | 224      |
| border crossing         | 13     | 31     | 49     | 66     | 81     | 99       | 116      | 131           | 149      | 167      | 185      | 203      | 221      |
| bus                     | 14     | 33     | 51     | 67     | 82     | 100      | 117      | 133           | 151      | 169      | 187      | 204      | 222      |
| business                | 13     | 31     | 49     | 66     | 81     | 99       | 116      | 131           | 149      | 167      | 185      | 203      | 221      |

## C

|                      | Afk    | Amh    | Arb    | Fre    | Hsa    | Mgy      | Por      | Sho      | Swa      | Wol      | Xho      | Yor      | Zul      |
|----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| camping              | 16     | 34, 35 | 52, 53 |        | 84, 85 | 102, 103 |          | 134, 135 | 152, 153 | 170, 171 | 188, 189 | 206      | 224, 225 |
| car                  | 15     | 33     | 51     | 67     | 83     | 101      | 117      | 133      | 151      | 169      | 187      | 205      | 223      |
| check-out            | 16     | 35     | 53     |        | 85     | 103      |          | 135      | 153      | 171      | 189      | 206      | 225      |
| communications       | 17     | 35     | 53     | 69     | 85     | 103      | 119      | 135      | 153      | 171      | 189      | 207      | 225      |
| contact details      | 20     | 38     | 56     | 70     | 88     | 106      | 120      | 138      | 156      | 174      | 192      | 210      | 228      |
| cost (shopping)      | 18     | 36     | 55     | 69     | 86     | 104      | 119      | 136      | 154      | 172      | 190      | 208      | 226      |
| cost (accommodation) | 16     | 34     | 53     | 68     | 84     | 102      | 118      | 135      | 152      | 170      | 188      | 206      | 224      |
| cost (internet)      | 17     | 35     | 54     |        | 85     | 103      |          | 135      | 153      | 171      | 189      | 207      | 225      |
| cost (phone)         | 17     | 35     | 54     |        | 85     | 103      |          | 135      | 153      | 171      | 189      | 207      | 225      |
| cost (transport)     | 15     | 33     | 51     | 67     | 83     | 101      | 117      | 133      | 151      | 169      | 187      | 205      | 223      |
| countries            | 20     | 38     | 56     | 70     | 88     | 106      | 120      | 138      | 156      | 174      | 192      | 210      | 228      |
| credit card          | 18, 22 | 37, 40 | 55     | 69, 72 | 90     | 105      | 119, 122 | 137      | 155, 158 | 173, 176 | 191, 194 | 209, 212 | 227      |
| culture              | 235–50 |        |        |        |        |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |

## D

|                  |        |        |        |    |        |          |     |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|------------------|--------|--------|--------|----|--------|----------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| dates            | 12     | 30     | 48     | 65 | 80     | 98       | 115 | 130      | 148      | 166      | 184      | 202      | 220      |
| days of the week | 12     | 30     | 48     | 65 | 80     | 98       | 115 | 130      | 148      | 166      | 185      | 202      | 221      |
| dentist          | 22     | 40     | 58     | 72 | 90     | 108      | 122 | 140      | 158      | 176      | 194      | 212      | 230      |
| dictionary       | 23     | 41     | 59     | 73 | 91     | 109      | 123 | 141      | 159      | 177      | 195      | 213      | 231      |
| directions       | 15     | 33     | 51     | 68 | 83     | 101      | 118 | 133      | 151      | 169      | 187      | 205      | 223      |
| doctor           | 21, 22 | 39, 40 | 57, 58 | 72 | 89, 90 | 107, 108 | 122 | 139, 140 | 157, 158 | 175, 176 | 193, 194 | 211, 212 | 229, 230 |

## E

|               |     |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|---------------|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| eating out    | 20  | 38 | 57 | 71 | 88 | 106 | 121 | 139 | 157 | 174 | 192 | 210 | 228 |
| email         | 20  | 38 | 56 | 70 | 88 | 106 | 120 | 138 | 156 | 174 | 192 | 210 | 228 |
| embassy       | 21  | 40 | 58 | 72 | 90 | 108 | 122 | 140 | 158 | 176 | 194 | 211 | 230 |
| emergencies   | 21  | 39 | 57 | 71 | 89 | 107 | 121 | 139 | 157 | 175 | 193 | 211 | 229 |
| entertainment | 242 |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

## F

|              |     |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|--------------|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| family       | 19  | 38 | 56 | 70 | 88 | 106 | 120 | 138 | 156 | 174 | 192 | 209 | 228 |
| festivals    | 242 |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| food & drink | 20  | 38 | 57 | 71 | 88 | 106 | 121 | 139 | 157 | 174 | 192 | 210 | 228 |
| food         | 240 |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

## G

|           |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| goodbyes  | 19 | 37 | 55 | 69 | 87 | 105 | 119 | 137 | 155 | 173 | 191 | 209 | 227 |
| greetings | 19 | 37 | 55 | 69 | 87 | 105 | 119 | 137 | 155 | 173 | 191 | 209 | 227 |

## H

|            |        |        |        |        |        |         |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| health     | 22     | 40     | 58     | 72     | 90     | 108     | 122      | 140      | 158      | 176      | 194      | 212      | 230      |
| hire (car) | 15     | 33     | 51     | 67     | 83     | 101     | 117      | 133      | 151      | 169      | 187      | 205      | 223      |
| history    | 236    |        |        |        |        |         |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
| holiday    | 13     | 31     | 49     | 66     | 81     | 99      | 116      | 131      | 149      | 167      | 185      | 203      | 221      |
| hospital   | 22     | 40     | 58     | 72     | 90     | 108     | 122      |          | 158      | 176      | 194      | 212      | 230      |
| hotel      | 13, 16 | 31, 34 | 49, 52 | 66, 68 | 81, 84 | 99, 102 | 116, 118 | 132, 134 | 149, 152 | 167, 170 | 185, 188 | 203, 206 | 221, 224 |

## I

|               |        |        |        |        |        |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|---------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| immigration   | 13     | 31     | 49     | 66     | 81     | 99       | 116      | 131      | 149      | 167      | 185      | 203      | 221      |
| insurance     | 21     | 40     | 58     |        | 90     | 107      |          | 140      | 158      | 175      | 193      | 211      | 229      |
| internet      | 15, 17 | 33, 35 | 51, 53 | 68, 69 | 83, 85 | 101, 103 | 118, 119 | 133, 135 | 151, 153 | 169, 171 | 187, 189 | 205, 207 | 223, 225 |
| introductions | 19     | 37     | 56     | 70     | 87     | 105      | 119      | 137      | 156      | 173      | 191      | 209      | 228      |

## L

|                       |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------------|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| language difficulties | 12 | 30 | 48 | 65 | 80 | 98  | 115 | 130 | 148 | 166 | 184 | 202 | 220 |
| luggage               | 22 | 40 | 58 | 72 | 90 | 108 | 122 | 140 | 158 | 176 | 194 | 212 | 230 |

## M

|                     |        |        |        |        |        |          |          |     |          |          |          |          |          |
|---------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| making conversation | 19     | 37     | 55     | 69     | 87     | 105      | 119      | 137 | 155      | 173      | 191      | 209      | 227      |
| market              | 15     | 33     | 51     | 68     | 83     | 101      | 118      | 133 | 151      | 169      | 187      | 205      | 223      |
| marriage            | 20     | 38     | 56     | 70     | 88     | 106      | 120      | 138 | 156      | 174      | 192      | 210      | 228      |
| medical needs       | 22     | 40     | 58     | 72     | 90     | 108      | 122      | 140 | 158      | 176      | 194      | 212      | 230      |
| menu                | 20     | 39     | 57     | 71     | 89     | 107      | 121      | 139 | 157      | 175      | 193      | 210      | 229      |
| money               | 17, 22 | 35, 40 | 53, 58 | 69, 72 | 85, 90 | 103, 108 | 119, 122 | 135 | 153, 158 | 171, 176 | 189, 194 | 207, 212 | 225, 230 |

## N

|                     | Afk | Amh | Arb | Fre | Hsa | Mgy | Por | Sho | Swa | Wol | Xho | Yor | Zul |
|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| nationalities       | 20  | 38  | 56  | 70  | 88  | 106 | 120 | 138 | 156 | 174 | 192 | 210 | 228 |
| nonalcoholic drinks | 241 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| numbers             | 12  | 30  | 48  | 66  | 80  | 99  | 116 | 131 | 149 | 167 | 185 | 203 | 221 |

## O

|                       |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------------|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| ordering (restaurant) | 20 | 39 | 57 | 71 | 89 | 107 | 121 | 139 | 157 | 175 | 193 | 210 | 229 |
|-----------------------|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

## P

|                      |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |          |     |          |
|----------------------|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------|-----|----------|
| passport             | 22 | 40 | 58 | 72 | 90 | 108 | 122 | 140 | 158 | 176 | 194      | 212 | 230      |
| payment (methods of) | 18 | 37 | 55 | 69 |    | 105 | 119 | 137 | 155 | 173 | 191      | 209 | 227      |
| pharmacy             | 22 | 40 | 58 | 72 | 90 | 108 | 122 | 140 | 158 | 176 | 194      | 212 | 230      |
| phonecard            | 17 | 35 | 53 |    |    | 103 |     | 135 | 153 | 171 | 189      | 207 | 225      |
| photography          | 19 | 37 | 55 |    | 87 | 105 |     | 137 | 155 | 173 | 191      | 209 | 227      |
| photos (taking)      | 20 | 38 | 56 | 70 | 88 | 106 | 120 | 138 | 156 | 174 | 192      | 210 | 228      |
| plane                | 14 | 33 | 51 |    | 82 | 100 |     |     | 151 | 169 | 187      | 204 | 222      |
| police               | 21 | 39 | 57 | 71 | 89 | 107 | 121 | 139 | 157 | 175 | 193      | 211 | 229      |
| pronunciation        | 10 | 28 | 46 | 64 | 78 | 96  | 114 | 128 | 146 | 164 | 182, 184 | 200 | 218, 220 |

## R

|                             |     |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| receipt                     | 18  | 37 | 55 |    | 87 | 105 |     | 137 | 155 | 173 | 191 | 208 | 227 |
| refund                      | 18  | 37 | 55 |    | 87 |     |     | 137 | 155 | 173 | 191 | 208 | 227 |
| religion                    | 236 |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| repairs                     | 18  | 36 | 54 |    | 86 | 104 |     | 136 | 154 | 172 | 190 | 208 | 226 |
| reservation (accommodation) | 16  | 34 | 52 | 68 | 84 | 102 | 118 | 134 | 152 | 170 | 188 | 206 | 224 |
| responsible travel          | 246 |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| restaurant                  | 20  | 38 | 57 |    | 88 | 106 |     | 139 | 157 | 174 | 192 | 210 | 228 |
| room (hotel)                | 16  | 34 | 52 | 68 | 84 | 102 | 118 | 134 | 152 | 170 | 188 | 206 | 224 |

## S

|                    | Afk | Amh | Arb | Fre | Hsa | Mgy | Por | Sho | Swa | Wol | Xho | Yor | Zul |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| safari             | 247 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| seating            | 14  | 32  | 50  | 67  | 82  | 100 | 117 | 132 | 150 | 168 | 186 | 204 |     |
| shopping           | 18  | 36  | 54  | 69  | 86  | 104 | 119 | 136 | 154 | 172 | 190 | 208 | 226 |
| sightseeing        | 17  | 36  | 54  |     | 86  | 103 |     | 136 | 154 | 172 | 190 | 207 | 226 |
| sustainable travel | 246 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

## T

|                    |            |            |        |        |        |               |          |          |               |               |               |               |          |
|--------------------|------------|------------|--------|--------|--------|---------------|----------|----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------|
| taxi               | 15         | 33         | 51     | 67     | 83     | 101           | 117      | 133      | 151           | 169           | 187           | 205           | 223      |
| telephone          | 17, 20     | 35, 38     | 53, 56 | 70, 71 | 85, 88 | 103, 106      | 120, 121 | 135, 138 | 153, 156      | 171, 174      | 189, 192      | 207, 210      | 225      |
| telling the time   | 12         | 30         | 48     | 65     | 80     | 98            | 115      | 130      | 148           | 166           | 184           | 202           | 220      |
| theft              | 22         | 40         | 58     | 72     | 90     | 108           | 122      | 140      | 158           | 176           | 194           | 212           | 230      |
| tickets            | 14         | 32         | 50     | 67     | 82     | 100           | 117      | 132      | 150           | 168           | 186           | 204           | 222      |
| timeline           | 236        |            |        |        |        |               |          |          |               |               |               |               |          |
| titles             | 19         | 37         | 55     | 69     | 87     | 105           | 119      | 137      | 155           | 173           | 191           | 209           | 227      |
| toilet             | 14, 21     | 32, 39     | 50, 58 | 67, 71 | 82, 89 | 100, 107      | 117, 121 | 132, 139 | 150, 157      | 168, 175      | 186, 193      | 204, 211      | 222, 229 |
| tours              | 17         | 36         | 54     |        | 86     | 103           |          | 136      | 154           | 172           | 190           | 207           | 226      |
| train              | 14         | 33         | 51     | 67     | 82     | 100           | 117      | 133      | 151           | 169           | 187           | 204           | 222      |
| transport          | 14         | 32         | 50     | 67     | 82     | 100           | 117      | 133      | 150           | 168           | 186           | 204           | 222      |
| travellers cheques | 17, 18, 22 | 35, 37, 40 | 53, 55 | 69, 72 | 85, 90 | 103, 105, 108 | 119, 122 | 135, 137 | 153, 155, 158 | 171, 173, 176 | 189, 191, 194 | 207, 209, 212 | 225, 227 |

## V

|                 |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| valuables       | 22 | 40 | 58 | 72 | 90 | 108 |     | 140 | 158 | 176 | 194 | 212 | 230 |
| vegetarian food | 20 | 39 | 57 | 71 | 89 | 107 | 121 | 139 | 157 | 175 | 193 | 210 | 229 |

## W

|                   |    |    |    |  |    |     |  |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------------------|----|----|----|--|----|-----|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| water (drinkable) | 21 | 39 | 57 |  | 89 | 107 |  | 139 | 157 | 175 | 193 | 211 | 229 |
| women travellers  | 22 | 40 | 58 |  | 90 | 108 |  | 140 | 158 | 176 | 194 | 212 | 230 |